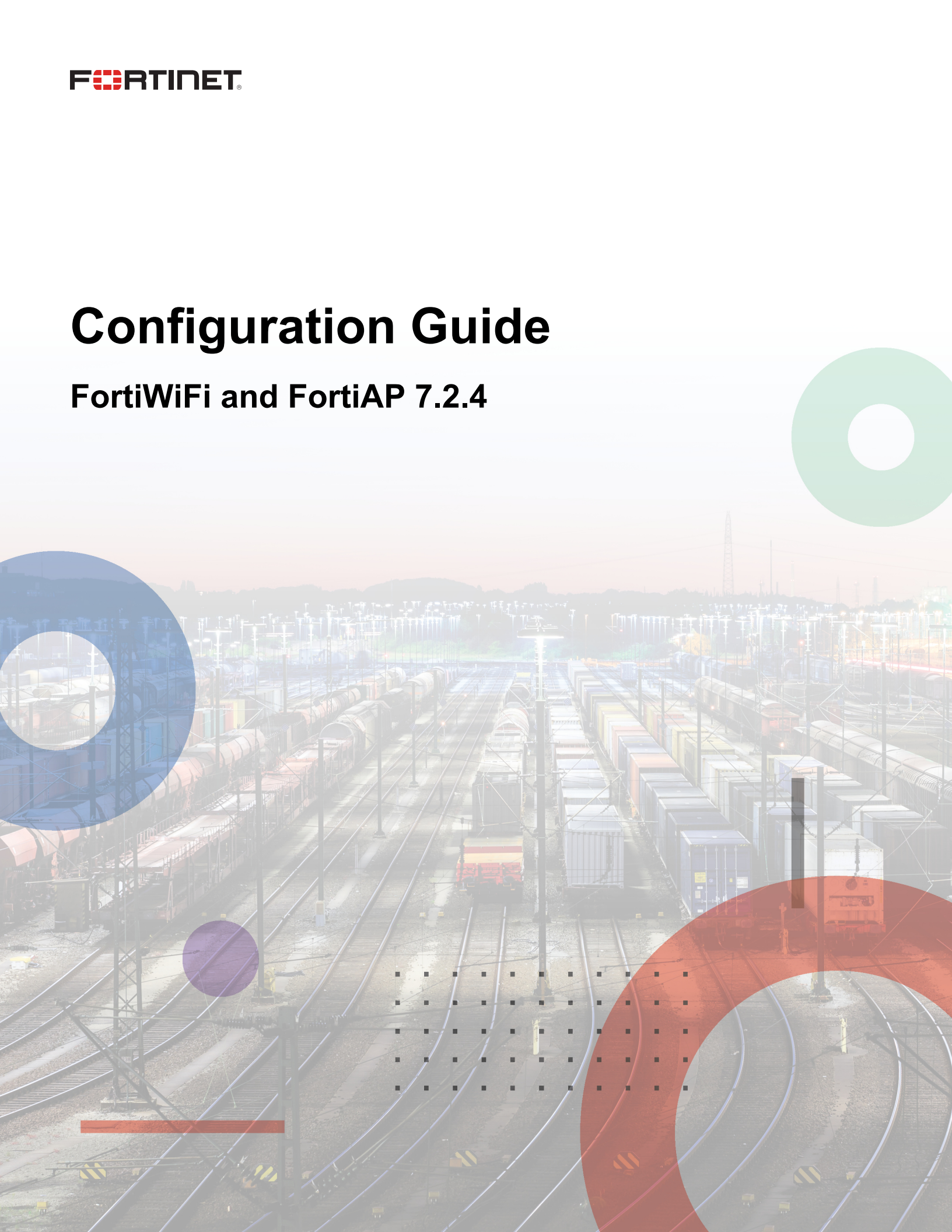


# Configuration Guide

**FortiWiFi and FortiAP 7.2.4**



**FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY**

<https://docs.fortinet.com>

**FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE**

<https://video.fortinet.com>

**FORTINET BLOG**

<https://blog.fortinet.com>

**CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT**

<https://support.fortinet.com>

**FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM**

<https://www.fortinet.com/training-certification>

**NSE INSTITUTE**

<https://training.fortinet.com>

**FORTIGUARD CENTER**

<https://www.fortiguard.com>

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

<https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf>

**FEEDBACK**

Email: [techdoc@fortinet.com](mailto:techdoc@fortinet.com)



Feb 22, 2023

FortiWiFi and FortiAP 7.2.4 Configuration Guide

01-724-827895-20230222

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Change log</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>What's new in this release</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>12</b>
Wireless network equipment	12
FortiAP units	12
FortiGate units	12
FortiWiFi units	13
Wireless management topologies	13
Integrated wireless management	13
Cloud AP management	14
Dedicated wireless controller	14
Related products for wireless networks	14
FortiPlanner	14
FortiManager	14
FortiAnalyzer	15
<b>Getting started with FortiAP management</b>	<b>16</b>
Configuring the FortiGate interface to manage FortiAP units	16
Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiAP units	17
Discovering a FortiAP unit	17
AC actions when a FortiAP attempts to get discovered	18
Authorize a discovered FortiAP	19
De-authorize a managed FortiAP	20
FortiAP diagnostics and tools	21
Setting up a mesh connection between FortiAP units	23
Data channel security: clear-text, DTLS, and IPsec VPN	26
<b>Wireless network configuration</b>	<b>28</b>
SSIDs on FortiWiFi units	29
Reserved VLAN IDs	29
Wireless network configuration tasks	30
Setting your geographic location	31
Configuring the network interface for the AP unit	31
Understanding FortiWiFi apink interface	33
Creating a FortiAP profile	34
Defining a wireless network interface (SSID)	36
Configuring DHCP for WiFi clients	39
Configuring DNS for local standalone NAT VAPs	40
Changing SSID to VDOM only	41
Airtime fairness	42
Configuring security	45
Captive Portal Security	46
WPA2 Security	62
WPA3 Security	70
Adding a MAC filter	75

Limiting the number of clients .....	78
Enabling multicast enhancement .....	79
Replacing WiFi certificate .....	79
Configuring WiFi with WSSO using Windows NPS and user groups .....	81
Defining SSID groups .....	88
Configuring dynamic user VLAN assignment .....	88
VLAN assignment by RADIUS .....	88
VLAN assignment by FortiAP group .....	92
VLAN assignment by VLAN pool .....	93
Configuring wireless NAC support .....	95
Example .....	95
Configuring user authentication .....	100
WPA2 Enterprise authentication .....	100
WiFi single sign-on (WSSO) authentication .....	101
Assigning WiFi users to VLANs dynamically .....	102
MAC-based authentication .....	102
Authenticating guest WiFi users .....	108
Authenticating wireless clients with SAML credentials .....	108
Custom RADIUS NAS-ID .....	108
Configuring firewall policies for the SSID .....	110
Configuring the built-in access point on a FortiWiFi unit .....	112
Enforcing UTM policies on a local bridge SSID .....	112
Configuring a Syslog profile .....	113
Configuring Distributed Radio Resource Provisioning .....	116
Translating WiFi QoS WMM marking to DSCP values .....	119
Configuring Layer 3 roaming .....	121
Configuring L3 Roaming for Tunnel Mode SSIDs .....	123
Configuring L3 Roaming for Bridge Mode SSIDs .....	129
Advanced Wireless Features .....	137
Operations Profiles Entry .....	138
Connectivity Profiles Entry .....	143
Protection Profiles Entry .....	147
Advanced SSID options .....	150
Advanced WiFi Settings options .....	151
<b>Access point configuration .....</b>	<b>155</b>
Network topology of managed APs .....	156
Discovery and authorization of APs .....	158
Pre-authorizing a FortiAP unit .....	158
Enabling and configuring a discovered AP .....	161
Disabling the automatic discovery of unknown FortiAPs .....	162
Enabling the automatic authorization of extension devices .....	162
Assigning the same FortiAP profile to multiple FortiAP units .....	163
Overriding the FortiAP profile .....	163
Register a FortiAP to FortiCloud .....	164
FortiAP CLI access .....	165
Accessing the FortiAP CLI through the FortiAP Ethernet port .....	165
Accessing the FortiAP CLI through the FortiGate .....	165



FortiAP Configuration mode .....	165
Resetting FortiAP to enter the Configuration mode .....	166
Accessing the GUI of the FortiAP Configuration mode .....	166
Accessing the CLI of the FortiAP Configuration mode .....	168
FortiAP unit firmware upgrade .....	169
Checking the FortiAP unit firmware version .....	169
Enabling automatic FortiAP upgrade after authorization .....	169
Upgrading FortiAP firmware from the FortiGate unit .....	169
Upgrading FortiAP firmware from the FortiAP unit .....	170
Advanced WiFi controller discovery .....	170
Controller discovery methods .....	171
Wireless client load balancing for high-density deployments .....	173
Access point handoff .....	173
Frequency handoff or band-steering .....	174
Handoff configuration .....	174
FortiAP groups .....	175
LAN port options .....	175
Configuring a port to WAN-LAN operation mode .....	176
Bridging a LAN port with an SSID .....	176
Bridging a LAN port with the WAN port .....	179
Configuring FortiAP LAN ports .....	179
Verifying wired clients connected to FortiAP LAN ports .....	181
LAN port aggregation and redundancy .....	181
Enabling LACP .....	181
Configuring uplink redundancy without LACP .....	182
CAPWAP .....	183
IP fragmentation of packets in CAPWAP tunnels .....	184
CAPWAP bandwidth formula .....	185
CAPWAP Offloading .....	186
LED options .....	187
<b>Wireless mesh configuration .....</b>	<b>189</b>
Wireless mesh deployment modes .....	190
Firmware requirements .....	190
Types of wireless mesh .....	190
Fast-roaming for mesh backhaul link .....	192
Configuring a meshed WiFi network .....	192
Creating the mesh root SSID .....	192
Creating the FortiAP profile .....	192
Configuring the mesh root AP .....	193
Configuring the mesh leaf FortiAPs .....	194
Authorizing leaf APs .....	195
Creating security policies .....	195
Viewing the status of the mesh network .....	195
Configuring a point-to-point bridge .....	195
<b>Hotspot 2.0 configuration .....</b>	<b>197</b>
Hotspot 2.0 ANQP configuration .....	197
Hotspot 2.0 Release 3 profile configuration .....	200

<b>WiFi network with wired LAN configuration</b>	<b>204</b>
How to combine a WiFi network and wired LAN with a software switch	204
VLAN configuration	206
Additional configuration	206
How to configure a FortiAP local bridge (private cloud-managed AP)	206
Continued FortiAP operation when WiFi controller connection is down	209
How to increase the number of supported FortiAPs	209
How to implement multi-processing for large-scale FortiAP management	211
<b>Remote WLAN FortiAPs</b>	<b>214</b>
Configuring the FortiGate for remote FortiAPs	214
Enable split tunneling options	214
Apply split tunneling	214
Configure split tunneling behavior	215
Enable split tunneling on SSIDs	216
Configure a FortiAP unit to connect to FortiGate	216
Preauthorize a FortiAP unit for automatic authorization	218
<b>Features for high-density deployments</b>	<b>219</b>
Upgrading the firmware for multiple FortiAPs	219
Controlling the power save feature	219
11n radio powersave optimization	220
Configuring the broadcast packet suppression	220
Converting multicast streams to unicast	221
Ignoring weak or distant clients	222
Turning off the 802.11b protocol	222
Configuring data rates	222
Enabling the automatic TX power control	224
Enabling the frequency band load-balancing	224
Setting the handoff RSSI threshold	225
Enabling the AP load balancing	225
Setting the AP load balance threshold	225
Setting the Application Control feature	226
Managing the FortiAP group and assigning a dynamic VLAN	226
Sharing tunnel SSIDs within a single managed FortiAP	226
Enabling the manual quarantine of devices on FortiAP (tunnel mode)	227
Locating a FortiAP with LED blinking	228
Uploading a FortiAP image on the wireless controller	229
Configuring control message off-loading	229
Enabling Dynamic Radio Mode Assignment (DRMA)	230
RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) support	231
<b>Wireless network protection</b>	<b>232</b>
Wireless Intrusion Detection System	232
Rogue AP detection	233
WIDS client de-authentication rate for DoS attacks	234
WiFi data channel encryption	234
Configuring encryption on a FortiGate unit	234

Configuring encryption on a FortiAP unit .....	234
Protected Management Frames and Opportunistic Key Caching support .....	235
Bluetooth Low Energy scan .....	235
Preventing local bridge traffic from reaching the LAN .....	236
FortiAP-S and FortiAP-U bridge mode security profiles .....	237
DHCP snooping and option-82 data insertion .....	238
DHCP address enforcement .....	239
Disabling console port access .....	239
Configuring 802.1X supplicant on LAN .....	240
Suppressing phishing SSID .....	243
<b>Wireless network monitoring .....</b>	<b>245</b>
Monitoring wireless health and clients .....	245
Monitoring rogue APs .....	245
On-wire rogue AP detection technique .....	248
Rogue AP scanning as a background activity .....	249
Configuring rogue scanning .....	249
Suppressing rogue APs .....	251
Monitoring wireless clients .....	252
Understanding client health .....	253
Monitoring wireless clients over IPv6 traffic .....	254
Tunnel mode SSID IPv6 traffic .....	254
Local bridge mode SSID IPv6 traffic .....	256
CLI commands for IPv6 rules .....	259
Monitoring application usage for clients connected to bridge mode SSIDs .....	260
Monitoring FortiAP with SNMP .....	262
FortiAP SNMP implementation .....	263
Downloading the FortiAP MIB and Fortinet Core MIB files .....	264
FortiAP SNMP trap messages .....	264
FortiAP SNMP queries .....	265
Monitoring FortiAP temperatures .....	266
Enabling spectrum analysis .....	266
Disable dedicated scanning on FortiAP F-Series profiles .....	272
<b>Wireless network examples .....</b>	<b>277</b>
Basic wireless network example .....	277
Configuring authentication for wireless users .....	277
Configuring the SSID .....	278
Adding the SSID to the FortiAP Profile .....	279
Configuring security policies .....	279
Connecting the FortiAP units .....	280
Wireless network example with FortiSwitch .....	282
Configuring FortiLink .....	283
Connecting the FortiSwitch .....	284
Configuring a wireless VLAN .....	284
Connecting the FortiAP units .....	285
Complex wireless network example .....	285
Scenario example .....	285

Configuration example .....	286
Configuring authentication for employee wireless users .....	286
Configuring authentication for guest wireless users .....	287
Configuring the SSIDs .....	288
Configuring the FortiAP profile .....	290
Configuring firewall policies .....	291
Connecting the FortiAP units .....	293
FortiGate WiFi controller 1+1 fast failover example .....	295
CAPWAP hitless failover using FGCP .....	297
Diagnose commands .....	300
<b>FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client .....</b>	<b>303</b>
FortiWiFi unit in client mode .....	303
Configuring a FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client .....	304
Controlled AP selection support in FortiWiFi client mode .....	307
<b>WiFi maps .....</b>	<b>308</b>
<b>Support for location-based services .....</b>	<b>312</b>
Configuring location tracking .....	312
Automatic deletion of outdated presence data .....	312
Viewing device location data on a FortiGate unit .....	313
Example output .....	313
Configuring FortiPresence .....	313
FortiPresence push REST API .....	314
Configuring FortiPresence server IP .....	314
<b>Support for Electronic Shelf Label systems .....</b>	<b>316</b>
Hanshow integration .....	316
SES-Imagotag .....	317
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>319</b>
FortiAP shell command .....	319
Signal strength issues .....	319
Asymmetric power issue .....	320
Frequency interference .....	322
Throughput issues .....	323
Link testing .....	323
Performance testing .....	323
IP packet fragmentation prevention in CAPWAP tunnels .....	324
Slow DTLS response .....	324
Client connection issues .....	325
Debugging client connection issues .....	325
Checking the WiFi password .....	326
FortiAP connection issues .....	327
Debugging FortiAP connection issues .....	327
Testing wireless network health with SAM .....	330
Captive portal authentication in service assurance management (SAM) mode .....	331
Determining the coverage area of a FortiAP .....	334
Best practices for OSI common sources of wireless issues .....	336
Best practices for Layer 1 .....	337

---

Best practices for Layer 2 .....	337
Best practices for Layer 3 and above .....	339
Extended logging .....	339
Packet sniffer .....	350
CAPWAP packet sniffer .....	350
Wireless traffic packet sniffer .....	351
Debug commands .....	354
Sample outputs .....	354
Extension information support .....	355
Disabling 802.11d for client backward compatibility .....	355
<b>FortiAP CLI configuration and diagnostics commands .....</b>	<b>359</b>
Configuration commands .....	359
Diagnostics commands .....	363
<b>FortiAP API .....</b>	<b>365</b>
API Schema and documentation .....	365
Enable API for Location Based Services station info .....	366



## Change log

Date	Change description
2023-02-01	Initial release. See <a href="#">What's new in this release on page 11</a> .
2023-02-06	Updated <a href="#">Configuring user authentication on page 100</a> , <a href="#">Configuring WPA2-Enterprise SSID on page 66</a> , and <a href="#">Basic wireless network example on page 277</a> .
2023-02-16	Updated <a href="#">WPA3 Security on page 70</a>
2023-02-22	Updated <a href="#">Translating WiFi QoS WMM marking to DSCP values on page 119</a> .

# What's new in this release

FortiOS 7.2.4 wireless includes the following changes:

- Implement multi-processing for wireless daemon for large-scale FortiAP management.
- Allow custom RADIUS NAS ID.
- Support wireless client mode on FortiWiFi 80F series models.
- Support displaying details about wired clients connected to the FortiAP LAN port.

For more information about the FortiOS 7.2.4 wireless features, see the FortiOS [Release Notes](#) and [New Features Guide](#).

For more information about new FortiAP, FortiAP-S, and FortiAP-W2 features, see the release information in the [FortiAP Documentation Library](#).

# Introduction

This guide describes how to configure a wireless network and access points using FortiGate (or FortiWiFi) units and FortiAP units.

## Wireless network equipment

This section includes an overview of Fortinet wireless network equipment:

- [FortiAP units on page 12](#)
- [FortiGate units on page 12](#)
- [FortiWiFi units on page 13](#)

### FortiAP units

FortiAP units are thin wireless access points (AP) supporting the latest Wi-Fi technologies (multi-user MIMO 802.11ac Wave 1 and Wave 2, 4x4) as well as 802.11n, 802.11AX, and the demand for plug and play deployment. FortiAP units come in various form factors (desktop, indoor, outdoor, or wall jack). Indoor and outdoor units can have internal or external antennas.

For large deployments, some FortiAP models support a mesh mode of operation in which control and data backhaul traffic between APs and the controller are carried on a dedicated wireless network. Users can roam seamlessly from one AP to another.

In dual-radio models, each radio can function as an AP or as a dedicated monitor. The monitoring function is also available during AP operation, subject to traffic levels.

FortiAP, FortiAP-C, FortiAP-S, FortiAP-W2, and FortiAP-U units are available in a variety of models to address specific use cases and management modes. For detailed information about the various models currently available, see the [Fortinet website](#).

For assistance in choosing an AP, visit the [AP product selector](#).

### FortiGate units

A FortiGate unit is an industry leading enterprise firewall. In addition to consolidating all the functions of a network firewall, IPS, anti-malware, VPN, WAN optimization, Web filtering, and application control in a single platform, FortiGate also has an integrated Wi-Fi controller. With this integrated Wi-Fi controller, a FortiGate unit can configure and manage access points such as FortiAP, FortiAP-C, FortiAP-S, FortiAP-W2, and FortiAP-U units.

For detailed information about FortiGate models currently available, see the [Fortinet website](#).

## FortiWiFi units

A FortiWiFi unit is a FortiGate with a built-in Wi-Fi. A FortiWiFi unit can:

- Provide an access point for clients with wireless network cards. This default mode is called the Access Point mode.

**or**

- Connect to another wireless network. This is called Client mode. A FortiWiFi unit operating in client mode can only have one wireless interface.

**or**

- Monitor access points within radio range. This is called Monitoring mode. You can designate the detected access points as Accepted or Rogue for tracking purposes. No access point or client operation is possible in this mode. However, you can enable monitoring as a background activity while the unit is in Access Point mode.

For detailed information about FortiWiFi models currently available, see the [Fortinet](#) website.

## Wireless management topologies

This section includes the following three topologies available for the management of access points:

- [Integrated wireless management on page 13](#)
- [Cloud AP management on page 14](#)
- [Dedicated wireless controller on page 14](#)

### Integrated wireless management

For the integrated wireless management of access points, you can:

- Use a FortiWiFi unit which is a FortiGate with a built-in Wi-Fi module (also called local Wi-Fi radio) that works as an access point.
- Connect external access points (FortiAP) to a FortiWiFi or a FortiGate.
- Connect external FortiAP units to a FortiSwitch, and then to a FortiWiFi or a FortiGate.

The integrated wireless management topology leverages the Wireless LAN and Switch controller built into the operating system of the FortiGate (or FortiWiFi) to provide secure Wi-Fi and easily configure and manage your access points.

The integrated wireless management topology is a good choice for a small to medium enterprise deployment. The FortiWiFi is well suited for small sites of less than 40 users and an area no larger than 3,000 square feet. A deployment with a FortiGate managing external APs can range from small sites of less than 40 users to large sites with hundreds of users and with an area greater than 3,000 square feet.

With a FortiGate or FortiWiFi unit, you can configure and manage FortiAP, FortiAP-C, FortiAP-S, FortiAP-W2, and FortiAP-U units.

## Cloud AP management

FortiLAN Cloud offers management capabilities for standalone FortiAPs that scale from individual organizations managing a handful of APs, to large enterprises managing several thousand APs. FortiLAN Cloud allows you to provision, monitor, troubleshoot, and optimize your FortiAP deployment through a simple, intuitive, and easy-to-use cloud interface that is accessible from anywhere. With zero-touch deployment options, FortiLAN Cloud eliminates the need for costly on-site technical expertise.

With the FortiLAN Cloud provisioning and management portal, you can manage and configure FortiAP, FortiAP-C, FortiAP-S, FortiAP-W2, and FortiAP-U units.

For more details about FortiLAN Cloud, see the [FortiLAN Cloud](#) documentation.

## Dedicated wireless controller

Some wireless deployments require high mobility with high performance and the Fortinet Wireless Controller can provide enterprise-class secure Wi-Fi to large and high-density environments. Dedicated WLAN controllers deliver seamless mobility, quick deployment, and easy capacity expansion with radio frequency virtualization for large numbers of access points.

The FortiWLC (wireless LAN controller) and FortiWLM (wireless LAN manager) platforms deliver seamless mobility and superior reliability with optimized client distribution and channel utilization. Both single- and multi-channel deployment options are supported, maximizing efficiency to make the most of available wireless spectrum.

The FortiWLC platform can manage FortiAP-U units.

For more details about the FortiWLC dedicated wireless LAN controller platform, see the [FortiWLC and FortiWLM](#) documentation.

## Related products for wireless networks

This section discusses wireless network related products offered by Fortinet.

### FortiPlanner

FortiPlanner provides a simple and intuitive user interface to help you with wireless LAN planning. FortiPlanner makes sure of a successful deployment with features such as the ability to import floor plans, select the type of AP and automatically calculate the required AP number and their placement. The built-in reporting automatically creates a complete plan along with the number of FortiAP units required and the exact stock keeping unit (SKU) codes for ordering.

For more information about FortiPlanner, see the [Fortinet](#) website and [FortiPlanner](#) documentation.

### FortiManager

FortiManager is the full-featured central management solution for Fortinet products. To centrally manage wireless networks, FortiManager includes the following features:



- Global wireless management and monitoring
- Centralized SSID and radio policy configuration
- Centralized AP firmware upgrades
- Centralized rogue AP suppression

For more details about FortiManager, see the [Fortinet](#) website and [FortiManager](#) documentation.

## FortiAnalyzer

FortiAnalyzer delivers critical insight into threats across the entire attack surface and provides instant visibility, situation awareness, real-time threat intelligence and actionable analytics, along with Network Operation Center and Security Operation Center (NOC-SOC) security analysis and operations perspective for the Fortinet Security Fabric.

FortiAnalyzer provides the following features:

- Centralized logs, searches, and reports
- Automated indicators of compromise (IOC)
- Real-time and historical views into network activity
- Advanced compliance reporting

For more details about FortiAnalyzer, see the [Fortinet](#) website and [FortiAnalyzer](#) documentation.

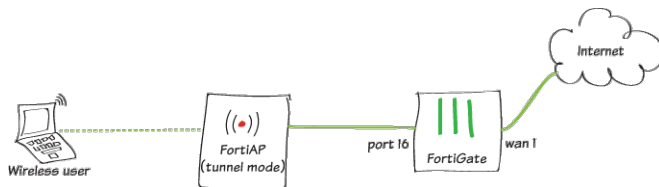
# Getting started with FortiAP management

This section contains topics to get you started with using FortiGate's Wireless Controller to manage FortiAP units.

- [Configuring the FortiGate interface to manage FortiAP units on page 16](#)
- [Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiAP units on page 17](#)
- [FortiAP diagnostics and tools on page 21](#)
- [Setting up a mesh connection between FortiAP units on page 23](#)
- [Data channel security: clear-text, DTLS, and IPsec VPN on page 26](#)

## Configuring the FortiGate interface to manage FortiAP units

This guide describes how to configure a FortiGate interface to manage FortiAPs.



Based on the above topology, this example uses port16 as the interface used to manage connection to FortiAPs.

1. Enable a DHCP server on port16:
  - a. From FortiGate, go to **Network > Interfaces**.
  - b. Edit port16.
  - c. In the **IP/Network Mask** field, enter an IP address for port16.
  - d. Enable **DHCP Server**, keeping the default settings.
2. As it is a minimum management requirement that FortiAP establish a CAPWAP tunnel with the FortiGate, you must enable CAPWAP access on port16 to allow it to manage FortiAPs:
  - a. Go to **Network > Interfaces**.
  - b. Double-click port16.
  - c. Under **Administrative Access**, select **Security Fabric Connection**.
  - d. Click **OK**.
3. If required, you can enable the VCI-match feature using the CLI. When VCI-match is enabled, only devices with a VCI name that matches the preconfigured string can acquire an IP address from the DHCP server. To configure VCI-match, run the following commands:
 

```
config system dhcp server
  edit 1
    set interface port16
    set vci-match enable
    set vci-string "FortiAP"
  next
end
```
4. To create a new FortiAP entry automatically when a new FortiAP unit is discovered, run the following command. By default, this option is enabled.
 

```
config system interface
```

```

edit port16
    set allow-access fabric
    set ap-discover enable
next
end

```

5. To allow FortiGate to authorize a newly discovered FortiAP to be controlled by the FortiGate, run the following command. By default, this option is disabled.

```

config system interface
    edit port16
        set allow-access fabric
        set auto-auth-extension-device enable
    next
end

```



For more information, see [Configuring the network interface for the AP unit on page 31](#).

## Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiAP units

In order for FortiGate to manage a FortiAP unit, it must first discover the FortiAP and then authorize it.

For more information about discovery, authorization, and ways to pre-authorize FortiAPs, see [Discovery and authorization of APs on page 158](#)

### Discovering a FortiAP unit

For a FortiGate acting as an AP controller (AC) to discover a FortiAP unit, the FortiAP must be able to reach the AC. A FortiAP with the factory default configuration has various ways of acquiring an AC's IP address to reach it.

WTP Configuration

AC Discovery Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Static <input type="radio"/> DHCP <input type="radio"/> DNS <input type="radio"/> FortiCloud <input type="radio"/> Broadcast <input type="radio"/> Multicast
AC IP Address 1	10.0.0.5
AC IP Address 2	
AC IP Address 3	
AC Host Name 1	_capwap-control._udp.exam
AC Host Name 2	
AC Host Name 3	
AC Discovery Multicast Address	224.0.1.140
AC Discovery DHCP Option Code	138
FortiCloud Account	
FortiCloud Password	
AP Data Channel Security	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Clear Text <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Enabled <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DTLS Enabled

Apply

AC discovery type	Description
Auto	The FortiAP attempts to be discovered in the below ways sequentially within an endless loop.
Static	The FortiAP sends discover requests to a preconfigured IP address that an AC owns.
DHCP	The FortiAP acquires the IP address of an AC in DHCP option 138 (the factory default) of a DHCP offer, which the FortiAP acquires its own IP address from.
DNS	The FortiAP acquires the AC's IP address by resolving a preconfigured FQDN.
FortiCloud	FortiGate Cloud discovers the FortiAP.
Broadcast	FortiAP is discovered by sending broadcasts in its local subnet.
Multicast	FortiAP is discovered by sending discovery requests to a multicast address of 224.0.1.140, which is the factory default.

See [Advanced WiFi controller discovery on page 170](#) for more information on WiFi controller discovery methods.

## AC actions when a FortiAP attempts to get discovered

Enable `ap-discover` on the AC for the interface designed to manage FortiAPs:

```
config system interface
  edit "lan"
    set ap-discover enable
  next
end
```

The `ap-discover` command allows the AC to create an entry in the managed FortiAPs table when it receives the FortiAP's discovery request. The `ap-discover` command is enabled by default. When the FortiAP entry is created automatically, it is marked as *discovered* status, and is pending for an administrator's authorization, unless the following setting is present:

```
config system interface
  edit "lan"
    set auto-auth-extension-device enable
  next
end
```

The `auto-auth-extension-device` command will allow AC authorize an new discovered FortiAP automatically without an administrator's manual authorization operation. The `auto-auth-extension-device` command is disabled by default.

## Authorize a discovered FortiAP

Once the FortiAP discovery request is received by AC, a FortiAP entry will be added to the managed FortiAP table and shown in **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.

Access Point	Status	SSIDs	Channel	Clients	OS Version	LLDP	FortiAP Profile	Connected Via
FP221C3X14037866	Online	utm_ssid1 (wifi2) All Tunnel Mode SSIDs	11 0 12 136	0	FP221C-v6.0-build0044	eth0: S108EF5918005519 - port3	FAP221C-default (Overridden)	FAP-VLAN2
FP221E5519040516	Waiting for Authorization	ExampleSSID ExampleSSID	11 0 12 0	0	FP221E-v7.0-build0008	lan1: S108EF5918005519 - port4	FAP221E-default	FAP-VLAN
PU221ETF18010604	Online	None All Tunnel Mode SSIDs	11 11 12 100	0	PU221E-v6.2-build0237	eth1: S108EF5918005519 - port2	FAPU221EV-default	FAP-VLAN

To authorize the specific AP, select the FortiAP entry, and then right-click and select **Authorize** from the context menu.

Access Point	Status	SSIDs	Channel	Clients	OS Version	LLDP	FortiAP Profile	Connected Via
FP221C3X14037866	Online	utm_ssid1 (wifi2) All Tunnel Mode SSIDs	11 0 12 136	0	FP221C-v6.0-build0044	eth0: S108EF5918005519 - port3	FAP221C-default (Overridden)	FAP-VLAN2
FP221E5519040516	Waiting for Authorization	ExampleSSID ExampleSSID	11 0 12 0	0	FP221E-v7.0-build0008	lan1: S108EF5918005519 - port4	FAP221E-default	FAP-VLAN
PU221ETF18010604	Online	None All Tunnel Mode SSIDs	11 11 12 100	0	PU221E-v6.2-build0237	eth1: S108EF5918005519 - port2	FAPU221EV-default	FAP-VLAN

Authorization can also be granted from the FortiAP details panel under the **Actions** menu.

Access Point	Status	SSIDs	Channel	Clients	OS Version	LLDP	FortiAP Profile	Connected Via
FP221C3X14037866	Online	utm_ssid1 (wifi2) All Tunnel Mode SSIDs	11 0 12 136	0	FP221C-v6.0-build0044	eth0: S108EF5918005519 - port3	FAP221C-default (Overridden)	FAP-VLAN2
FP221E5519040516	Waiting for Authorization	ExampleSSID ExampleSSID	11 0 12 0	0	FP221E-v7.0-build0008	lan1: S108EF5918005519 - port4	FAP221E-default	FAP-VLAN
PU221ETF18010604	Online	None All Tunnel Mode SSIDs	11 11 12 100	0	PU221E-v6.2-build0237	eth1: S108EF5918005519 - port2	FAPU221EV-default	FAP-VLAN



Authorization can also be granted through the following CLI commands:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP423E3X16000320"
    set admin enable
  next
end
```



When you authorize a FortiAP unit, it is configured by default to use the default FortiAP profile (determined by model). The FortiAP profile defines the entire configuration for the AP (see [Creating a FortiAP profile on page 34](#)). You can assign a different profile, if needed, by right-clicking the authorized FortiAP and selecting **Assign Profile**.

## De-authorize a managed FortiAP

To de-authorize a managed FortiAP, select the FortiAP entry, and then click **Deauthorize** on the top of the table or right-click and select **Deauthorize** from the context menu.

The screenshot shows the FortiWiFi-60E management console. The left sidebar contains navigation options like Dashboard, Network, Policy & Objects, Security Profiles, VPN, User & Authentication, and WiFi & Switch Controller. The main area displays a table of Managed FortiAPs. The table has columns for Access Point, Status, SSIDs, Channel, Clients, OS Version, LLDP, FortiAP Profile, and Connected Via. A context menu is open over the entry with Access Point ID FP221E5519040516, showing options like Edit, Delete, Authorize, Deauthorize, Upgrade, Restart, Registration, Assign Profile, Diagnostics and Tools, Show in WiFi Maps, LED Blink, Edit in CLI, and Connect to CLI. The 'Deauthorize' option is highlighted with a red box.

You can also de-authorize from the FortiAP details panel under the **Action** menu.

The screenshot shows the FortiWiFi-60E management console with the FortiAP details panel for FP221E5519040516 open. The panel displays various details including Serial Number, Base MAC Address, Status, Country/Region, Connected Via, IPv4 Address, Uptime, Version, and Registration. The 'Actions' menu is open, showing options like Authorize, Deauthorize, Upgrade, Restart, Registration, LED Blink, and Show in WiFi Maps. The 'Deauthorize' option is highlighted with a red box. The right sidebar shows general statistics for the FortiAP, including CPU Usage, Memory Usage, and Radio 1 and 2 utilization.

You can also de-authorize with the following CLI commands:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP423E3X16000320"
    set admin discovered
  next
end
```

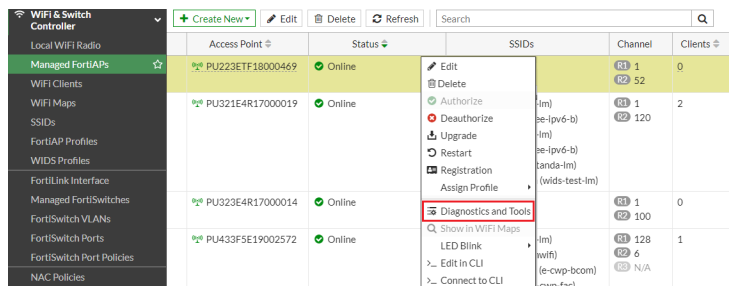
## FortiAP diagnostics and tools

On the **Managed FortiAPs** page, you can use the Diagnostics and Tools option to view all available details of a FortiAP, including:

- FortiAP system information.
- Dynamic health and performance information.
- Dynamic radio and client details.
- Relevant links such as location of the FortiAP in the location map.

### Sample configuration

In **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**, right-click a FortiAP and select **Diagnostics and Tools**.



The Diagnostics and Tools pane show the following information:

- The top left shows a summary of configuration and connection status for the AP. The **Actions** button enables you to Authorize/Deauthorize, Upgrade, Restart, and flash the LED lights on the FortiAP. The **Edit** button opens the **Edit Managed AP** pane. The **Show in WiFi Maps** button is shown if the FortiAP is on a WiFi Map.
- The top right shows the general health assessment of the AP and the health assessment based on radio band.
- The bottom section includes tabs to show the **Radios** summary, **Clients** list, and a filtered **Logs** view of all logs of the FortiAP.

The screenshot shows the FortiWiFi 60E management interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation options. The main area displays a 'Managed FortiAPs' table with three entries. The second entry, 'FP221E5519040516', is highlighted. To the right, the 'Diagnostics and Tools' panel for this FortiAP is open, showing general information, performance metrics, and a 'Show in WiFi Maps' button.

Access Point	Status
FP221C3X14037866	Online
<b>FP221E5519040516</b>	Online
PU221ETF18010604	Online

**Diagnostics and Tools - FP221E5519040516**

Serial Number: FP221E5519040516  
 Base MAC Address: e8:1c:ba:d4:a7:98  
 Status: ✔  
 Country/Region: US  
 Connected Via: FAP-VLAN  
 IPv4 Address: 172.30.149.3  
 Uptime: 55d 41m 54s  
 Version: v7.0 build0008  
 Registration: Registered

General:

- CPU Usage: 27%
- Memory Usage: 65%
- lan1: 1.0 Gbps

Radio 1 - 2.4 GHz:

- Interfering SSIDs: 0
- Clients: 0
- Channel Utilization: 56%

Radio 2 - 5 GHz:

- Interfering SSIDs: 0
- Clients: 0
- Channel Utilization: 1%

Performance: Clients | Interfering SSIDs | WiFi Map | Logs | CLI Access | Spectrum Analysis | VLAN Probe

Radio: Radio 1 | Radio 2

Clients: 1 (5 minute(s) ago) | Now

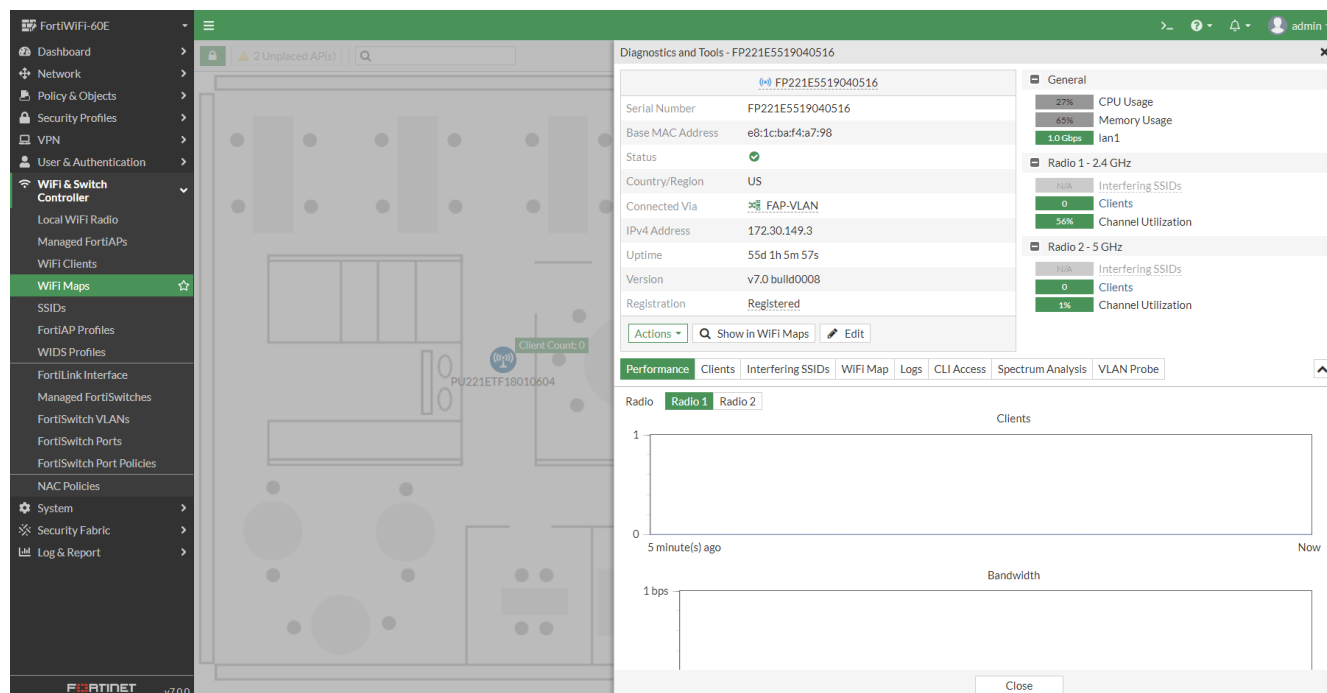
Bandwidth: 1 bps

Close

If a FortiAP is on a WiFi Map, click the **Show in WiFi Maps** button and that FortiAP is highlighted with a flashing blue circle on the WiFi Map.

The screenshot shows the 'WiFi Maps' view in the FortiWiFi 60E management interface. It displays a floor plan with various rooms and corridors. Two FortiAPs are marked on the map: 'PU221ETF18010604' and 'FP221E5519040516'. The FortiAP 'FP221E5519040516' is highlighted with a flashing blue circle, indicating it is the selected device.

On the WiFi Map, click a FortiAP icon to open its Diagnostics and Tools pane.

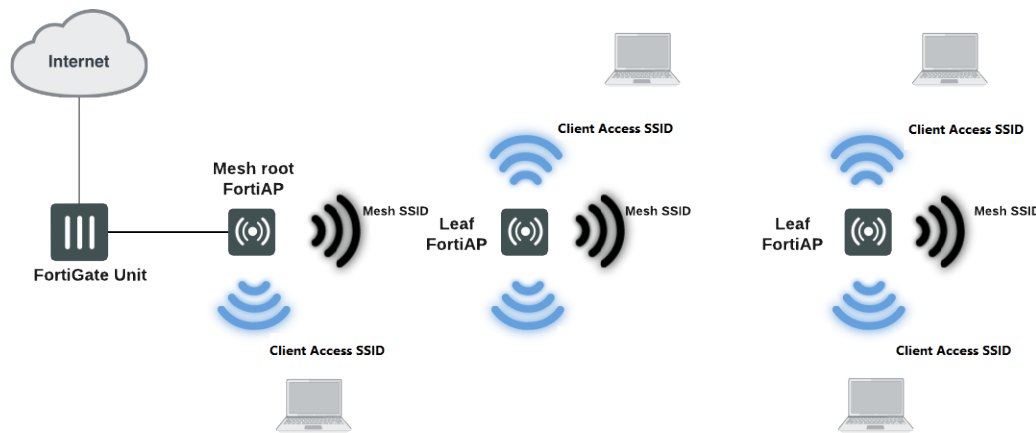


## Setting up a mesh connection between FortiAP units

The access points of a WiFi network are usually connected to the WiFi controller through Ethernet wiring. A wireless mesh eliminates the need for Ethernet wiring by connecting WiFi access points to the controller by radio. For more information about wireless mesh configurations, see [Wireless mesh configuration on page 189](#).

To set up a WiFi mesh connection, a minimum of three devices are required:

1. A FortiGate as the AP Controller (AC)
2. A FortiAP as the Mesh Root AP (MRAP)
3. A FortiAP as a Mesh Leaf AP (MLAP).

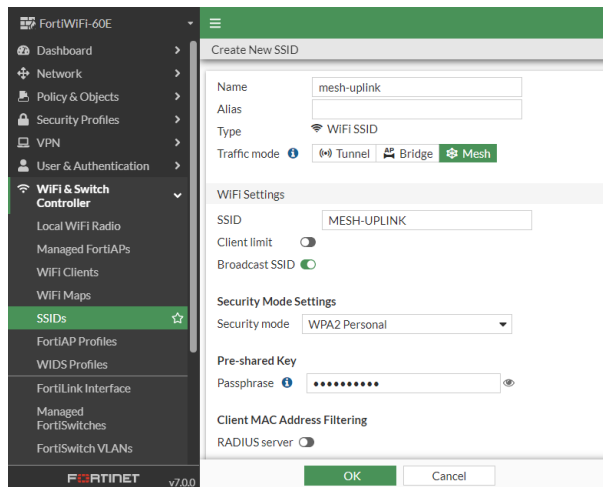


## Configuring the AC

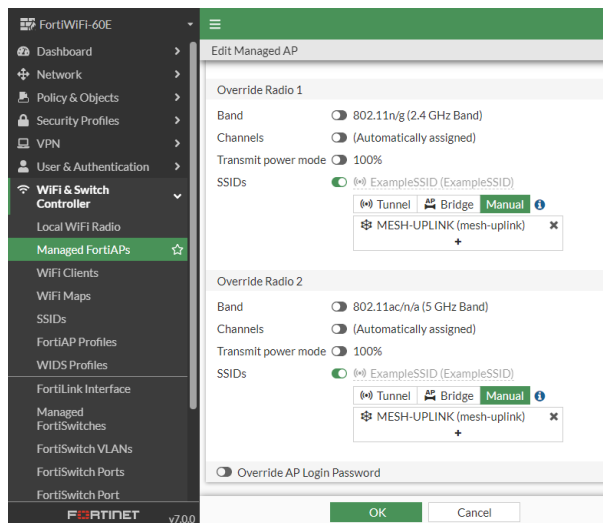
These instructions assume that the Mesh Root AP (MRAP) is already being managed by the AC (see [Configuring the FortiGate interface to manage FortiAP units on page 16](#) and [Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiAP units on page 17](#)).

### To configure the AC

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and create a mesh SSID.



2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**, edit the MRAP, and assign the mesh SSID to the MRAP, and wait for a connection.



## Configuring the MLAP

The Mesh Leaf AP (MLAP) can be configured to use the mesh link as its [Main uplink](#) or a [Backup link for Ethernet connections](#).

## To configure the MLAP

1. On the FortiAP, go to **Connectivity**.

2. Set **Uplink** to **Mesh** or **Ethernet with mesh backup support**.
  3. Enter a mesh SSID and password.
  4. Optionally, select **Ethernet Bridge** (see [Main uplink on page 25](#)).
- This option is not available if **Uplink** is set to **Ethernet with mesh backup support**.

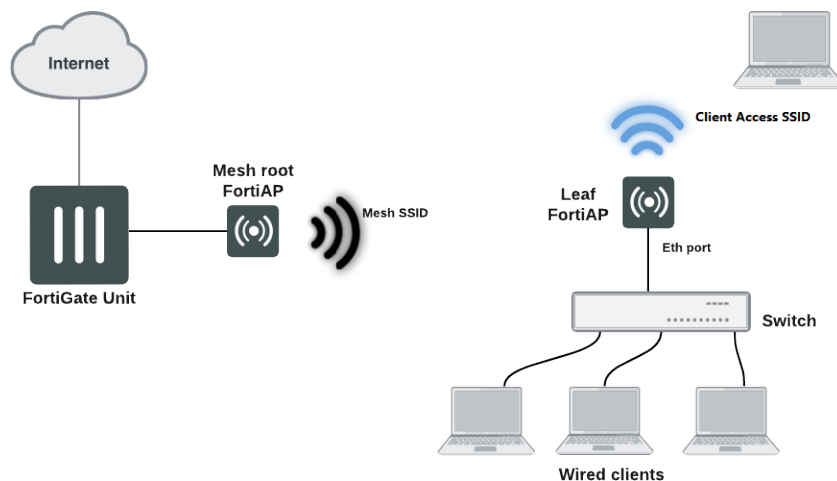
Once the MLAP has joined the AC, it can be managed in the same way as a wired AP.

A mesh SSID can also be assigned to an MLAP for other downstream MLAPs, creating a multi-hop WiFi mesh network. The maximum hop count has a default value of 4, and can be configured in the FAP console with the following commands:

```
cfg -a MESH_MAX_HOPS=n
cfg -c
```

## Main uplink

When a mesh link is set as the main uplink of the MLAP, the Ethernet port on the MLAP can be set up as a bridge to the mesh link. This allows downstream wired devices to use the mesh link to connect to the network.



To enable a mesh Ethernet bridge, select **Ethernet Bridge** in the FortiAP **Connectivity** section in the GUI, or use the following console commands:

```
cfg -a MESH_ETH_BRIDGE=1
cfg -c
```

## Backup link for Ethernet connections

When a mesh link is set to be the backup link for an Ethernet connection, the mesh link will not be established unless the Ethernet connection goes offline. When a mesh link is in this mode, the Ethernet port cannot be used as a bridge to the mesh link.

## Data channel security: clear-text, DTLS, and IPsec VPN

After the FortiAP joins a FortiGate, a CAPWAP tunnel is established between the FortiGate and FortiAP.

There are two channels inside the CAPWAP tunnel:

- The control channel for managing traffic, which is always encrypted by DTLS.
- The data channel for carrying client data packets, which can be configured to be encrypted or not.

The default setting for `dtls-policy` is `clear-text`, meaning it is non-encrypted. There are two settings available to encrypt the data channel: `dtls-enabled` and `ipsec-vpn`:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FortiAP-profile-name"
    set dtls-policy clear-text|dtls-enabled|ipsec-vpn
  next
end
```

Of the three settings, `clear-text` has the highest possible data throughput. Furthermore, FortiGates with hardware acceleration chips can offload CAPWAP data traffic in `clear-text` and achieve much higher throughput performance (see [CAPWAP Offloading on page 186](#)).



You can only configure the data channel using the CLI.

---

When data security is not a major concern, we recommend that you set the data channel to non-encrypted. For example, when the FortiGate and FortiAP are operating in an internal network.

### To set the data channel to non-encrypted using the CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FortiAP-profile-name"
    set dtls-policy clear-text
  next
end
```

## Encrypting the data channel

When the FortiGate and FortiAP are in different networks, and the data channel might transit through a public network, we recommend that you encrypt the data channel to protect your data with either DTLS or IPsec VPN.

### DTLS

#### To encrypt the data channel with DTLS using the CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FortiAP-profile-name"
    set dtls-policy dtls-enabled
    set dtls-in-kernel disable|enable
  next
end
```

`set dtls-in-kernel` is only available after `dtls-policy` is set to `dtls-enabled`. When you enable `dtls-in-kernel`, the FortiAP OS kernel processes the traffic encryption and decryption, which could provide better throughput performance. DTLS encryption cannot be hardware-accelerated on the FortiGate so when DTLS is enabled, data throughput performance is significantly lower than with `clear-text`.

### IPsec VPN

#### To encrypt the data channel with IPsec VPN using the CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FortiAP-profile-name"
    set dtls-policy ipsec-vpn
  next
end
```

This automatically establishes an IPsec VPN tunnel between the FortiGate and FortiAP that carries CAPWAP data packets. FortiGates with NP6 chips can offload CAPWAP data traffic in IPsec, so this encryption option has better throughput performance than DTLS. Because there is no built-in hardware acceleration chip, the FortiAP is considered the performance bottleneck in this scenario.



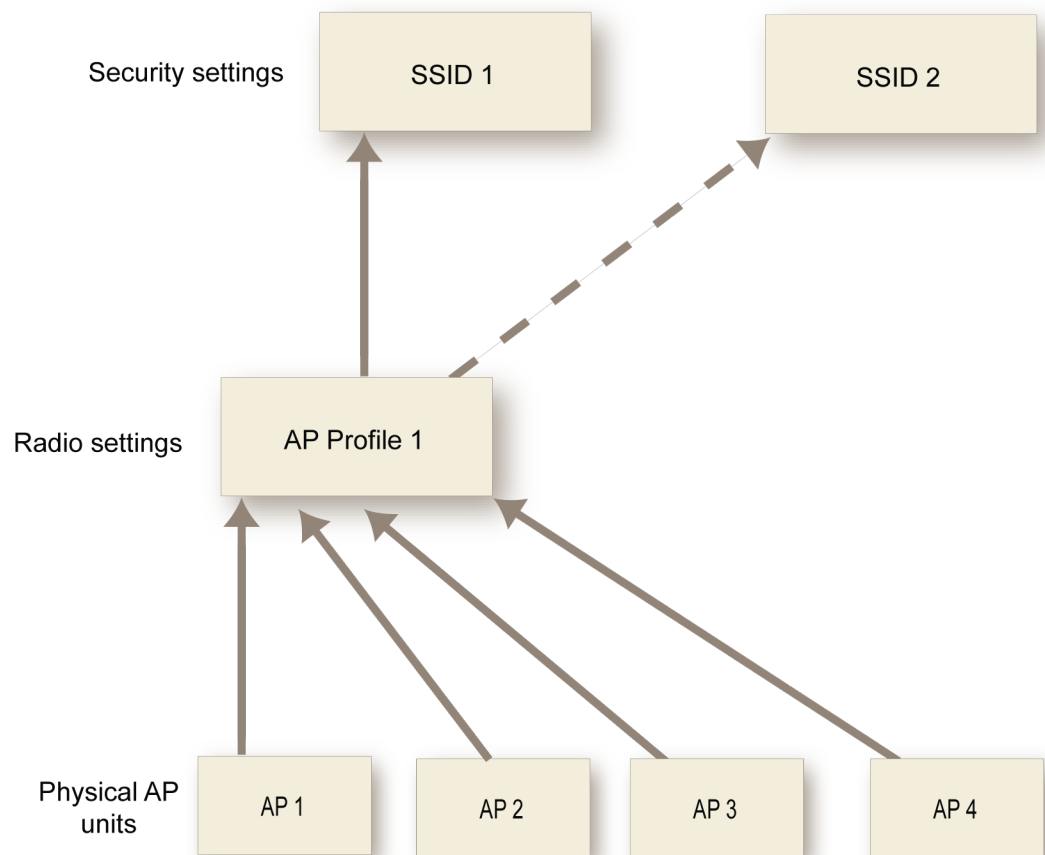
# Wireless network configuration

When working with a FortiGate WiFi controller, you can configure your wireless network before you install any access points. If you are working with a standalone FortiWiFi unit, the access point hardware is already present but the configuration is quite similar. Both are covered in this section.

The FortiGate WiFi controller configuration is composed of three types of object: the SSID, the AP Profile and the physical Access Point.

- An **SSID** (service set identifier) defines a virtual wireless network interface, including security settings. One SSID is sufficient for a wireless network, regardless how many physical access points are provided. However, you may want to create multiple SSIDs to provide different services or privileges to different groups of users. Each SSID has separate firewall policies and authentication. Each radio in an access point can support up to eight SSIDs.  
A more common use of the term SSID is for the identifier that clients must use to connect to the wireless network. Each SSID (wireless interface) that you configure will have an SSID field for this identifier. In Managed Access Point configurations, you choose wireless networks by SSID values. In firewall policies, you choose wireless interfaces by their SSID name.
- An **AP Profile** defines the radio settings, such as band (802.11n for example) and channel selection. The AP Profile identifies the SSIDs to which it applies. Managed APs can use automatic profile settings or the settings of the AP profiles that you create.
- **Managed Access Points** represent local wireless APs on FortiWiFi units and FortiAP units that the FortiGate unit has discovered. There is one managed access point definition for each AP device. An access point definition can use automatic AP profile settings or select a FortiAP Profile. When automatic profile settings are used, the managed AP definition also selects the SSIDs to be carried on the AP.

Conceptual view of FortiGate WiFi controller configuration



SSIDs on FortiWiFi units

FortiWiFi units have a default SSID (wireless interface) named **wlan**. You can modify or delete this SSID as needed. As with external APs, the built-in wireless AP can be configured to carry any SSID.

The AP settings for the built-in wireless access point are located at **WiFi Controller > Local WiFi Radio**. The available operational settings are the same as those for external access points which are configured at **WiFi Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.

Reserved VLAN IDs

The following table lists the VLAN IDs reserved for internal use only. Do not use those VLAN IDs in FAP management VLAN, SSID static VLAN, and dynamically assigned VLAN.

FortiAP model	VLAN ID reserved for internal use
FAP-C24JE	898 and 899

FortiAP model	VLAN ID reserved for internal use
FAP-S221E, FAP-S223E, FAP-221E, FAP-222E, FAP-223E, FAP-224E, and FAP-231E	97 and 98

## Wireless network configuration tasks

To configure a wireless network, perform the following tasks:

1. [Setting your geographic location on page 31](#)
2. [Configuring the network interface for the AP unit on page 31](#)
3. [Creating a FortiAP profile on page 34](#)
4. [Defining a wireless network interface \(SSID\) on page 36](#)
5. [Configuring security on page 45](#)
6. [Defining SSID groups on page 88](#)
7. [Configuring dynamic user VLAN assignment on page 88](#)
8. [Configuring user authentication on page 100](#)
9. [Configuring firewall policies for the SSID on page 110](#)
10. [Configuring the built-in access point on a FortiWiFi unit on page 112](#)
11. [Enforcing UTM policies on a local bridge SSID on page 112](#)

For AP configuration details, see [Access point configuration on page 155](#).



On FortiGate model 30D, GUI configuration of the WiFi controller is disabled by default. To enable it, enter the following CLI commands:

```
config system global
    set gui-wireless-controller enable
end
```



The WiFi and Switch Controllers are enabled through the Feature Store (under **System > Feature Visibility**). However, they are separately enabled and configured to display in the GUI via the CLI.

To enable both WiFi and Switch Controllers, enter the following CLI commands:

```
config system global
    set wireless-controller enable
    set switch-controller enable
end
```

To enable the GUI display for both controllers, enter the following CLI commands::

```
config system settings
    set gui-wireless-controller enable
    set gui-switch-controller enable
end
```

## Setting your geographic location

The maximum allowed transmitter power and permitted radio channels for WiFi networks depend on the region in which the network is located. By default, the WiFi controller is configured for the United States. If you are located in any other region, set your geographic location before you begin the wireless network configuration.

### To change the location setting - CLI

To change the country to France, for example, enter

```
config wireless-controller setting
    set country FR
end
```

To see the list of country codes, enter a question mark ('?') instead of a country code.



Before changing the country setting, you must remove all FortiAP Profiles. To do this, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**.

### To view all country and region codes, and regulatory domains - CLI

The following CLI command can be entered to view a list of the country and region codes, and regulatory domains supported by Fortinet:

```
cw_diag -c all-countries
```

Below is a table showing a sample of the list displayed by entering this command:

Country-code	Region-code	Domain	ISO-name	Name
0	A	FCC3 & FCCA	NA	NO_COUNTRY_SET
8	W	NULL1 & WORLD	AL	ALBANIA
12	W	NULL1 & WORLD	DZ	ALGERIA
16	A	FCC3 & FCCA	AS	AMERICAN SAMOA
...	...	...	...	...

## Configuring the network interface for the AP unit

The interface to which you connect your wireless access point needs an IP address. No administrative access, DNS Query service or authentication should be enabled.

In this example, the FortiAP units connect to port3 and are controlled through IP addresses on the 10.10.70.0/24 network.

### To configure the interface for the AP unit - GUI

1. Go to **Network > Interfaces**, and edit the interface to which the AP unit connects (in this example, port3).
2. In **Addressing mode**, select **Manual**.
3. In **IP/Network Mask**, enter an IP address and netmask for the interface (in this example, 10.10.70.1/255.255.255.0).
4. In the Administrative Access section, go to **IPv4** and select the **Security Fabric Connection** checkbox.
5. When FortiAP units are connected to the interface on FortiGate (directly or through a switch), you can go to the Edit Interface section and set the **Role** to **LAN**.  
Selecting the LAN role loads the DHCP Server toggle. If you enable **DHCP Server**, the GUI can automatically set the DHCP IP range based on the interface IP address.
6. Click **OK**.

If you enable DHCP Server, you can also specify the Wireless controller IP address from under the **Advanced** section.

☒ DHCP Server

DHCP status	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Address range	<input type="text" value="172.254.1.2-172.254.1.254"/> <input type="button" value="+"/>
Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
Default gateway	<input checked="" type="button" value="Same as Interface IP"/> <input type="button" value="Specify"/>
DNS server	<input type="button" value="Same as System DNS"/> <input checked="" type="button" value="Same as Interface IP"/> <input type="button" value="Specify"/>
Lease time ⓘ	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="604800"/> second(s)
FortiClient On-Net Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

☒ Advanced

Mode	<input checked="" type="button" value="Server"/> <input type="button" value="Relay"/>
Type	<input checked="" type="button" value="Regular"/> <input type="button" value="IPsec"/>
NTP server	<input checked="" type="button" value="Local"/> <input type="button" value="Same as System NTP"/> <input type="button" value="Specify"/>
Wireless controllers	<input checked="" type="button" value="Same as Interface IP"/> <input type="button" value="Specify"/>
Time zone	<input checked="" type="button" value="Same as System"/> <input type="button" value="Specify"/>
Next bootstrap server	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>

### To configure the interface for the AP unit - CLI

In the CLI, you must configure the interface IP address and DHCP server separately.

```
config system interface
edit "port3"
```

```

        set mode static
        set ip 10.10.70.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess fabric
    next
end
config system dhcp server
    edit 3
        set interface "port3"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 10.10.70.2
                set end-ip 10.10.70.254
            next
        end
        set default-gateway 10.10.70.1
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set vci-match enable
        set vci-string "FortiAP"
    next
end

```

The optional `vci-match` and `vci-string` fields ensure that the DHCP server will provide IP addresses only to FortiAP units.

## Understanding FortiWiFi amlink interface

The amlink link interface is an interface unique to certain FortiWiFi models, including but not limited to FWF-80F-2R and FWF-81F-2R. It acts as an internal trunk interface between the FortiAP and FortiGate. The amlink1 and amlink2 members are physical interfaces between the FortiAP and the FortiGate.

	Name	Type	Members
<div><div></div><div>802.3ad Aggregate 10</div></div>			
	<div><div></div><div>aplink</div></div>	<div><div></div><div>802.3ad Aggregate</div></div>	<div><div></div><div>aplink1</div></div> <div><div></div><div>aplink2</div></div>
<div><div></div></div>	<div><div></div><div>fortilink</div></div>	<div><div></div><div>802.3ad Aggregate</div></div>	<div><div></div><div>internal1</div></div>

You can edit the amlink interface to change the subnet IP, however, the DHCP server should **not** be edited as it can cause the internal AP to stop working and lead to loss of WiFi capability on the AP.

### To configure the amlink interface - CLI

```

config system interface
    edit "amlink"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.80.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping fabric
        set type aggregate
        set member "amlink1" "amlink2"
    end
end

```

```

set device-identification enable
next
end

```

## Creating a FortiAP profile

A FortiAP profile defines radio settings for a particular platform (FortiAP model). The profile also selects which SSIDs (virtual APs) the APs will carry. FortiAP units contain two or more radio transceivers, making it possible to provide 2.4 GHz 802.11b/g/n, 5 GHz 802.11a/n, or 6 GHz 802.11ax service from the same access point. The radios can also be used for monitoring accepted or rogue APs through the Rogue AP detection feature.

You can modify existing FortiAP profiles or create new ones of your own.



On FortiGate model 30D, GUI configuration of FortiAP Profiles is disabled by default. To enable AP profiles, enter the following CLI commands:

```

config system settings
    set gui-ap-profile enable
end

```

### To configure a FortiAP profile - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter a **Name** for the FortiAP Profile.
3. In **Platform**, select the FortiWiFi or FortiAP model to which this profile applies.  
If you selected a WiFi 6E capable model, select a **Platform mode**:
  - **Single 5G** - Only one radio operates on the 5GHz 802.11ax/ac/n/a band.
  - **Dual 5G** - Two radios operate on the 5GHz 802.11ax/ac/n/a band and dedicated scanning is always disabled.
4. In **Indoor/Outdoor**, select where the FortiAP is being installed. You can override the default designation of the FortiAP to change the available channels based on your region.
5. Select the **Country/Region** for the FortiAP Profile.
6. If split tunneling is used, in **Split Tunneling Subnets**, enter a comma-separated list all of the destination IP address ranges that should **not** be routed through the FortiGate WiFi controller.
7. In **Client load balancing**, select a handoff type as needed (see [Wireless client load balancing for high-density deployments on page 173](#)).
8. In **802.1X authentication**, enable if you want to configure the FortiAP to act as a 802.1x supplicant to authenticate against the server using EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS or EAP-PEAP (see [Configuring 802.1X supplicant on LAN on page 240](#)).
9. For each radio, enter:

#### Mode

Select the type of mode:

- **Disabled** – the radio is disabled.
- **Access Point** – the platform is an access point.
- **Dedicated Monitor** – the platform is a dedicated monitor. See [Wireless network monitoring on page 245](#).

#### WIDS profile

Optionally, select a Wireless Intrusion Detection (WIDS) profile. See [Wireless Intrusion Detection System on page 232](#).

<b>Radio resource provision</b>	Select to enable the distributed radio resource provisioning (DARRP) feature. This feature measures utilization and interference on the available channels and selects the clearest channel at each access point. The measurement can be repeated periodically to respond to changing conditions. See <a href="#">Configuring Distributed Radio Resource Provisioning on page 116</a> .
<b>Band</b>	Select the wireless protocols that you want to support. The available choices depend on the radio's capabilities. Where multiple protocols are supported, the letter suffixes are combined: "802.11g/b" means 802.11g <b>and</b> 802.11b. Note that on two-radio units such as the FortiAP-221C it is not possible to put both radios on the same band.
<b>Channel width</b>	Select channel width for 802.11ac or 802.11n on 5 GHz.
<b>Channel plan</b>	Select if you want to automatically configure a Channel plan or if want to select custom channels. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Three Channels</b> – Automatically selects channel 1, 6, and 11.</li> <li>• <b>Four Channels</b> – Automatically selects channels 1, 4, 8, and 11.</li> <li>• <b>Custom</b> – Select custom channels.</li> </ul>
<b>Channels</b>	Select the channel or channels to include. The available channels depend on which IEEE wireless protocol you selected in <b>Band</b> . By default, all available channels are enabled. For 5GHz radios, clicking <b>Set Channels</b> loads a channel selector panel where you can select individual channels. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Toggle DFS Channels</b> – Select DFS channels.</li> <li>• <b>Toggle Weather Radar Channels</b> – Select Weather Radar channels.</li> </ul> The channel chart also shows channel availability for 40MHz or 80MHz channel-bonding.
<b>Short guard interval</b>	Select to enable the short guard interval for 802.11ac or 802.11n on 5 GHz.
<b>Transmit power mode</b>	Select how you want to determine transmit power: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Percent</b> – Transmit power is determined by multiplying set percentage with maximum available power determined by region and FortiAP device.</li> <li>• <b>dBm</b> – Transmit power is setting using a dBm value.</li> <li>• <b>Auto</b> – Set a range of dBm values and the power is set automatically.</li> </ul>
<b>Transmit power</b>	Specify either the minimum and maximum Transmit power levels in dBm or as a percentage.
<b>SSIDs</b>	Select a traffic mode for SSIDs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Tunnel</b> – available tunnel-mode SSIDs are automatically assigned to this radio.</li> <li>• <b>Bridge</b> – available bridge-mode SSIDs are automatically assigned to this radio. This option is not available for FortiWiFi local radio platforms.</li> <li>• <b>Manual</b> – manually select which available SSIDs and SSID groups to assign to this radio.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitor channel utilization</b>	Select to enable monitoring channel utilization.

Radio 2 settings are available only for FortiAP models with dual radios.



10. In **Syslog profile**, enable if you want your FortiAPs to send logs to a syslog server (see [Configuring a Syslog profile on page 113](#)).
11. Click **OK**.

### To configure a FortiAP profile - CLI

This example configures a FortiAP-220B to carry all SSIDs on Radio 1 but only SSID example\_wlan on Radio 2.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit guest_prof
  config platform
    set type 220B
  end
  config radio-1
    set mode ap
    set band 802.11g
    set vap-all enable
  end
  config radio-2
    set mode ap
    set band 802.11g
    set vaps example_wlan
  end
end
```

## Defining a wireless network interface (SSID)

You begin configuring your wireless network by defining one or more SSIDs to which your users can connect. When you create an SSID, a virtual network interface is also created with the **Name** you specified in the SSID configuration.



If a software switch interface contains an SSID (but only one), the WiFi SSID settings are available in the switch interface settings.

### To create a new SSID

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New > SSID**.
2. Fill in the following SSID fields as needed:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the SSID interface.
<b>Type</b>	WiFi SSID.
<b>Traffic Mode</b>	<p><b>Tunnel</b> — (Tunnel to Wireless Controller) Data for WLAN passes through WiFi Controller. This is the default.</p> <p><b>Bridge</b> — (Local bridge with FortiAP Interface) FortiAP unit Ethernet and WiFi interfaces are bridged.</p> <p><b>Mesh</b> — (Mesh Downlink) Radio receives data for WLAN from mesh backhaul SSID.</p>

<b>Address</b>	
<b>IP/Network Mask</b>	Enter the IP address and netmask for the SSID.
<b>IPv6 Address/Prefix</b>	Enter the IPv6 address. This is available only when IPv6 has been enabled on the unit.
<b>Secondary IP Address</b>	Optionally, enable and define secondary IP addresses. Administrative access can be enabled on secondary interfaces.
<b>Administrative Access</b>	
<b>IPv4</b>	If you have IPv4 addresses, select the permitted IPv4 administrative access types for this SSID.
<b>IPv6</b>	If you have IPv6 addresses, select the permitted IPv6 administrative access types for this SSID.
<b>DHCP Server</b>	<p>To assign IP addresses to clients, enable DHCP server. You can define IP address ranges for a DHCP server on the FortiGate unit or relay DHCP requests to an external server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the unit is in transparent mode, the DHCP server settings will be unavailable.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring DHCP for WiFi clients on page 39</a>.</p>
<b>Network</b>	
<b>Device Detection</b>	Detect connected device type. Enabled by default.
<b>WiFi Settings</b>	
<b>SSID</b>	Enter the SSID. By default, this field contains <code>fortinet</code> .
<b>Client limit</b>	Limit the number of clients allowed in the SSID.
<b>Broadcast SSID</b>	Disable broadcast of SSID. By default, the SSID is broadcast.
<b>Beacon advertising</b>	<p>Enable to advertise specified vendor specific elements over beacon frames containing information about the FortiAP name, model and serial number. This can be used to determine the coverage area of a FortiAP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Name</b> – The FortiAP name.</li> <li>• <b>Model</b> – The FortiAP model.</li> <li>• <b>Serial Number</b> – The FortiAP serial number.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Determining the coverage area of a FortiAP on page 334</a>.</p>
<b>Security Mode</b>	<p>Select the security mode for the wireless interface. Wireless users must use the same security mode to be able to connect to this wireless interface. Additional security mode options are available in the CLI. For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring security on page 45</a>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Captive Portal</b> – authenticates users through a customizable web page.</li> <li>• <b>WPA2-Personal</b> – WPA2 is WiFi Protected Access version 2. Users use a pre-shared key (password) to obtain access.</li> <li>• <b>WPA2-Personal with Captive Portal</b> – The user will need to know the</li> </ul>

	<p>pre-shared key and will also be authenticated through the custom portal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>WPA2-Enterprise</b> – similar to WPA2-Personal, but is best used for enterprise networks. Each user is separately authenticated by user name and password.</li> <li>• Other choices are: <b>WPA3-Enterprise</b>, <b>WPA3-SAE</b>, <b>WPA3-SAE-Transition</b>, <b>OWE</b>, and <b>OSEN</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Authentication</b>	<p>Available only when <b>Security Mode</b> is <b>WPA2-Enterprise</b>.</p> <p>Select one of the following:</p> <p><b>RADIUS Server</b> — Select the RADIUS server that will authenticate the clients.</p> <p><b>Local</b> – Select the user group(s) that can authenticate.</p>
<b>Portal Type</b>	Available only when <b>Security Mode</b> is <b>Captive Portal</b> . Choose the captive portal type. Authentication is available with or without a usage policy disclaimer notice.
<b>Authentication Portal</b>	<p><b>Local</b> - portal hosted on the FortiGate unit</p> <p><b>External</b> - enter FQDN or IP address of external portal</p>
<b>User Groups</b>	Select permitted user groups for captive portal authentication.
<b>Exempt List</b>	Select exempt lists whose members will not be subject to captive portal authentication.
<b>Customize Portal Messages</b>	Click the listed portal pages to edit them.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	<p>Available only when <b>Security Mode</b> is <b>WPA2-Personal</b>.</p> <p>Select between <b>Single</b> or <b>Multiple</b> encryption key modes that clients must use.</p> <p>Setting multiple pre-shared keys will enable dynamic VLAN assignment.</p>
<b>Additional Settings</b>	
<b>Schedule</b>	Select when the SSID is enabled. You can choose any schedule defined in <b>Policy &amp; Objects &gt; Objects &gt; Schedules</b> .
<b>Block intra-SSID traffic</b>	Select to enable the unit to block intra-SSID traffic.
<b>Optional VLAN ID</b>	Enter the ID of the VLAN this SSID belongs to. Enter 0 for non-VLAN operation. See <a href="#">Reserved VLAN IDs on page 29</a> .
<b>Broadcast suppression</b>	Enable and add broadcasts you want to suppress.
<b>Quarantine host</b>	Enable so you can quarantine clients connected to the SSID.
<b>Split Tunneling</b>	Select to enable some subnets to remain local to the remote FortiAP. Traffic for these networks is not routed through the WiFi Controller. Specify split-tunnel networks in the FortiAP Profile. See <a href="#">Remote WLAN FortiAPs on page 214</a> .

<b>Enable Explicit Web Proxy</b>	Select to enable explicit web proxy for the SSID.
<b>Listen for RADIUS Accounting Messages</b>	Enable if you are using RADIUS-based single sign-on (SSO).
<b>Comments</b>	Enter a description or comment for the SSID.

3. Click **OK** to save.

### To edit the settings of an existing SSID

1. Either
  - Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs**.
  - or
  - Go to **Network > Interfaces**.  
WiFi interfaces list the SSID beside the interface **Name**.
2. Edit the SSID fields, as needed.

### To configure a virtual access point (VAP)/SSID - CLI

The example below creates an access point with SSID "example" and WPA2-Personal security. The wireless interface is named example\_wlan.

WiFi SSIDs include a schedule that determines when the WiFi network is available. The default schedule is Always. You can choose any schedule (but not schedule group) that is defined in **Policy & Objects > Objects > Schedules**.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit example_wlan
    set ssid "example"
    set broadcast-ssid enable
    set security wpa2-only-personal
    set passphrase "hardtoguess"
    set schedule always
    set vdom root
  end
config system interface
  edit example_wlan
    set ip 10.10.120.1 255.255.255.0
  end
```

## Configuring DHCP for WiFi clients

Wireless clients need to have IP addresses. If you use RADIUS authentication, each user's IP address can be stored in the Framed-IP-Address attribute. Otherwise, you need to configure a DHCP server on the WLAN interface to assign IP addresses to wireless clients.

### To configure a DHCP server for WiFi clients - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and edit your SSID entry.
2. In **DHCP Server** select **Enable**.
3. In **Address Range**, select **Create New**.

4. In the **Starting IP** and **End IP** fields, enter the IP address range to assign.  
By default an address range is created in the same subnet as the wireless interface IP address, but not including that address.
5. Set the **Netmask** to an appropriate value, such as 255.255.255.0.
6. Set the **Default Gateway** to **Same as Interface IP**.
7. Set the **DNS Server** to **Same as System DNS**.
8. If you want to restrict access to the wireless network by MAC address, see [Configuring security on page 45](#).
9. Select **OK**.

### To configure a DHCP server for WiFi clients - CLI

In this example, WiFi clients on the example\_wlan interface are assigned addresses in the 10.10.120.2-9 range to connect with the WiFi access point on 10.10.120.1.

```
config system dhcp server
edit 0
    set default-gateway 10.10.120.1
    set dns-service default
    set interface example_wlan
    set netmask 255.255.255.0
    config ip-range
        edit 1
            set end-ip 10.10.120.9
            set start-ip 10.10.120.2
        end
    end
end
```



You cannot delete an SSID (wireless interface) that has DHCP enabled on it.

---

## Configuring DNS for local standalone NAT VAPs

For SSIDs in local standalone NAT mode, up to three DNS servers can be defined and assigned to wireless endpoints through DHCP. Wireless endpoints can then receive these DNS server IPs through DHCP when connecting to the SSID.

### To configure the DNS servers

In this example, an SSID (wifi.fap.01) is configured in local standalone mode with local standalone NAT enabled. Two DNS servers, 8.8.8.8 and 8.8.4.4, are specified.

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "wifi.fap.01"
    set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.01"
    set passphrase *****
    set local-standalone enable
    set local-standalone-nat enable
    set local-standalone-dns enable
    set local-standalone-dns-ip 8.8.8.8 8.8.4.4
    set local-bridging enable
    set local-authentication enable
next
```

end



You can check the configured DNS server with the following commands:

- On FortiGate:  

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c wlan wifi.fap.01
```
  - On the managed FortiAP:  

```
FortiAP-431F # vcfg  
FortiAP-431F # dhcpconf
```
- 

## Changing SSID to VDOM only

You can change the wireless-controller VAP (for SSID configuration) from a global object to a VDOM object, simplifying tracking the object reference count. It also removes the `vdom` setting from VAP configuration. When multi-vdom is enabled on a FortiGate, the wireless-controller VAP can be added, edited, or deleted only inside of a VDOM.

### To create a VAP entry

- When `vdom-mode` is `no-vdom`:

```
# config wireless-controller vap  
(vap) # edit new  
    new entry 'new' added  
(new) # set ssid new  
(new) # set passphrase 12345678  
(new) # set vdom  
    command parse error before 'vdom'  
(new) # end  
# show wireless-controller vap new  
config wireless-controller vap  
    edit "new"  
        set ssid "new"  
        set passphrase ENC *****  
    next  
end
```

- When `vdom-mode` is `multi-vdom`:

- A VAP cannot be created in global:

```
# config global  
(global) # config wireless-controller vap  
command parse error before 'vap'  
Command fail. Return code 1
```

- A VAP can be created in a VDOM:

```
# config vdom  
(vdom) # edit vdom2  
    current vf=vdom2:1  
(vdom2) # config wireless-controller vap  
(vap) # edit new  
    new entry 'new' added  
(new) # set ssid new  
(new) # set passphrase 12345678  
(new) # set vdom
```

```

        command parse error before 'vdom'
    (new) # end
    (vdom2) # sh wireless-controller vap new
        config wireless-controller vap
            edit "new"
                set ssid "new"
                set passphrase ENC *****
            next
        end

```

### To check multi-vdom VAP entry authentication:

- When vdom-mode is multi-vdom, references to user-group and radius can be checked correctly when they are used by a VAP interface:

- A VAP interface with security-mode set to WPA2-Enterprise and RADIUS authentication:

```

(vdom2) # show wireless-controller vap new
    config wireless-controller vap
        edit "new"
            set ssid "new"
            set security wpa2-only-enterprise
            set auth radius
            set radius-server "peap"
        next
    end
(vdom2) # diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show user.radius.name peap
    entry used by table wireless-controller.vap:name 'new'

```

- A VAP interface with security-mode set to WPA2-Enterprise and User-group authentication:

```

(vdom2) # show wireless-controller vap new
    config wireless-controller vap
        edit "new"
            set ssid "new"
            set security wpa2-only-enterprise
            set auth usergroup
            set usergroup "group-radius"
        next
    end
(vdom2) # diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show user.group.name group-radius
    entry used by child table usergroup:name 'group-radius' of table wireless-
controller.vap:name 'new'

```

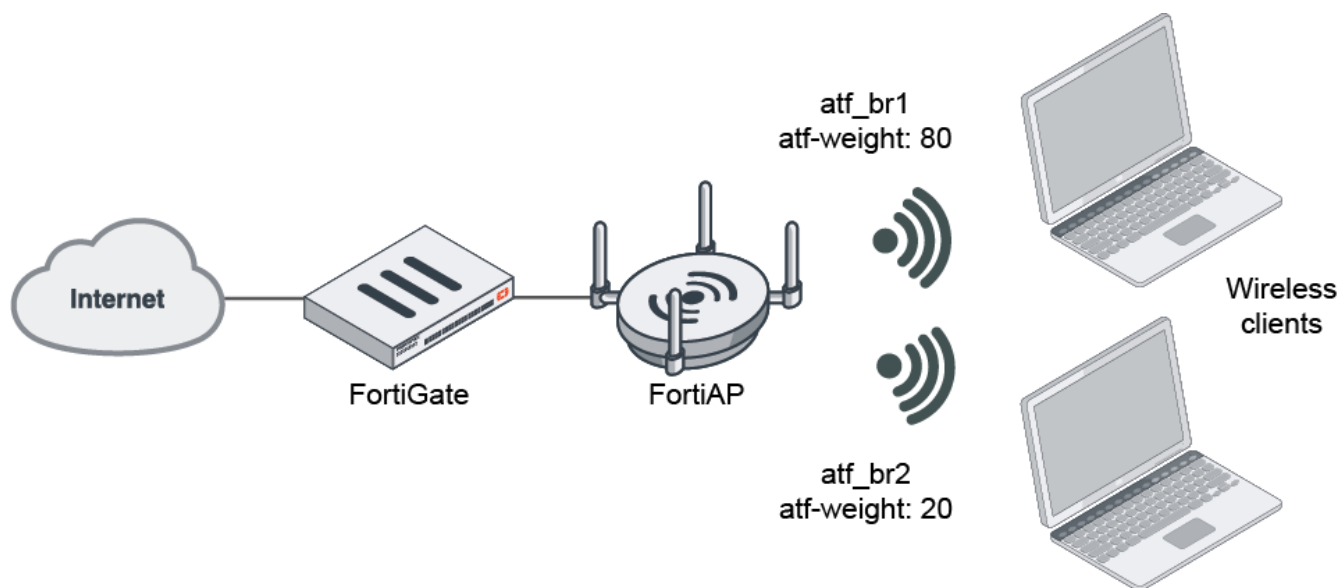
## Airtime fairness

WiFi has a natural tendency for clients farther away or clients at lower data rates to monopolize the airtime and slow down overall performance. Airtime fairness helps to improve the overall network performance in these conditions.

Airtime fairness has the following characteristics:

- Only applies to downlink traffic.
- Can be set on both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz radio bands.
- Can be set per-SSID. Each VAP is granted airtime according to the percentage assigned to the VAP.
- Can apply to all kinds of VAP (Bridge, Tunnel, or Mesh) and all kinds of authentication (Open, PSK, or Enterprise).
- Only applies to data and is not for control or management.

Airtime fairness is balanced from the TX side of the AP to the client since that's the only direction under the control of AP.



For example, there are two Bridge mode SSIDs with a wireless client and an airtime fairness weight of 80% and 20%. When traffic travels from the Ethernet to the wireless client, the traffic for each SSID matches the airtime fairness weight assigned to them.

Airtime fairness is not related to SSID type or authentication type. The following example uses Bridge mode SSID and Open Authentication security.

### To set the airtime fairness weight in SSID - GUI

To set airtime fairness weight from the GUI, you must enable Advanced Wireless Features viability (see [Advanced Wireless Features on page 137](#)).

1. Ensure Advanced Wireless Features is enabled.
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select the SSID you want to apply airtime fairness weight to.
3. Scroll down to **Advanced Settings**.
4. In **Airtime weight**, enter the weight you want.
5. When you are finished, click **OK**.

### To set the airtime fairness weight in SSID - CLI

The default `atf-weight` is 20 so there is no need to set this option for `atf_br2`.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "atf_br1"
    set atf-weight 80
    set ssid "atf_br1"
    set security open
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
  next
end

config wireless-controller vap
```



```
edit "atf_br2"
    set ssid "atf_br2"
    set security open
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
next
end
```

### To enable airtime fairness in radio

This example uses one FAP-S423E unit with airtime fairness enabled on the 5 GHz radio band.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "S423E_atf"
    config platform
        set type S423E
    end
    config radio-1
        set mode disabled
    end
    config radio-2
        set band 802.11ac
        set airtime-fairness enable
        set vap-all disable
        set vaps "atf_br1" "atf_br2"
        set channel "149"
    end
    set ext-info-enable enable
next
end

config wireless-controller wtp
edit "PS423E3X16000029"
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "S423E_atf"
    config radio-2
    end
next
end
```

### To verify the airtime fairness weight from FortiAP

```
PS423E3X16000029 # cw_diag -c atf
Airtime Fairness Info:
```

interface	ssid	configured-atf	applied-atf
Radio 0 ATF disabled			
Radio 1 ATF enabled			
wlan10	atf_ssid1	80	80
wlan11	atf_ssid2	20	20

```
PS423E3X16000029 # wlanconfig wlan10 showatfinfo
```

WLAN:SSID/Client(MAC Address)	Air time(%)	Config ATF(%%)	Assoc
wlan10:atf_ssid1	80.0	80.0	
wlan11:atf_ssid2	20.0	20.0	
-----:Unallocated Airtime	0.0		

## Verify the airtime fairness weight from real traffic

When two similar clients connect with two SSIDs, downlink traffic is passed from Ethernet to the wireless client with the same bit rate.

This example shows that `tx_bytes` from `atf_br1` is almost four times higher than `atf_br2`.

### To view traffic statistics from SSID1

```
PS423E3X16000029 # cw_diag -d vap 90:6C:AC:8A:66:10
VAP extension info
Radio 1 VAP 0:
    tx_packets           : 60543
    tx_bytes             : 70608777
    tx_data_packets      : 60543
    tx_data_bytes        : 70608777
    tx_datapyld_bytes    : 68308143
    tx_ucast_data_packets : 57462
    tx_mbcst_data_packets : 3081
    tx_discard           : 94193
```

### To view traffic statistics from SSID2

```
PS423E3X16000029 # cw_diag -d vap 90:6C:AC:8A:66:11
VAP extension info
Radio 1 VAP 1:
    tx_packets           : 18839
    tx_bytes             : 19731946
    tx_data_packets      : 18839
    tx_data_bytes        : 19731946
    tx_datapyld_bytes    : 19016064
    tx_ucast_data_packets : 15760
    tx_mbcst_data_packets : 3079
    tx_discard           : 84924
```

## Configuring security

You can secure access to your wireless network by configuring the following security modes on an SSID:

- Open — Unsecured.
- [Captive portal](#) — Users connect to an open web portal defined in replacement messages. To navigate to any location beyond the web portal, the user must pass FortiGate user authentication.
- [Wi-Fi Protected Access version 2 \(WPA2\), WPA2-Personal and WPA2-Enterprise](#)
- [WPA3 Security on page 70](#)
  - WPA3-Enterprise
  - WPA3-Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE)
  - WPA3-SAE Transition
  - Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE)
  - OWE Transition
- OSU Server — Only Authenticated L2 Encryption Network (OSEN)

You can also secure your network by:

- [Adding a MAC filter](#)
- [Limiting the number of clients that can connect to an SSID](#)
- [Enabling multicast enhancement and IGMP Snooping](#)
- [Configuring WiFi with WSSO using Windows NPS and user groups on page 81](#)

## Captive Portal Security

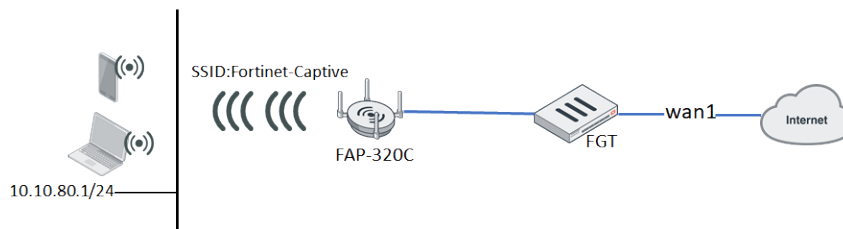
Captive portal security provides an access point that initially appears open. The wireless client can connect to the AP with no security credentials. The AP responds to the client's first HTTP request with a web page requesting user name and password. Until the user enters valid credentials, no communication beyond the AP is permitted.

The captive portal can be hosted on the FortiGate unit, or externally.

### Configuring WiFi captive portal security - FortiGate captive portal

The built-in FortiGate captive portal is simpler than an external portal. To configure a captive portal, you need to create an SSID, apply the SSID to the FortiAP, and create a policy from the SSID to the Internet.

The following shows a simple network topology for this recipe:



### To configure a WiFi Captive Portal - GUI

1. Create a local user:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > User Definition**, then click **Create New**.
  - b. In the **Users/Groups Creation Wizard**, select **Local User**, then click **Next**.
  - c. Enter the desired values in the **Username** and **Password** fields, then click **Next**.
  - d. On the **Contact Info** tab, fill in any information as desired, then click **Next**. You do not need to configure any contact information for the user.
  - e. On the **Extra Info** tab, set the **User Account Status** to **Enabled**.
  - f. If the desired user group already exists, enable **User Group**, then select the desired user group.
  - g. Click **Submit**.
2. Create a user group:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > User Definition**, then click **Create New**.
  - b. Enter the desired group name.
  - c. For **Type**, select **Firewall**.
  - d. For **Members**, click the + button. In the dropdown list, select the local user you created in step 1 and click **OK**.
  - e. Click **OK**.

## 3. Create a captive portal SSID:

- a. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs**, click **Create New** and select **SSID**.
- b. Enter the desired interface name. For **Traffic mode**, select **Tunnel**.
- c. In the **Address > IP/Network Mask** field, enter the IP address. **DHCP Server** is enabled by default. You can modify the DHCP IP address range manually.
- d. In the **SSID** field, enter the desired SSID name. For **Captive Portal**, select **Security**.
- e. Configure the following:

<b>Portal Type</b>	The portal can provide authentication and/or disclaimer, or perform user email address collection. To enable email collection, go to <b>System &gt; Feature Visibility</b> , and enable <b>Email Collection</b> , then select <b>Email Collection</b> for <b>Portal Type</b> .
<b>Authentication Portal</b>	Local
<b>User Groups</b>	Select permitted user groups or select <b>Use Groups from Policies</b> , which permits the groups specified in the security policy.
<b>Exempt List</b>	Select exempt lists whose members will not be subject to captive portal authentication.
<b>Customize Portal Messages</b>	Click the link of the portal page that you want to modify. For more information see the Captive Portal chapter of the Authentication Guide.

- f. Click **OK**.

## 4. Select the SSID on a managed FortiAP. The following configuration is based on a example using a managed FortiAP-320C and a "FAP320C-default" profile that is applied to the FortiAP-320C. Do one of the following:

- a. Select the SSID by editing the FortiAP:
  - i. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**. Select the FortiAP-320C and click **Edit**.
  - ii. Ensure that **Managed AP Status** is **Connected**.
  - iii. Under **WiFi Setting**, ensure that the configured FortiAP profile is the desired profile, in this case FAP320C-default. Click **Edit entry**.
  - iv. To broadcast the SSID from 2.4 G radio, scroll to **Radio 1 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - v. To broadcast the SSID from 5 G radio, scroll to **Radio 2 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - vi. Click **OK**.
- b. Select the SSID by editing the FortiAP profile:
  - i. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**. Select the FAP320C-default profile, then click **Edit**.
  - ii. To broadcast the SSID from 2.4 G radio, scroll to **Radio 1 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - iii. To broadcast the SSID from 5 G radio, scroll to **Radio 2 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - iv. Click **OK**.

## 5. Create the SSID-to-Internet firewall policy:

- a. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy**, then click **Create New**.
- b. Enter the desired policy name.
- c. From the **Incoming Interface** dropdown list, select the source interface, such as wifi-vap.
- d. From the **Outgoing Interface** dropdown list, select the destination interface, such as wan1.

- e. In the **Source** and **Destination** fields, select all. In the **Service** field, select **ALL**. If desired, you can configure different values for these fields.
- f. Click **OK**.

### To deploy captive portal SSID to FortiAP units - CLI

1. Create a local user:

```
config user local
  edit "local"
    set type password
    set passwd ***
  next
end
```

2. Create a user group:

```
config user group
  edit "group-local"
    set member "local"
  next
end
```

3. Create a captive portal SSID. Do one of the following:

a. Create a captive portal SSID with portal type **Authentication**:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Captive"
    set security captive-portal
    set portal-type auth
    set selected-usergroups "group-local"
  next
end
```

b. Create a captive portal SSID with portal type **Disclaimer + Authentication**:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Captive"
    set security captive-portal
    set portal-type auth+disclaimer
    set selected-usergroups "group-local"
  next
end
```

c. Create a captive portal SSID with portal type **Disclaimer Only**:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Captive"
    set security captive-portal
    set portal-type disclaimer
  next
end
```

d. Create a captive portal SSID with portal type **Email Collection**:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Captive"
    set security captive-portal
    set portal-type email-collect
  next
end
```

**e. Configure an IP address and enable DHCP:**

```
config system interface
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ip 10.10.80.1 255.255.255.0
  next
end
config system dhcp server
  edit 1
    set dns-service default
    set default-gateway 10.10.80.1
    set netmask 255.255.255.0
    set interface "wifi-vap"
    config ip-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 10.10.80.2
        set end-ip 10.10.80.254
      next
    end
    set timezone-option default
  next
end
```

**4. Select the SSID on a managed FortiAP. The following configuration is based on a example using a managed FortiAP-320C and a "FAP320C-default" profile that is applied to the FortiAP-320C:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP320C3X14000640"
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP320C-default"
  next
end
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP320C-default"
    config radio-1
      set vap-all disable
      set vaps "wifi-vap"
    end
    config radio-2
      set vap-all disable
      set vaps "wifi-vap"
    end
  next
end
```

**5. Create the SSID-to-Internet firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set name "WiFi to Internet"
    set srcintf "wifi-vap"
    set dstintf "wan1"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set fsso disable
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

## Configuring WiFi captive portal security - external server

An external captive portal is a web page on a web server. The essential part of the web portal page is a script that gathers the user's logon credentials and sends back to the FortiGate a specifically-formatted POST message. The portal page can also contain links to local information such as legal notices, terms of service and so on. Without authenticating, the user cannot access any other information. This is sometimes called a "walled garden".

On the captive portal page, the user submits credentials, which the script returns to the FortiGate at the URL

```
https://<FGT_IP>:1000/fgtauth with data
magic=session_id&username=<username>&password=<password>.
```

(The magic value was provided in the initial FortiGate request to the web server.)

To ensure that credentials are communicated securely, enable the use of HTTPS for authentication:

```
config user setting
    set auth-secure-http enable
end
```

### To configure use of an external WiFi Captive Portal - GUI:

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and create your SSID.  
If the SSID already exists, you can edit the SSID or you can edit the WiFi interface in **Network > Interfaces**.
2. In **Security Mode**, select **Captive Portal**.
3. Enter

<b>Portal Type</b>	The portal can provide authentication and/or disclaimer, or perform user email address collection.
<b>Authentication Portal</b>	External - enter the FQDN or IP address of the external portal. Typically, this is the URL of a script. Do <b>not</b> include the protocol (http:// or https://) part of the URL.
<b>User Groups</b>	Select permitted user groups or select <b>Use Groups from Policies</b> , which permits the groups specified in the security policy.
<b>Exempt List</b>	Select exempt lists whose members will not be subject to captive portal authentication.
<b>Redirect after Captive Portal</b>	Original Request  Specific URL - enter URL

4. Select **OK**.

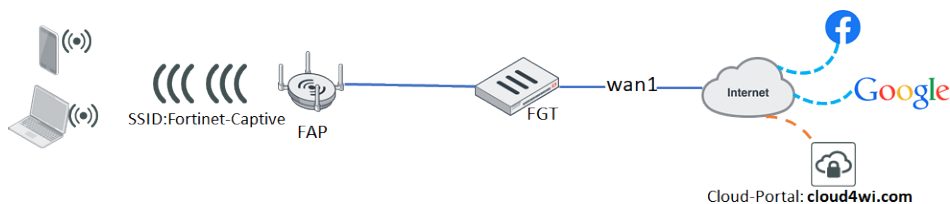
## Configuring wildcard address in captive portal walled garden

This topic describes how to add and apply wildcard domain names to the walled garden of captive-portal SSID.

Captive portal SSID supports the walled garden function where WiFi clients can access preconfigured hostnames and addresses that are exempted from portal authentication.

You can configure FQDN entries using wildcard domain names, for example, \*.google.\*, \*.facebook.com, and so on, so that one entry can have multiple matches.

## Sample topology



This example uses the wildcard address feature in the following ways:

- A tunnel mode captive portal works with the third-party cloud based portal server **cloud4wi.com**.
- Connected wireless clients can access Facebook and Google websites directly even before firewall authentication via FortiGate.
- Connected wireless clients opens the portal page of cloud4wi.com and can access other Internet resources as soon as they pass authentication by FortiGate.

## Sample configuration

### To create the wildcard FQDN address - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses** and click **Create New > Address**.
2. In the **New Address** page, enter the address **Name**, for example, **facebook** and **google**.
3. For **Type**, select **FQDN**.
4. For **FQDN**, enter a wildcard FQDN name, for example **\*.facebook.com** and **\*.google.\***.
5. Click **OK**.



This wildcard FQDN type firewall address is different from entries in **Policy & Objects > Wildcard FQDN Addresses** that cannot be used directly in firewall policy source or destination addresses.

### To create a third-party cloud portal server address - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses** and click **Create New > Address**.
2. In the **New Address** page, enter the address **Name**, for example, **cloud-portal**.
3. For **Type**, select **FQDN**.
4. For **FQDN**, enter the FQDN name, for example, **cloud4wi.com**.
5. Click **OK**.

### To create a captive portal VAP with the third-party cloud portal server - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi Controller > SSID** and select **Create New > SSID**.
2. For **Traffic Mode**, select **Tunnel**.
3. In the **Address** section, enter the **IP/Network Mask**, for example, **10.10.80.1/24**.
4. Optionally, you can change the DHCP **Address Range** in the **DHCP Server** section.
5. In the **WiFi Settings** section:
  - a. Enter the **SSID** name, for example, **Fortinet-Captive**.
  - b. For **Security Mode**, select **Captive Portal**.
  - c. For **Portal Type**, select **Authentication**.



- d. For **Authentication Portal**, select **External** and enter **cloud4wi.com**.
  - e. Click **User Groups** and select the created user group, for example, **group-local**; or click **Create** to create a new user group.
6. Click **OK**.

To support a third-party cloud portal, use one of the following methods.

#### To support a third-party cloud portal using Exempt Destinations/Services - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi Controller > SSID**.
2. Select the SSID you created, for example, **Fortinet-Captive** and click **Edit**.
3. In the **WiFi Settings** section, click **Exempt Destinations/Services**.
4. In the **Select Entries** pane **Address** list, select the wildcard FQDN addresses, for example, **facebook** and **google**, and the cloud portal address, for example, **cloud-portal**.
5. Still in the **Select Entries** pane, click **Service** and select **HTTP**, **HTTPS**, and **DNS**.
6. Click **OK**.

#### To support a third-party cloud portal using firewall policy - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and click **Create New**.
2. Enter the **Name**, for example, **Exempt Service**.
3. Click **Incoming Interface** and select **wifi-vap**.
4. Click **Outgoing Interface** and select **wan1**.
5. Click **Source** and select **all**.
6. Click **Destination** and select the wildcard FQDN addresses, for example, **facebook** and **google**, and the cloud portal address, for example, **cloud-portal**.
7. Click **Service** and select **HTTP**, **HTTPS**, and **DNS**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Use CLI commands to enable `captive-portal-exempt`. In this example, the `policy_id` is 2.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 2
    set captive-portal-exempt enable
  next
end
```

#### To create the wildcard FQDN address - CLI

```
config firewall address
  edit "facebook"
    set type fqdn
    set fqdn "*.facebook.com"  <-- New support for "*" in fqdn address
  next
  edit "google"
    set type fqdn
    set fqdn "*.google.*"      <-- New support for "*" in fqdn address
  next
end
```

**To create a third-party cloud portal server address - CLI**

```
config firewall address
  edit "cloud-portal"
    set type fqdn
    set fqdn "cloud4wi.com"
  next
end
```

**To create a tunnel mode captive portal VAP with the third-party cloud portal server - CLI**

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Captive"
    set security captive-portal
    set external-web "cloud4wi.com"
    set selected-usergroups "group-local"
    set intra-vap-privacy enable
  next
end
```

**To create security-exempt-list and select it in vap - CLI**

```
config user security-exempt-list
  edit "wifi-vap-exempt-list"
    config rule
      edit 1
        set dstaddr "facebook" "google" "cloud-portal"
        set service "HTTP" "HTTPS" "DNS"
      next
    end
  end
end
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set security-exempt-list "wifi-vap-exempt-list"
  next
end
```

**To create a captive-portal-exempt firewall policy and move it before the regular outgoing policy - CLI**

```
config firewall policy
  edit 2
    set name "Exempt Service"
    set srcintf "wifi-vap"
    set dstintf "wan1"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "cloud-portal" "facebook" "google"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "DNS" "HTTP" "HTTPS"
    set captive-portal-exempt enable
    set nat enable
  next
  edit 1
    set name "outgoing"
```

```
        set srcintf "wifi-vap"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
    move 2 before 1
end
```

Although `destination-hostname-visibility` is enabled by default, ensure this setting is enabled so that FQDN addresses can be resolved.

### To enable destination-hostname-visibility

```
config system network-visibility
    set destination-hostname-visibility enable
end
```

## Captive portal authentication when bridged via software switch

When a tunnel mode SSID or a VLAN sub-interface of an SSID is bridged with other interfaces via a software switch, you must set the `intra-switch-policy` to `explicit` when the switch interface is created in order to enable captive portal authentication.

### To configure captive portal authentication on an SSID or VLAN sub-interface:

#### 1. Configure the local user:

```
config user local
    edit "user1"
        set passwd *****
    next
end
```

#### 2. Configure the user group:

```
config user group
    edit "wifi-group"
        set member "user1"
    next
end
```

#### 3. Configure the VAP:

```
config wireless-controller vap
    edit "test-captive"
        set ssid "test-captive"
        set security captive-portal
        set portal-type auth+disclaimer
        set selected-usergroups "wifi-group"
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```

4. Create a software switch interface consisting of a tunnel VAP with captive portal security and a physical interface (port7):

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "test-ssw"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set member "port7" "test-captive"
        set intra-switch-policy explicit
    next
end
```

5. Create the firewall policy:

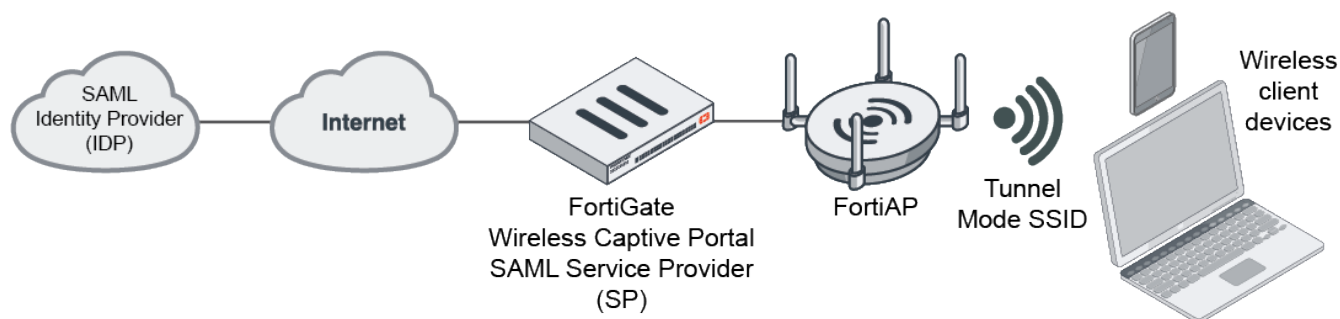
```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "test-captive" "port7"
        set dstintf "port7" "test-captive"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat disable
    next
end
```

6. Connect the external DHCP server to the physical interface.
7. Connect a WiFi client to the tunnel VAP. The client will get an IP assignment from the DHCP server and pass the captive portal authentication.
8. Verify the authenticated firewall users list:

```
# diagnose firewall auth list
10.100.250.250, ul
    src_mac: fc:d8:d0:9a:8b:85
    type: fw, id: 0, duration: 29, idled: 12
    expire: 288, allow-idle: 300
    flag(100): wso
    packets: in 229 out 162, bytes: in 192440 out 22887
    user_id: 16777218
    group_id: 2
    group_name: wifi
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered -----
```

## Captive portal authentication using SAML credentials

When a SAML user has been configured on the FortiGate, a user group containing this SAML user can be applied to a captive portal in a wireless tunnel mode SSID. You can configure both a captive portal exempt firewall policy to allow wireless clients to contact the SAML IDP and a firewall policy with the SAML user group applied to allow authenticated traffic. When wireless clients connect to the SSID, they will be redirected to a login page for wireless authentication using SAML.



## To configure SAML Authentication - GUI

1. Create a SAML server on a FortiGate:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > Single Sign-On** and click **Create new**.
  - b. Enter a **Name** for the SAML server (saml-fac) and configure the Service Provider and Identity Provider information.

Edit Single Sign-On

Name

Service Provider Configuration

Entity ID

Assertion consumer service URL

Single logout service URL

Certificate ☐

Identity Provider Configuration ?

Type Fortinet Product Custom

Address

Prefix

Certificate REMOTE\_Cert\_2 ▼

Additional SAML Attributes ?

AD FS claim ☐

Attribute used to identify users

Attribute used to identify groups

- c. When you are finished, click **Submit**.
2. Create a user group with members as the SAML server you created:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > User Groups** and click **Create New**.
  - b. Enter a **Name** for the group (saml\_grp).
  - c. In the **Remote Groups** table, click **Add**.

- d. In the **Remove Server** dropdown, select the SAML server you created (saml-fac) and click **OK**.

**Edit User Group**

Name:

Type:

Members:  +

**Remote Groups**

+Add Edit Delete

Remote Server	Group Name
saml-fac	
1	

OK Cancel

3. Select the user group in a Captive portal VAP:
- Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > SSIDs** and click **Create New > SSID**.
  - Enter an **SSID** name (\_CAP\_SAML).
  - Ensure that **Traffic mode** is set to **Tunnel**.
  - Under **Security Mode Settings**, set the **Security mode** to **Captive Portal**.
  - In **User groups**, select the group you created (saml\_grp).

Edit Interface

WiFi Settings

SSID

Client limit ☐

Broadcast SSID ☒

Beacon advertising ☐ Name ☐ Model ☐ Serial number

Security Mode Settings

Security mode

Portal type

Authentication portal ☒ Local ☐ External

User groups 

saml\_grp

+

x

Customize portal messages ☐

Exempt sources 

+

Exempt destinations/services 

ext

x

fac

x

saml

x

+

Redirect after Captive Portal ☐ Original Request ☒ Specific URL

- f. Configure other settings as needed.
- g. When you are finished, click **OK**.
4. Create a firewall policy with `captive-portal-exempt` enabled to ensure wireless clients can access the SAML server without authentication:
  - a. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and click **Create New**.
  - b. Configure the following:

Incoming Interface	Select the captive portal VAP (_CAP_SAML).
Source	<b>all</b>
Destination	Select the saml server.
Action	<b>ACCEPT</b>

Edit Policy

Name ⓘ

exempt

Incoming Interface

\_CAP\_SAML

Outgoing Interface

wan1

Source

all

+

Destination

saml

+

Schedule

always

Service

ALL

+

Action

ACCEPT DENY

Inspection Mode

Flow-based Proxy-based

Statistics (since last reset)

ID	8
Last used	N/A
First used	N/A
Active sessions	0
Hit count	0
Total bytes	0 B
Current bandwidth	0 bps

Clear Counters

- c. Configure other settings as needed.
- d. When you are finished, click **OK**.
- e. You can only configure `captive-portal-exempt` from the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
edit 8
set captive-portal-exempt enable
end
```

5. Create a policy to let wireless clients access the outbound after passing authentication:
  - a. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and click **Create New**.
  - b. Configure the following:

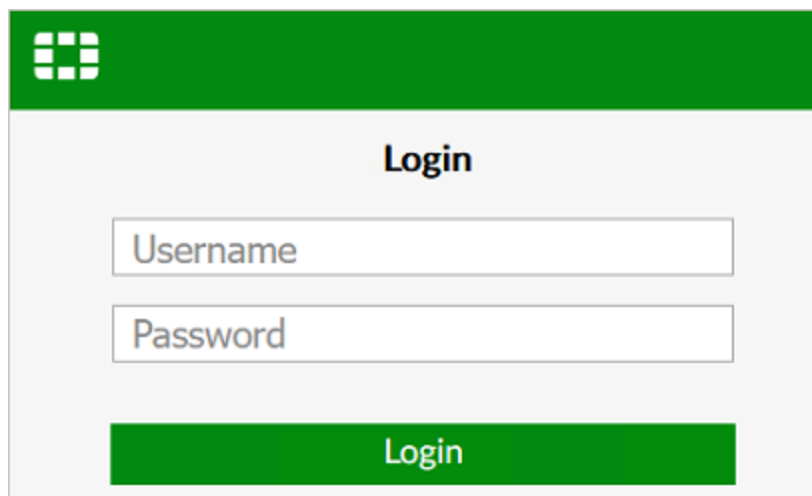
Incoming Interface	Select the captive portal VAP (_CAP_SAML).
Source	<b>all</b> Select the SAML user group ( <b>saml_grp</b> )
Destination	<b>all</b>
Action	<b>ACCEPT</b>



Edit Policy	
Name ⓘ	cap2
Incoming Interface	_CAP_SAML ▼
Outgoing Interface	wan1 ▼
Source	<div>all ✕</div> <div>saml_grp ✕</div> <div style="text-align: center;">+</div>
Destination	<div>all ✕</div> <div style="text-align: center;">+</div>
Schedule	always ▼
Service	<div> ALL ✕</div> <div style="text-align: center;">+</div>
Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACCEPT <input type="checkbox"/> DENY

- c. Configure other settings as needed.
- d. When you are finished, click **OK**.

When a wireless client connects to the SSID, it is redirected to the SAML login portal page. After the client submits the correct credentials, it can access the internet.



The image shows a SAML login portal. It has a green header with a white grid icon. Below the header, the word "Login" is centered. There are two input fields: "Username" and "Password". Below these fields is a green button with the text "Login".

### To configure SAML Authentication - CLI

1. Create a SAML server on a FortiGate:

```
config user saml
edit "saml-fac"
set entity-id "http://10.40.80.1:1000/saml/metadata/"
```

```

    set single-sign-on-url "https://10.40.80.1:1003/saml/login/"
    set single-logout-url "https://10.40.80.1:1003/saml/logout/"
    set idp-entity-id "http://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/wifiqa1234/metadata/"
    set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/wifiqa1234/login/"
    set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/wifiqa1234/logout/"
    set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_2"
    set user-name "username"
    set group-name "group"
    set digest-method sha1
  next
end

```

## 2. Create a user group with members as the SAML server you created:

```

config user group
  edit "saml_grp"
    set member "saml-fac"
  next
end

```

## 3. Select the user group in a Captive portal VAP:

```

config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi4"
    set ssid "_CAP_SAML"
    set security captive-portal
    set selected-usergroups "saml_grp"
    set security-exempt-list "wifi4-exempt-list"
    set security-redirect-url "http://www.example.com"
    set schedule "always"
  next
end

```

## 4. Create 2 policies from VAP to outbound:

- One policy with `captive-portal-exempt` enabled to ensure wireless clients can access the SAML server without authentication (firewall policy ID 8, name "exempt").
- One policy is a regular policy that lets wireless clients access the outbound after passing authentication (firewall policy ID 6, name "cap2").

The firewall policy ID is 8, the name is "exempt"

```

config firewall policy
  edit 8
    set name "exempt"
    set uuid d8f2b572-b2fa-51ec-d3ad-3110a44be109
    set srcintf "wifi4"
    set dstintf "wan1"
    set action accept
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "saml"
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set logtraffic all
    set nat enable
    set comments "Exempt policy"
    set captive-portal-exempt enable
  next
  edit 6

```

```
set name "cap2"
set uuid 3a4f1518-7b57-55dc-f5kf-21748a5ch415
set srcintf "wifi4"
set dstintf "wan1"
set action accept
set srcaddr "all"
set dstaddr "all"
set schedule "always"
set service "ALL"
set logtraffic all
set nat enable
set groups "saml_grp"
next
end
```

When a wireless client connects to the SSID, it is redirected to the SAML login portal page. After the client submits the correct credentials, it can access the internet.

## WPA2 Security

WPA2 security with pre-shared keys (PSK) for authentication is called WPA2-Personal. This can work well for one person or a group of trusted people. But, as the number of users increases, it is difficult to distribute new keys securely and there is increased risk that the key could fall into the wrong hands.

A more secure form of WPA2 security is WPA2-Enterprise. Users each have their own authentication credentials, verified through an authentication server, usually RADIUS. FortiOS can also authenticate WPA2-Enterprise users through its built-in user group functionality. FortiGate user groups can include RADIUS servers and can select users by RADIUS user group. This makes Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) possible.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Configuring WPA2-Personal security on page 63](#)
- [Configuring WPA2-Enterprise SSID on page 66](#)

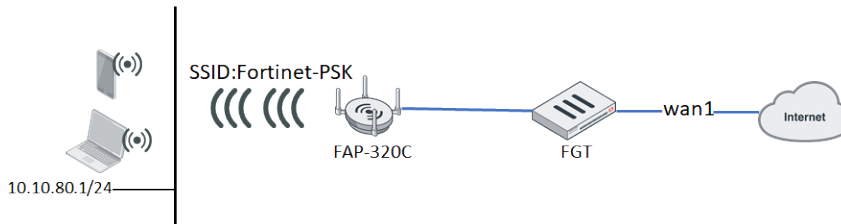
By default, WPA2 security encrypts communication using Advanced Encryption Standard (AES). But some older wireless clients support only Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP). You can change the encryption to TKIP or negotiable TKIP-AES in the CLI. For example, to accommodate clients with either TKIP or AES, enter:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit example_wlan
set security wpa-personal
set passphrase "hardtoguess"
set encrypt TKIP-AES
end
```

## Configuring WPA2-Personal security

WPA2-Personal security setup requires a pre-shared key (PSK) that you provide to clients. You can select between creating a single PSK or batch generating multiple pre-shared keys (MPSK). This section provides configuration instructions for deploying WPA2-Personal SSID with FortiAP. The steps include creating an SSID with a PSK, selecting the SSID for the FortiAP, and creating a policy from the SSID to the Internet.

The following shows a simple network topology:



### To deploy WPA2-Personal SSID to FortiAP units - GUI

1. Create a WPA2-Personal SSID:
  - a. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs**, select **SSID**, then click **Create New**.
  - b. Enter the desired interface name. For **Traffic mode**, select **Tunnel**.
  - c. In the **Address > IP/Network Mask** field, enter the IP address. **DHCP Server** is enabled by default. You can modify the DHCP IP address range manually.
  - d. In the **SSID** field, enter the desired SSID name. For **Security**, select **WPA2 Personal**.
  - e. In the **Pre-Shared Key** field, select **Single** as the pre-shared key mode.
  - f. Enter the password. The password must be 8 to 63 characters long.
  - g. Click **OK**.
2. Select the SSID on a managed FortiAP. The following configuration is based on an example using a managed FortiAP-320C and a "FAP320C-default" profile that is applied to the FortiAP-320C. Do one of the following:
  - a. Select the SSID by editing the FortiAP:
    - i. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**. Select the FortiAP-320C and click **Edit**.
    - ii. Ensure that **Managed AP Status** is **Connected**.
    - iii. Under **WiFi Setting**, ensure that the configured FortiAP profile is the desired profile, in this case FAP320C-default. Click **Edit entry**.
    - iv. To broadcast the SSID from 2.4 G radio, scroll to **Radio 1 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to select the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
    - v. To broadcast the SSID from 5 G radio, scroll to **Radio 2 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to select the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
    - vi. Click **OK**.
  - b. Select the SSID by editing the FortiAP profile:
    - i. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**. Select the FAP320C-default profile, then click **Edit**.
    - ii. To broadcast the SSID from 2.4 G radio, scroll to **Radio 1 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
    - iii. To broadcast the SSID from 5 G radio, scroll to **Radio 2 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
    - iv. Click **OK**.

**3. Create the SSID-to-Internet firewall policy:**

- a. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy**, then click **Create New**.
- b. Enter the desired policy name.
- c. From the **Incoming Interface** dropdown list, select the source interface, such as wifi-vap.
- d. From the **Outgoing Interface** dropdown list, select the destination interface, such as wan1.
- e. In the **Source** and **Destination** fields, select all. In the **Service** field, select **ALL**. If desired, you can configure different values for these fields.
- f. Click **OK**.

**To deploy WPA2-Personal SSID to FortiAP units - CLI****1. Create a WPA2-Personal SSID:**

- a. Create a VAP interface named "wifi-vap":

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-psk"
    set security wpa2-only-personal
    set passphrase "fortinet"
  next
end
```

- b. Configure an IP address and enable DHCP:

```
config system interface
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ip 10.10.80.1 255.255.255.0
  next
end
config system dhcp server
  edit 1
    set dns-service default
    set default-gateway 10.10.80.1
    set netmask 255.255.255.0
    set interface "wifi-vap"
    config ip-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 10.10.80.2
        set end-ip 10.10.80.254
      next
    end
    set timezone-option default
  next
end
```

**2. Select the SSID on a managed FortiAP. The following configuration is based on a example using a managed FortiAP-320C and a "FAP320C-default" profile that is applied to the FortiAP-320C:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP320C3X14000640"
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP320C-default"
  next
end
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP320C-default"
    config radio-1
      set vap-all disable
      set vaps "wifi-vap"
```

```
        end
        config radio-2
            set vap-all disable
            set vaps "wifi-vap"
        end
    next
end
```

### 3. Create the SSID-to-Internet firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "WiFi to Internet"
        set srcintf "wifi-vap"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Configuring WPA2-Personal security with MPSK

You can batch generate or import MPSK keys, export MPSK keys to a CSV file, dynamically assign VLANs based on used MPSK, and apply an MPSK schedule in the GUI.

In the GUI, MPSK key entries are organized in different MPSK groups. An MPSK group can be created manually or imported. When MPSK is enabled, the previous single passphrase is dropped and a dynamic VLAN is automatically enabled.

In the CLI, an `mpsk-profile` is assigned in the VAP settings and MPSK is enabled. The dynamic VLAN is automatically enabled. Only one MPSK profile can be assigned to one VAP at a time.

### To configure WPA2-Personal security with an MPSK group - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and edit your SSID entry.
2. In **Security Mode**, select **WPA2 Personal**.
3. In **Pre-shared Key**, select **Multiple** as the PSK mode.
4. In the table, click **Add > Create Group**.
5. Enter a group name and VLAN ID.
6. Configure the pre-shared key settings:
  - a. In the table, click **Add > Generate Keys**.
  - b. Configure the settings as needed and click **OK**.
7. Click **OK** to close the Pre-shared Key Group window.
8. Click **OK**.

You can go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WiFi Clients** to view the MPSK name in the **Pre-shared Key** column.

## To use an MPSK profile in the CLI

### 1. Configure the MPSK profile:

```
config wireless-controller mpsk-profile
  edit "wifi-mpsk"
    config mpsk-group
      edit "group-a"
        set vlan-type fixed-vlan
        set vlan-id 10
        config mpsk-key
          edit "key-a-1"
            set passphrase ENC
            set mpsk-schedules "always"
          next
        end
      next
    edit "group-b"
      set vlan-type fixed-vlan
      set vlan-id 20
      config mpsk-key
        edit "key-b-1"
          set passphrase ENC
          set concurrent-client-limit-type unlimited
          set mpsk-schedules "always"
        next
      end
    next
  end
end
```

### 2. Configure the VAP settings:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-mpsk"
    set ssid "wifi-mpsk"
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
    set mpsk-profile "wifi-mpsk"
    set dynamic-vlan enable
  next
end
```

### 3. Verify the event log after the WiFi client is connected:

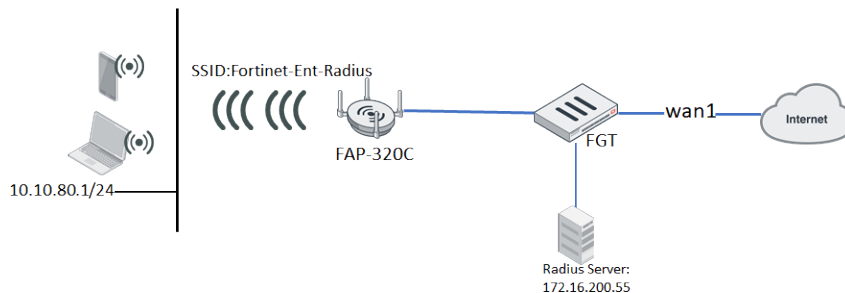
```
1: date=2020-07-10 time=16:57:20 logid="0104043573" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1594425440439070726 tz="-0700" logdesc="Wireless
client authenticated" sn="FP423E3X16000320" ap="FP423E3X16000320" vap="wifi-mpsk"
ssid="wifi-mpsk" radioid=2 user="N/A" group="N/A" stamac="3c:2e:ff:83:91:33"
srcip=10.0.10.2 channel=144 radioband="802.11ac" signal=-52 snr=50 security="WPA2
Personal" encryption="AES" action="client-authentication" reason="Reserved 0"
mpsk="key-a-1" msg="Client 3c:2e:ff:83:91:33 authenticated."
```

## Configuring WPA2-Enterprise SSID

This section provides configuration instructions for deploying WPA2-Enterprise SSID with FortiAP using either FortiOS user groups or a RADIUS server for authentication. Once you configure your authentication method, the remaining steps

include creating an SSID, selecting the SSID for the FortiAP, and creating a policy from the SSID to the Internet.

The following shows the network topology using RADIUS server authentication:



For instructions on how to configure user authentication with locally stored FortiOS user groups, see [Basic wireless network example on page 277](#). Note that authentication with local groups only supports PEAP, not EAP-TLS.

### To configure WPA2-Enterprise SSID to FortiAP units with RADIUS server authentication - GUI

1. Create a RADIUS server:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > RADIUS Servers** and click **Create New**.
  - b. Enter a **Name** for the server.
  - c. Under **Primary Server**, enter the IP address or server name.
  - d. In the **Secret** field, enter the secret key used to access the server.
  - e. Click **Test Connectivity** to verify the connection with the RADIUS server.
  - f. Click **Test User Credentials** to verify that the user account can be authenticated with the RADIUS server.
  - g. Optionally, enter the information for a secondary or backup RADIUS server.
  - h. Click **OK**.
2. Create a WPA2-Enterprise SSID:
  - a. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and click **Create New > SSID**.
  - b. Enter the desired interface name. For **Traffic mode**, select **Tunnel**.
  - c. In the **Address > IP/Network Mask** field, enter the IP address. **DHCP Server** is enabled by default. You can modify the DHCP IP address range manually.
  - d. In the **SSID** field, enter the desired SSID name. For **Security**, select **WPA2 Enterprise**.
  - e. In the **Authentication** field, select **RADIUS Server**. From the dropdown list, select the RADIUS server created in step 1.
  - f. Click **OK**.

### To configure WPA2-Enterprise SSID to FortiAP units with user group authentication - GUI

1. Create a user group:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > User Groups** and click **Create New**.
  - b. Enter a group name.
  - c. For **Type**, select **Firewall**.
  - d. For **Remote Groups**, click the + button. In the dropdown list, select the desired RADIUS server. Click **OK**.
  - e. Click **OK**.
2. Create a WPA2-Enterprise SSID:
  - a. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and click **Create New > SSID..**
  - b. Enter an interface name. For **Traffic mode**, select **Tunnel**.



- c. In the **Address > IP/Network Mask** field, enter the IP address. **DHCP Server** is enabled by default. You can modify the DHCP IP address range manually.
- d. In the **SSID** field, enter the desired SSID name. For **Security**, select **WPA2 Enterprise**.
- e. In the **Authentication** field, select **Local**. From the dropdown list, select the user group(s) permitted to use the wireless network.
- f. Click **OK**.

### To deploy WPA2-Enterprise SSID to FortiAP units - GUI

Select the SSID on a managed FortiAP. The following configuration is based on an example using a managed FortiAP-320C and a "FAP320C-default" profile that is applied to the FortiAP-320C. Do one of the following:

1. Select the SSID by editing the FortiAP:
  - a. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**. Select the FortiAP-320C and click **Edit**.
  - b. Ensure that **Managed AP Status** is **Connected**.
  - c. Under **WiFi Setting**, ensure that the configured FortiAP profile is the desired profile, in this case FAP320C-default. Click **Edit entry**.
  - d. To broadcast the SSID from 2.4 G radio, scroll to **Radio 1 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to select the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - e. To broadcast the SSID from 5 G radio, scroll to **Radio 2 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to select the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - f. Click **OK**.
2. Select the SSID by editing the FortiAP profile:
  - a. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiAP Profile**. Select the FAP320C-default profile, then click **Edit**.
  - b. To broadcast the SSID from 2.4 G radio, scroll to **Radio 1 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - c. To broadcast the SSID from 5 G radio, scroll to **Radio 2 > SSIDs**. Select **Manual**, then click + to create the Fortinet-PSK SSID.
  - d. Click **OK**.
3. Create the SSID-to-Internet firewall policy:
  - a. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy**, then click **Create New**.
  - b. Enter the desired policy name.
  - c. From the **Incoming Interface** dropdown list, select the source interface, such as wifi-vap.
  - d. From the **Outgoing Interface** dropdown list, select the destination interface, such as wan1.
  - e. In the **Source** and **Destination** fields, select all. In the **Service** field, select **ALL**. If desired, you can configure different values for these fields.
  - f. Click **OK**.

### To deploy WPA2-Enterprise SSID to FortiAP units - CLI

1. Configure an authentication method (RADIUS server or user group):

- Create a RADIUS server:
 

```
config user radius
  edit "wifi-radius"
    set server "172.16.200.55"
    set secret fortinet
  next
end
```
- Create a user group:

```
config user group
  edit "group-radius"
    set member "wifi-radius"
  next
end
```

## 2. Create a WPA2-Enterprise SSID:

- Create an SSID with authentication from the RADIUS server:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Ent-Radius"
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set auth radius
    set radius-server "wifi-radius"
  next
end
```

- Create an SSID with authentication from the user group:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ssid "Fortinet-Ent-Radius"
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set auth usergroup
    set usergroup "group-radius"
  next
end
```

### a. Configure an IP address and enable DHCP:

```
config system interface
  edit "wifi-vap"
    set ip 10.10.80.1 255.255.255.0
  next
end
config system dhcp server
  edit 1
    set dns-service default
    set default-gateway 10.10.80.1
    set netmask 255.255.255.0
    set interface "wifi-vap"
    config ip-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 10.10.80.2
        set end-ip 10.10.80.254
      next
    end
    set timezone-option default
  next
end
```

## 3. Select the SSID on a managed FortiAP. The following configuration is based on a example using a managed FortiAP-320C and a "FAP320C-default" profile that is applied to the FortiAP-320C:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP320C3X14000640"
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP320C-default"
  next
end
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP320C-default"
```

```
config radio-1
    set vap-all disable
    set vaps "wifi-vap"
end
config radio-2
    set vap-all disable
    set vaps "wifi-vap"
end
next
end
```

#### 4. Create the SSID-to-Internet firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "WiFi to Internet"
        set srcintf "wifi-vap"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## WPA3 Security

---



For full WPA3 support, we recommend you update your FortiGate and FortiAP devices to the latest supported firmware version.

- FortiGate devices running FortiOS 7.0.0 and later.
- FortiAP devices running 6.4.3 and later.
- FortiAP-S and FortiAP-W2 devices running 6.4.3 and later.
- FortiAP-U devices running 6.2.2 and later.

For more precise support information between FortiGate and FortiAP firmware versions, see each model's release notes.

---

You can configure the following WPA3 security modes:

- WPA3 Enterprise 192-bit
- WPA3 Enterprise Only
- WPA3 Enterprise Transition
- WPA3 Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE)
- WPA3 SAE Transition
- Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE)
- OWE Transition

### To configure WPA3 on an SSID - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi Controller > SSID**.
2. Create a new SSID, or edit a current one.

3. In the **WiFi Settings** section, set the **Security Mode** to a WPA3 option.

#### Security Mode Settings

Security mode	WPA2 Personal
Pre-shared Key	Captive Portal
Mode ⓘ	WPA3 SAE
Passphrase ⓘ	WPA3 SAE Transition
Client MAC Address	WPA3 Enterprise Only
RADIUS server	WPA2 Personal
	WPA2 Personal with Captive Portal
	WPA2 Enterprise
	Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE)
	Open
	OSEN

4. Configure the relevant security settings as needed.

If you set the security mode to either **WPA3-SAE** or **WPA3-SAE-Transition**, you can enable Hash-to-Element (H2E) only or Simultaneous Authentication of Equals Public Key (SAE-PK).

- **H2E only:** Use hash-to-element-only mechanism for PWE derivation.

#### Security Mode Settings

Security mode	WPA3 SAE
SAE password	•••••
SAE-PK authentication	<input type="checkbox"/>
Hash-to-Element (H2E) only ⓘ	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- **SAE-PK:** Enable or disable WPA3 SAE-PK.

When SAE-PK authentication option is enabled, the SAE-PK private key is mandatory. The private key can be generated by a third-party tool (for example, `sae_pk_gen` in `wpa_supplicant v2.10`) to meet the encryption requirement. FortiOS will verify the private key and reject invalid input.

#### Security Mode Settings

Security mode	WPA3 SAE
SAE password	•••••
SAE-PK authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SAE-PK private key	••••• 2/359
Hash-to-Element (H2E) only ⓘ	<input type="checkbox"/>

5. Click **OK**.

## Configuring WPA3 OWE - CLI

### To configure WPA3 OWE only

Clients that support WPA3 can connect with this SSID.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "80e_owe"
    set ssid "80e_owe"
    set security owe
    set pmf enable
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

### To configure WPA3 OWE Transition

Clients connect with normal OPEN or OWE depending on its capability. Clients which support WPA3 connect with OWS standard. Clients which cannot support WPA3 connect with Open SSID.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "80e_open"
    set ssid "80e_open"
    set security open
    set owe-transition enable
    set owe-transition-ssid "wpa3_open"
    set schedule "always"
  next
  edit "wpa3_owe_tr"
    set ssid "wpa3_open"
    set broadcast-ssid disable
    set security owe
    set pmf enable
    set owe-transition enable
    set owe-transition-ssid "80e_open"
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

## Configuring WPA3 SAE - CLI

### To configure WPA3 SAE

Clients that support WPA3 can connect with this SSID.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "80e_sae"
    set ssid "80e_sae"
    set security wpa3-sae
    set pmf enable
    set schedule "always"
    set sae-password *****
  next
end
```

### To configure WPA3 SAE Transition

There are two passwords in the SSID. If **passphrase** is used, the client connects with WPA2 PSK. If **sae-password** is used, the client connects with WPA3 SAE.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "80e_sae-tr"
    set ssid "80e_sae-transition"
    set security wpa3-sae-transition
    set pmf optional
    set passphrase *****
    set schedule "always"
    set sae-password *****
  next
end
```

### To configure WPA3 SAE and enable H2E only

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi"
    set ssid "Example_SSID"
    set security wpa3-sae
    set pmf enable
    set sae-h2e-only enable
    set schedule "always"
    set sae-password ENC *
  next
end
```

### To configure WPA3 SAE and enable SAE-PK

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi"
    set ssid "Example_SSID"
    set security wpa3-sae
    set pmf enable
    set sae-pk enable
    set sae-private-key "*****"
    set schedule "always"
    set sae-password ENC *
  next
end
```

**Note:** When SAE-PK authentication option is enabled, the `sae-private-key` is mandatory. The `sae-private-key` can be generated by a third-party tool (for example, `sae_pk_gen` in `wpa_supplicant v2.10`) to meet the encryption requirement. FortiOS will verify the private key and reject invalid input.

## Configuring WPA3 Enterprise - CLI

When using the following WPA3 Enterprise options, you can select the `auth` type to use either RADIUS authentication or local user authentication.

## To configure WPA3 Enterprise 192-bit



By default, this option is not show in the GUI. When you configure this SSID from the CLI, the GUI will list the security option as **WPA3 Enterprise 192-bit**.

Using this option, you can set the security mode to `wpa3-enterprise` to use 192-bit encryption with PMF mandatory.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "80e_wpa3"
    set ssid "80e_wpa3"
    set security wpa3-enterprise
    set pmf enable
    set auth radius
    set radius-server "wifi-radius"
    set schedule "always"
  next
  edit "80e_wpa3_user"
    set ssid "80e_wpa3_user"
    set security wpa3-enterprise
    set pmf enable
    set auth usergroup
    set usergroup "usergroup"
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

## To configure WPA3 Enterprise Only

Using this option, you can set the security mode to `wpa3-only-enterprise` to use WPA3 Enterprise with PMF mandatory.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wpa3"
    set ssid "wpa3"
    set security wpa3-only-enterprise
    set pmf enable
    set auth radius
    set radius-server "FAC"
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

## To configure WPA3 Enterprise Transition

Using this option, you can set the security mode to `wpa3-enterprise-transition` to use WPA3 Enterprise with PMF optional. A WPA3-Enterprise STA shall negotiate PMF when associating with an AP using WPA3-Enterprise transition mode.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wpa3"
    set ssid "wpa3"
    set security wpa3-enterprise-transition
    set pmf optional
    set auth radius
```

```
set radius-server "FAC"
set schedule "always"
next
end
```

## Adding a MAC filter

On each SSID or FortiAP, you can create a MAC address filter list to either permit or exclude a list of clients identified by their MAC addresses.

This is not the most secure method as someone seeking unauthorized access to your network can obtain MAC addresses from wireless traffic and use them to impersonate legitimate users. A MAC filter list should only be used in conjunction with other security measures such as encryption.

### To create and apply a MAC address filter - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses** and select **Create New > Address**.
2. Name the address and set the **Type** as **Device (MAC Address)**.
3. Enter the **MAC address(es)** you want to filter.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Address' dialog box. The 'Category' is set to 'Address'. The 'Name' is 'client-1'. The 'Type' is 'Device (MAC Address)'. The 'MAC address' field contains 'f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af'. The 'Interface' is set to 'any'. The 'Comments' field is empty. The 'OK' button is highlighted in green.

4. When you are finished, click **OK**.
5. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses** and select **Create New > Address Group**.
6. Name the address group
7. Click **Members** and select the address you created earlier.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit Address Group' dialog box. It has a title bar 'Edit Address Group'. Inside, there are several fields and controls:

- Category:** Two tabs, 'IPv4 Group' (selected) and 'IPv6 Group'.
- Group name:** A text input field containing 'mac-group'.
- Color:** A color selection icon followed by a 'Change' button.
- Type:** Two tabs, 'Group' (selected) and 'Folder'. There is an information icon (i) next to the label.
- Members:** A list box containing 'client-1' with a MAC address icon to its left. There is a '+' button below the list and an 'x' button to the right of the list.
- Static route configuration:** A label followed by an information icon (i) and a toggle switch that is currently turned off.
- Comments:** A text input field containing 'Write a comment...' and a character count '0/255'.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: 'OK' (green) and 'Cancel' (white).

8. When you are finished, click **OK**.
9. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select the SSID you want to apply the filter to.
10. Locate **Client MAC Address Filtering** and select an **Address group policy**:
  - **Disable**: Disable MAC address filtering policy for MAC addresses that are in the address group. This is the default.
  - **Allow**: Permit clients with MAC addresses that are in the address group.
  - **Deny**: Deny clients with MAC addresses that are in the address group.
11. Select the **Address group** you created.

12. When you are finished, click **OK**.

The SSID now accepts or denies the address group you configured.

### To create and apply a MAC address filter - CLI

1. Create the firewall address entry and set the `type` to `mac`:

```
config firewall address
edit "client-1"
set uuid f35b2080-a199-51ec-7d97-00495859217e
set type mac
set macaddr "f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af"
next
end
```

2. Create a firewall address group and select the address entry you just created.

```
config firewall addrgrp
edit "mac-group"
set uuid 26260750-a19a-51ec-b054-b385dab00c07
set member "client-1"
next
end
```

3. Under a wireless vap interface, there is a new `address-group-policy` option to help control the mac filter function.

- To allow the connection, select the created address-group and set the address-group-policy to allow:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "wifi.fap.01"
set ssid "ExampleSSID"
set passphrase ENC *
set schedule "always"
set address-group "mac-group"
```

```
        set address-group-policy allow
    next
end
```

- To deny the connection, select the created address-group and set the address-group-policy to deny:

```
config wireless-controller vap
    edit "wifi.fap.02"
        set ssid "ExampleSSID"
        set passphrase ENC *
        set schedule "always"
        set address-group "mac-group"
        set address-group-policy deny
    next
end
```

## Limiting the number of clients

You might want to prevent overloading of your access point by limiting the number of clients who can associate with it at the same time. Limits can be applied per SSID, per AP, or per radio.

### To limit the number of clients per SSID - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and edit your SSID.
2. Turn on **Maximum Clients** and enter the maximum number of clients in **Limit Concurrent WiFi Clients**.

### To limit the number of clients per AP- CLI

Edit the wtp-profile (FortiAP profile), like this:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "FAP221C-default"
        set max-clients 30
    end
```

### To limit the number of clients per radio - CLI

Edit the wtp-profile (FortiAP profile), like this:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "FAP221C-default"
        config radio-1
            set max-clients 10
        end
        config radio-2
            set max-clients 30
        end
    end
```

## Enabling multicast enhancement

FortiOS can translate multicast traffic into unicast traffic to send to clients, maintaining its own multicast client through Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) snooping. You can configure this in the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit example_wlan
    set multicast-enhance enable
    set me-disable-thresh 32
  end
```

If the number of clients on the SSID is larger than `me-disable-thresh`, multicast enhancement is disabled.

## Enabling IGMP Snooping

IGMP snooping on SSID can prevent WiFi clients and hosts from receiving traffic for a multicast group they have not explicitly joined. Upon detecting clients' multicast group IDs, FortiAPs join the corresponding multicast groups and the controller sends multicast packets to only CAPWAP multicast groups. Thus, the controller can prune multicast traffic from managed APs that do not contain a multicast listener (an IGMP client).

**To enable or disable IGMP snooping in the CLI:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit example_wlan
    set igmp-snooping {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

**To debug IGMP snooping:**

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlap -c vap-mcgrp
```

## Replacing WiFi certificate

You can replace the built-in WiFi certificate with one you upload.



These instructions apply to FortiWiFi devices using internal WiFi radios and FortiGate/FortiWiFi devices configured as WiFi Controllers that are managing FortiAP devices, and have WiFi clients that are connected to WPA2-Enterprise SSID and authenticated with local user groups.

On FortiOS, the built-in **Fortinet\_Wifi** certificate is a publicly signed certificate that is only used in WPA2-Enterprise SSIDs with local user-group authentication. The default WiFi certificate configuration is:

```
config system global
  set wifi-ca-certificate "Fortinet_Wifi_CA"
  set wifi-certificate "Fortinet_Wifi"
end
```

Consider the following factors:

- The **Fortinet\_Wifi** certificate is issued to **Fortinet Inc.** with common name (CN) **auth-cert.fortinet.com**. If a company or organization requires their own CN in their WiFi deployment, they must replace it with their own

certificate.

- The **Fortinet\_Wifi** certificate has an expiry date. When it expires, it must be renewed or replaced with a new certificate.

### To replace a WiFi certificate

1. Get new certificate files, including a root CA certificate, a certificate signed by the CA, and the corresponding private key file.

You can purchase a publicly signed certificate from a commercial certificate service provider or generate a self-signed certificate.

2. Import the new certificate files into FortiOS:

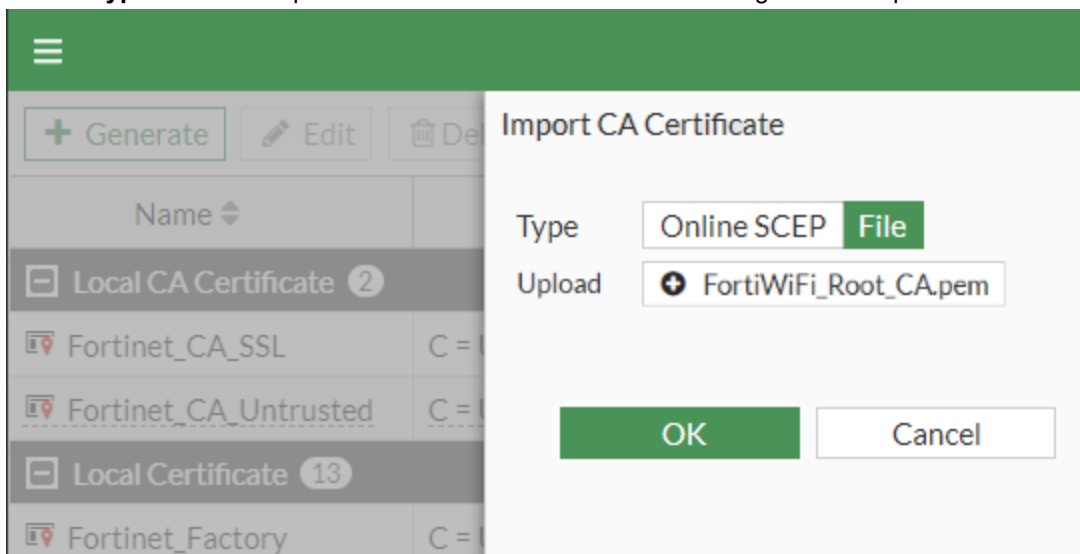
- a. In FortiGate, go to **System > Certificates**.

You may need to enable **Certificates** from **System > Feature Visibility**.

If VDOMs are enabled, go to **Global > System > Certificates**.

- b. Click **Import > CA Certificate**.

- c. Set the **Type** to **File** and upload the CA certificate file from the management computer.

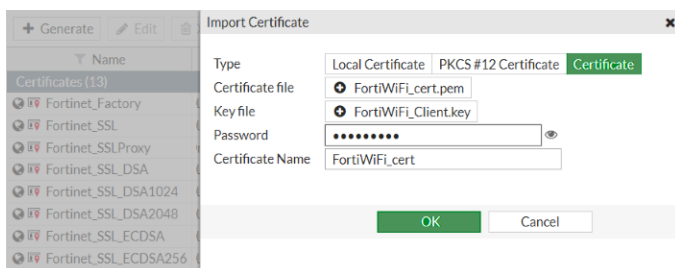


- d. Click **OK**.

The imported CA certificate is named **CA\_Cert\_N** or **G\_CA\_Cert\_N** when VDOMs are enabled, where **N** starts from **1** and increments for each imported certificate, and **G** stands for global range.

- e. Click **Import > Local Certificate**.

- f. Set the **Type** to **Certificate**, upload the certificate file and key file, enter the password, and enter the certificate name.



- g. Click **OK**.

The imported certificates are listed on the **Certificates** page.

3. Change the WiFi certificate settings:
  - a. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > WiFi Settings**.
  - b. In **WiFi certificate**, select the imported local certificate.
  - c. In the **WiFi CA certificate**, select the imported CA certificate.
  - d. Click **Apply**.

### To replace a WiFi certificate using the CLI

```
config system global
    set wifi-ca-certificate <name of the imported CA certificate>
    set wifi-certificate <name of the imported certificate signed by the CA>
end
```

### To restore the factory default WiFi certificates using the CLI

```
config system global
    set wifi-ca-certificate "Fortinet_CA"
    set wifi-certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
end
```

As the factory default certificates are self-signed, WiFi clients need to accept it at the connection prompt or import the **Fortinet\_CA** certificate to validate it.

### Additional Information

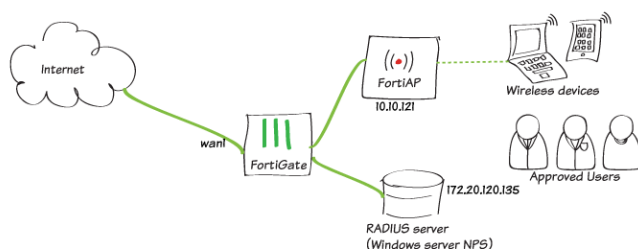
The **Fortinet\_Wifi** certificate can be updated automatically through the FortiGuard service certificate bundle update.

If the built-in **Fortinet\_Wifi** certificate has expired and not been renewed or replaced, WiFi clients can still connect to the WPA2-Enterprise SSID with local user-group authentication by ignoring any warning messages or bypassing **Validate server certificate** (or similar) options.

## Configuring WiFi with WSSO using Windows NPS and user groups

You can configure Wireless Single Sign-On (WSSO) using a Network Policy Server (NPS) and FortiGate user groups.

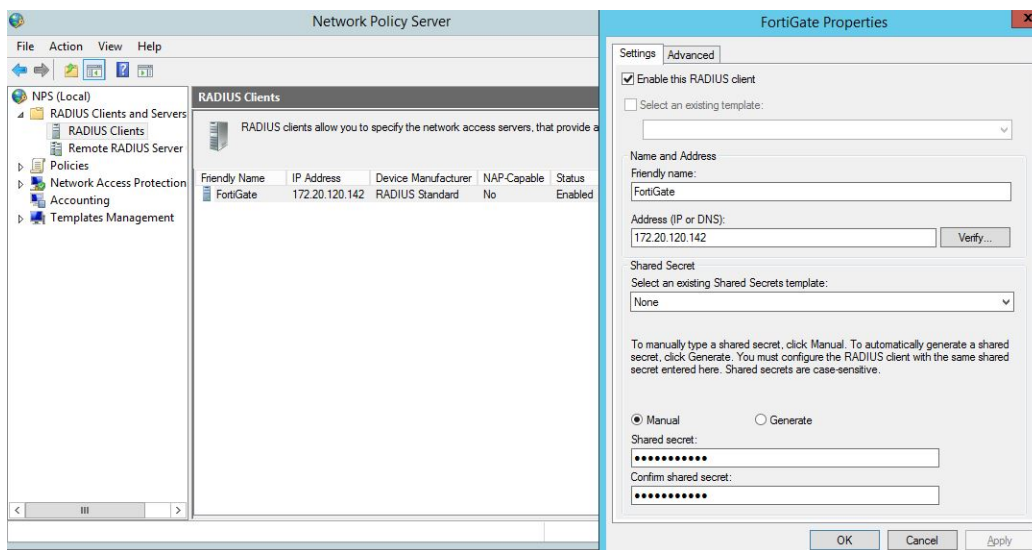
In the following example, the WiFi users are students at a school. The user group belongs to a Windows Active Directory (AD) group called **WiFiAccess**. When the users enter their WiFi user names and passwords, the FortiGate checks the local group **WiFi**. Since this user group has been set up on a remote authentication dial-in user service (RADIUS) server, the FortiGate performs user authentication against the NPS or RADIUS server. If the user is successfully authenticated, the FortiGate checks for a policy that allows the **WiFi** group access.



## To configure WSSO using Windows NPS and user groups

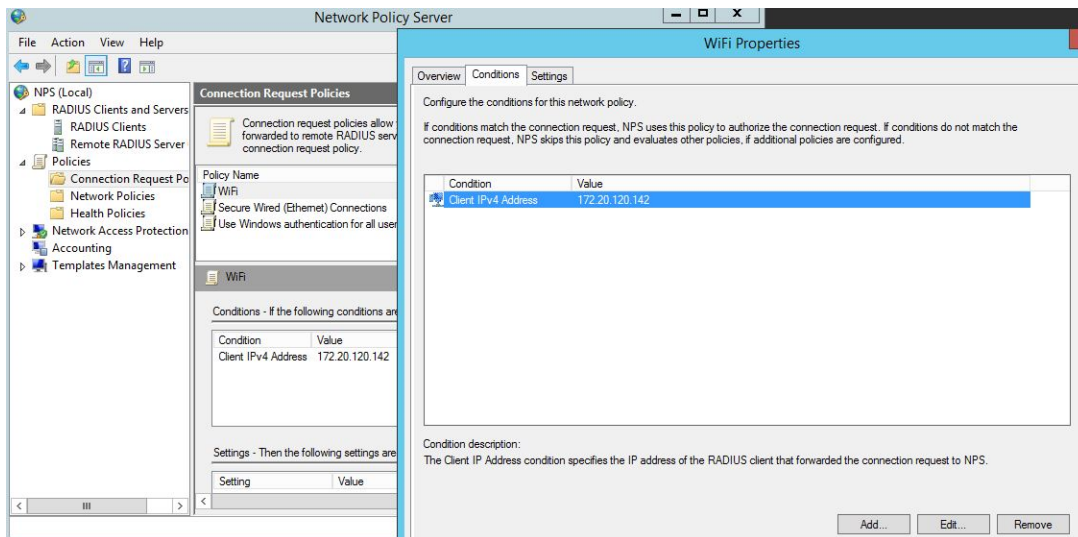
1. Register the FortiGate as a RADIUS client on the NPS:
  - a. In the NPS, go to **RADIUS Clients and Servers > RADIUS Clients**.
  - b. Right-click **RADIUS Clients** and select **New**.
  - c. Enter the FortiGate information:
    - Name
    - IP address (172.20.120.142)
    - Shared secret (password)
  - d. Click **OK**.

The FortiGate properties view:

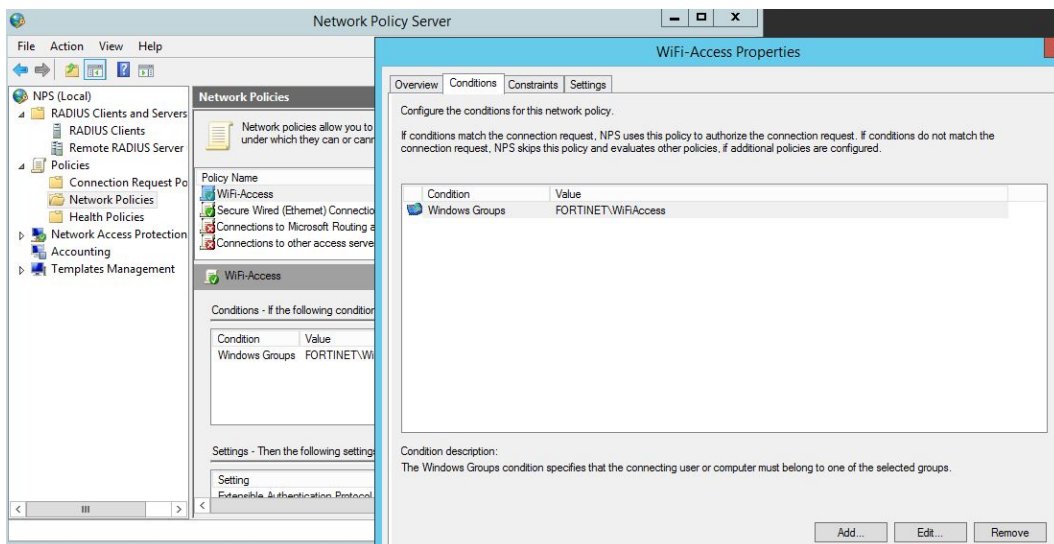


2. Create a connection request policy:
  - a. Go to **Policies > Connection Request Policies**.
  - b. Right-click **Connection Request Policies** and select **New**.
  - c. Enter the policy name (**WiFi**) and select the type of network access server.
  - d. Click **Next**. The **Specify Conditions** window opens.
  - e. Click **Add** and under **Connection Properties**, select **Client IPv4 Address**.
  - f. Configure the **Client IPv4 Address** as the FortiGate IP address.

- g. Keep clicking **Next** and leave the default settings until you can click **Finish**.

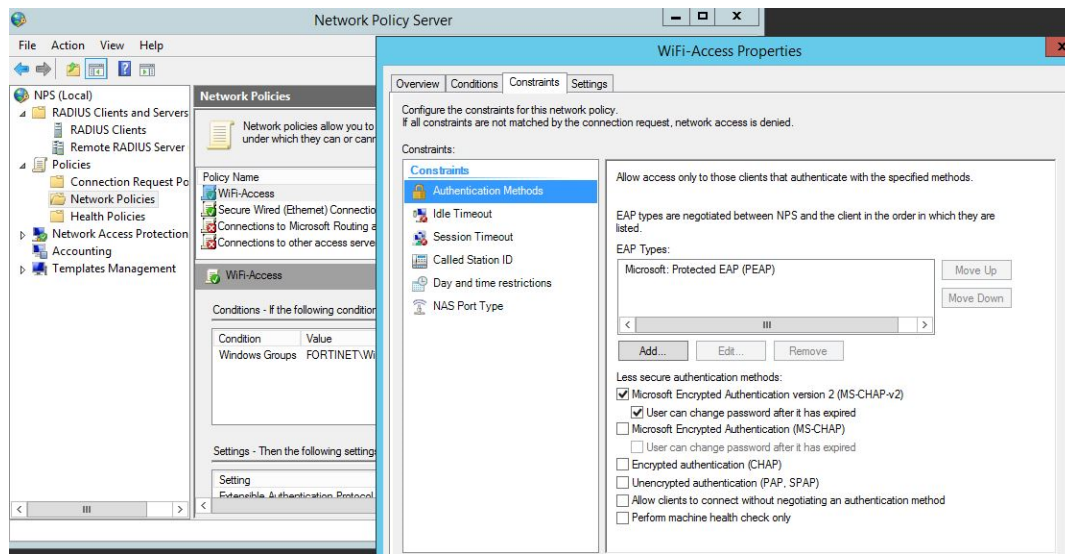


3. Create a network policy:
    - a. Go to **Policies > Network Policies**.
    - b. Right-click **Network Policies** and select **New**.
    - c. Enter the policy name (**WiFi-Access**) and select the type of network access server.
    - d. Click **Next**. The **Specify Conditions** window opens.
    - e. Click **Add** and under **Groups**, select **Windows Groups**.
    - f. Click **Add Groups** and enter the Windows AD group, **WiFiAccess**, as the **object name to select**.
    - g. Click **OK**, then **Next** twice to advance to the **Configure Authentication Methods** window.
    - h. For **EAP Types**, click **Add** and select **Microsoft: Protected EAP (PEAP)**.
    - i. Click **OK**.
    - j. For **Less secure authentication methods**, make sure only the **Microsoft Encrypted Authentication version 2 (MS-CHAP-v2)** and **User can change password after it has expired** checkboxes are selected.
    - k. Keep clicking **Next** and leave the default settings until you can click **Finish**.
- The WiFi-Access network policy conditions properties view:





The WiFi-Access network policy constraints properties view:



4. Configure the FortiGate to use the RADIUS server:
  - a. In FortiOS, go to **User & Authentication > RADIUS Servers**.
  - b. Click **Create New**.
  - c. Enter the server information:
    - Name (DC-RADIUS)
    - Authentication method (click **Specify** and select **MS-CHAP-v2**)
    - Domain controller IP address
    - Server secret

New RADIUS Server

Name:

Authentication method:  **Specify**

NAS IP:

Include in every user group: ☐

Primary Server

IP/Name:

Secret:

- d. Optionally, you can click **Test Connectivity**. After you enter the user ID and password, the result should be successful.
  - e. Click **OK**.
5. Configure the WiFi user group:
  - a. Go to **User & Authentication > User Groups**.
  - b. Click **Create New**.
  - c. Enter the user group information:
    - Name
    - Type (select **Firewall**)
  - d. Under **Remote Groups**, click **Add**. The **Add Group Match** pane opens.

- e. In the **Remote Server** dropdown, select the RADIUS server you just configured (**DC-RADIUS**).
- f. For **Groups**, click **Any**.
- g. Click **OK** to add the server.
- h. Click **OK** to save the user group.

New User Group

Name:

Type: **Firewall**  
 Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)  
 RADIUS Single Sign-On (RSSO)  
 Guest

Members:

---

Remote Groups

+ Add Edit Delete

Remote Server	Group Name
DC-RADIUS	Any

OK
Cancel

6. Create an SSID with RADIUS authentication:
  - a. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > SSIDs**.
  - b. Click **Create New > SSID**.
  - c. Configure the interface and enable **DHCP Server**.
  - d. Enter the Address range.

☒ DHCP Server

DHCP status: + Enabled - Disabled

Address range:   
+

Netmask:

Default gateway: Same as Interface IP Specify

DNS server: Same as System DNS Same as Interface IP Specify

Lease time:  second(s)

+ Advanced

- e. Configure the **WiFi Settings** section:
  - For **Security Mode**, select **WPA2 Enterprise**.
  - For **Authentication**, click **Local** and add the **WiFi** user group.

WiFi Settings

SSID:

Client limit: ☐

Broadcast SSID: ☒

Beacon advertising: ☐ Name ☐ Model ☐ Serial number

Security Mode Settings

Security mode: WPA2 Enterprise

Authentication: Local RADIUS Server

WiFi +



#### Local vs RADIUS Server Authentication:

- Local: PEAP terminates on the FortiGate, and FortiGate uses the built-in Fortinet\_WiFi certificate for the connection by default. To select a different certificate, see [Replacing WiFi certificate on page 79](#) for details.

- RADIUS Server: PEAP is forwarded to the RADIUS Server.

f. Click **OK**.

7. Create a security policy:

a. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy**.

b. Click **Create New**.

c. Configure the policy to have the SSID you created in step 6 as the **Incoming Interface** and the WiFi user group you created in step 5 as the **Source**.

d. Configure other settings as needed.

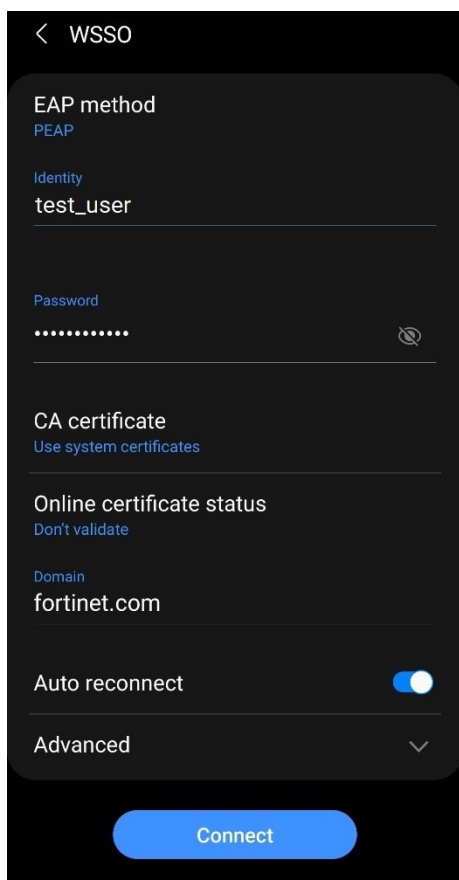
e. Click **OK**.

New Policy

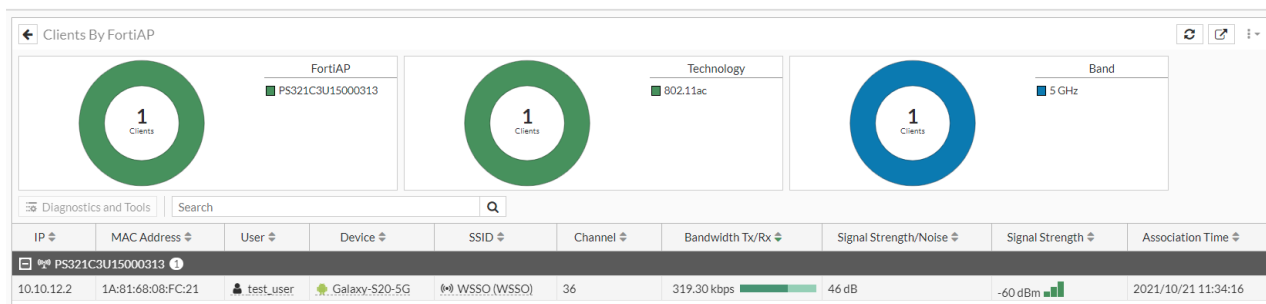
Name	WIFI-5GHz
Incoming Interface	FAP223C-5G (FAP223C-5G)
Outgoing Interface	wan1 (port3)
Source	all, WIFI
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACCEPT <input type="checkbox"/> DENY <input type="checkbox"/> IPsec
Inspection Mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Flow-based <input type="checkbox"/> Proxy-based

### To verify the WSSO authentication:

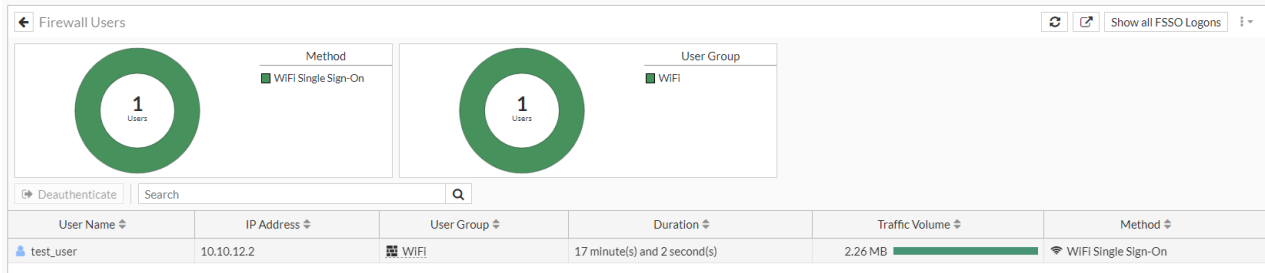
1. From the wireless client, the wireless settings may ask for the CA certificate for the PEAP connection.
  - On Android devices, you can select **Use system certificate** since the default FortiGate\_WiFi certificate is signed by a public CA. If asked to specify the domain, enter **fortinet.com**. See the example Android WiFi client settings:



- Alternatively, select **Don't Validate** to bypass validating the certificate used in the PEAP connection.
- 2. Use the credentials of a user that belongs to the Windows AD WiFiAccess group to verify that you have been successful authenticated.
  - a. Try connecting to the WiFi network.
  - b. Get authenticated.
  - c. Browse the internet.
- 3. Go to **Dashboard > WiFi > Clients By FortiAP** to see a list of logged on WiFi users.



4. Go to **Dashboard > User & Devices > Firewall Users**. The logged on user will be authenticated by Firewall Authentication and listed here.



## Defining SSID groups

Optionally, you can define SSID groups. An SSID group has SSIDs as members and can be specified just like an SSID in a FortiAP Profile.

### To create an SSID group - GUI

Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New > SSID Group**. Give the group a **Name** and choose **Members** (SSIDs, but not SSID groups).

### To create an SSID group - CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap-group
  edit vap-group-name
    set vaps "ssid1" "ssid2"
  end
```

## Configuring dynamic user VLAN assignment

Clients connecting to the WiFi network can be assigned to a VLAN. You can do this with RADIUS attributes when the user authenticates or with VLAN pooling when the client associates with a particular FortiAP. You cannot use both of these methods at the same time.

VLAN assignment methods:

- [VLAN assignment by RADIUS on page 88](#)
- [VLAN assignment by FortiAP group on page 92](#)
- [VLAN assignment by VLAN pool on page 93](#)

### VLAN assignment by RADIUS

You can assign each individual user to a VLAN based on information stored in the RADIUS authentication server. If the user's RADIUS record does not specify a VLAN ID, the user is assigned to the default VLAN for the SSID.

The RADIUS user attributes used for the VLAN ID assignment are:

Attribute type	Attributes value	Note
IETF 64 (Tunnel-Type)	13	VLAN
IETF 65 (Tunnel-Medium-Type)	6	IEEE-802
IETF 81 (Tunnel-Private-Group-ID)	1–4094	One VLAN ID per user. See <a href="#">Reserved VLAN IDs on page 29</a> . You can assign via name tag. See <a href="#">VLAN assignment by Name Tag on page 90</a> .

To configure dynamic VLAN assignment, you need to:

1. Configure access to the RADIUS server.
2. Create the SSID and enable dynamic VLAN assignment.
3. Create a FortiAP Profile and add the local bridge mode SSID to it.
4. Create the VLAN interfaces and their DHCP servers.
5. Create security policies to allow communication from the VLAN interfaces to the Internet.
6. Authorize the FortiAP unit and assign the FortiAP Profile to it.

#### To configure access to the RADIUS server

1. Go to **User & Authentication > RADIUS Servers** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter a **Name**, the name or IP address in **Primary Server IP/Name**, and the server secret in **Primary Server Secret**.
3. Select **OK**.

#### To create the dynamic VLAN SSID

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs**, select **Create New > SSID** and enter:

<b>Name</b>	An identifier, such as dynamic_vlan_ssid.
<b>Traffic Mode</b>	Local bridge or Tunnel, as needed.
<b>SSID</b>	An identifier, such as DYNSSID.
<b>Security Mode</b>	WPA2 Enterprise
<b>Authentication</b>	RADIUS Server. Select the RADIUS server that you configured.

2. Select **OK**.
3. Under Additional Settings, enable **Dynamic VLAN assignment**. If you do not see the toggle, you can enable from the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit dynamic_vlan_ssid
    set dynamic-vlan enable
    set vlanid 10
  end
```

Optionally, you can also assign a VLAN ID to set the default VLAN for users without a VLAN assignment. See [Reserved VLAN IDs on page 29](#).

### To create the FortiAP profile for the dynamic VLAN SSID

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**, select **Create New** and enter:

<b>Name</b>	A name for the profile, such as dyn_vlan_profile.
<b>Platform</b>	The FortiAP model you are using. If you use more than one model of FortiAP, you will need a FortiAP Profile for each model.
<b>Radio 1 and Radio 2</b>	
<b>SSID</b>	Select the SSID you created (example dynamic_vlan_ssid). Do not add other SSIDs.

2. Adjust other radio settings as needed.
3. Select **OK**.

### To create the VLAN interfaces

1. Go to **Network > Interfaces** and select **Create New > Interface**.
2. Enter:

<b>Name</b>	A name for the VLAN interface, such as VLAN100.
<b>Interface</b>	The physical interface associated with the VLAN interface.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	The numeric VLAN ID, for example 100.
<b>Addressing mode</b>	Select Manual and enter the IP address / Network Mask for the virtual interface.
<b>DHCP Server</b>	Enable and then select Create New to create an address range.

3. Select **OK**.
4. Repeat the preceding steps to create other VLANs as needed.

Security policies determine which VLANs can communicate with which other interfaces. These are the simple Firewall Address policy without authentication. Users are assigned to the appropriate VLAN when they authenticate.

### To connect and authorize the FortiAP unit

1. Connect the FortiAP unit to the FortiGate unit.
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
3. When the FortiAP unit is listed, double-click the entry to edit it.
4. In **FortiAP Profile**, select the FortiAP Profile that you created.
5. Select **Authorize**.
6. Select **OK**.

## VLAN assignment by Name Tag

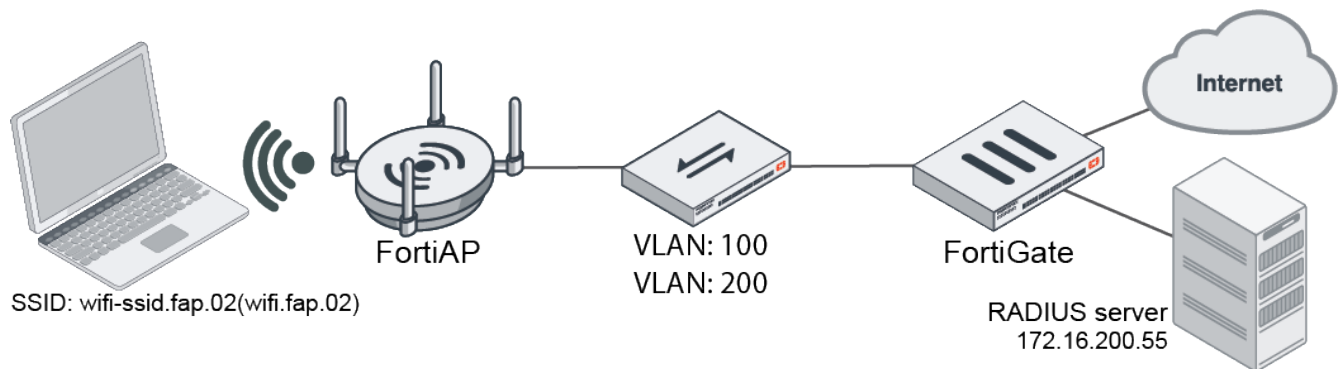
Typically, users can be assigned to VLANs dynamically according to the Tunnel-Private-Group-Id RADIUS attribute returned from the Access-Accept message. The value can either match a particular VLAN-ID on a VLAN interface, or a text string that matches a VLAN interface name.

However, there is a another option to match based on a `vlan-name` table defined under the virtual AP.

## Example use case

In the following example scenario, the customer site has set up the following topology:

- FortiGate manages a FortiSwitch and a FortiAP which is connecting through the FortiSwitch;
- FortiAP broadcasts a bridge mode SSID with dynamic-vlan enabled;
- FortiGate needs to assign VLAN-ID=100 on the station if vlan-name is "print", and assign VLAN-ID=200 on the station if vlan-name is "voip".



VLAN Name	VLAN ID
print	100
voip	200

Instead of creating VLAN interfaces on the FortiGate and naming them "print" and "voip" respectively, you can add one `vlan-name` table in the SSID:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi.fap.02"
    set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.02"
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set auth radius
    set radius-server "peap"
    set local-bridging enable
    set dynamic-vlan enable
    config vlan-name
      edit "print"
        set vlan-id 100
      next
      edit "voip"
        set vlan-id 200
      next
    end
  next
end
```

After the wireless station connects the SSID, when its attribute "Tunnel-Private-Group-Id" is "print", it will be assigned with VLAN-ID=100; when its attribute "Tunnel-Private-Group-Id" is "voip", it will be assigned with VLAN-ID=200.



**To create user accounts in the radius server (freeradius)**

```
voip      Cleartext-Password := "123456"
          Tunnel-Type = "VLAN",
          Tunnel-Medium-Type = "IEEE-802",
          Tunnel-Private-Group-Id = voip
print     Cleartext-Password := "123456"
          Tunnel-Type = "VLAN",
          Tunnel-Medium-Type = "IEEE-802",
          Tunnel-Private-Group-Id = print
```

**To verify the client connects and received the correct VLAN ID and IP address**

```
vf=1 wtp=2 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.02 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.80.101 ip6::
mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af vci= host=WiFi-Client-2 user=print group=peap signal=-39 noise=-95
idle=0 bw=2 use=6 chan=149 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_enterprise mpsk=
encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
```

```
vf=1 wtp=2 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.02 vlan_id=200 ip=10.200.80.101 ip6::
mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af vci= host=WiFi-Client-2 user=voip group=peap signal=-39 noise=-95
idle=20 bw=0 use=6 chan=149 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_enterprise mpsk=
encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
```

## VLAN assignment by FortiAP group


VLANs can be assigned dynamically based on FortiAP groups. Dynamic VLAN assignment allows the same SSID to be deployed to many APs, avoiding the need to produce multiple SSIDs.

You can create FortiAP groups to manage multiple APs at once. Grouping an AP enables you to apply specific profile settings and assign VLANs to all the APs in that group, simplifying the administrative workload. For example, you can group APs based on the floor or section of the office they are installed on. Each AP can belong to one group only. This feature is useful in large deployments as you can break down the broadcast domain, rather than putting all wireless clients into a single subnet. You can also apply security inspections and firewall rules based on the location of the wireless clients, providing you with more granular control over wireless traffic.





To create a FortiAP group, navigate to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and click **Create New > Managed AP Group**.

**To assign a VLAN by FortiAP group - GUI**

1. Navigate to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** to define an SSID.
2. Enable **VLAN Pooling** and select **Managed AP Group** to assign a VLAN ID to a specified group.  
You can also choose other methods of assigning VLAN IDs (see [VLAN assignment by FortiAP group on page 92](#)).
3. Click **Create New** to enter the VLAN ID you want to assign and the AP group you want to apply the ID to.

VLAN pooling  ☒ **Managed AP Group** Round Robin Hash

NAC profile ☐

ID	Managed AP Group
101	wtpgrp1
<div>  Create New            Edit            Delete           Search  </div>	
<div>1</div>	

4. Click **OK** to save.

#### To assign a VLAN by FortiAP group - CLI

In this example, VLAN 101, 102, or 103 is assigned depending on the AP's FortiAP group.

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit wlan
set vlan-pooling wtp-group
config vlan-pool
edit 101
set wtp-group wtpgrp1
next
edit 102
set wtp-group wtpgrp2
next
edit 103
set wtp-group wtpgrp3
end
end
end
```

## VLAN assignment by VLAN pool

You can define VLAN pooling and load balancing VLANs on the SSID configuration page. FortiGate automatically adds all load balancing VLANs to a zone based on the SSID they were defined in. VLANs are tied to the SSID interface, the zone name includes the SSID interface name followed by `.zone`. You must configure the network and DHCP options for each VLAN ID.

In an SSID, you can define a VLAN pool. As clients associate to an AP, they are assigned to a VLAN. A VLAN pool can:

- assign a specific VLAN based on the AP's FortiAP group, usually for network configuration reasons, or
- assign one of several available VLANs for network load balancing purposes (tunnel mode SSIDs only).

See [Reserved VLAN IDs on page 29](#).

If the VLAN pool contains no valid VLAN ID, the SSID static VLAN ID setting is used.

## Load balancing

VLAN pooling load balancing is available only for SSIDs operating in tunnel mode. There are two VLAN pooling methods available to provide load balancing options for wireless clients:

- **Round robin** - Assigns the least busy VLAN (the VLAN with the smallest number of clients) to new clients from the VLAN pool.
- **Hash** - Identifies which VLAN to use based on the hash value of the current number of clients connected to the SSID and the number of VLANs available in the pool.

### To assign a VLAN load balancing method - GUI

1. Navigate to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** to define an SSID.
2. Enable **VLAN Pooling** and select a load balancing method.
  - **Round Robin**: Assigns the next VLAN ID to each device as it is detected.
  - **Hash**: Always assigns the same VLAN ID to a specific device.

VLAN pooling 📘 ☒ Managed AP Group **Round Robin** Hash

NAC profile ☐

ID
101
102

+ Create New Edit Delete Search 🔍

3. Click **Create New** to enter the VLAN ID you want to assign.
4. Click **OK** to save.

### To assign a VLAN by round-robin selection - CLI

In this example, VLAN 101, 102, or 103 is assigned using the round-robin method:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit wlan
set vlan-pooling round-robin
config vlan-pool
edit 101
next
edit 102
next
edit 103
end
end
end
```

### To assign a VLAN by hash-based selection - CLI

In this example, VLAN 101, 102, or 103 is assigned using the hash method:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit wlan
    set vlan-pooling hash
    config vlan-pool
      edit 101
      next
      edit 102
      next
      edit 103
      end
    end
  end
end
```

## Configuring wireless NAC support

The wireless controller can support Network Access Control (NAC) profiles to onboard wireless clients into default VLANs. It can also apply NAC policies to match clients based on device properties, user groups, or EMS tags, and then assign the clients to specific VLANs. VLAN subinterfaces based on VAP interfaces are used for the VLAN assignments.

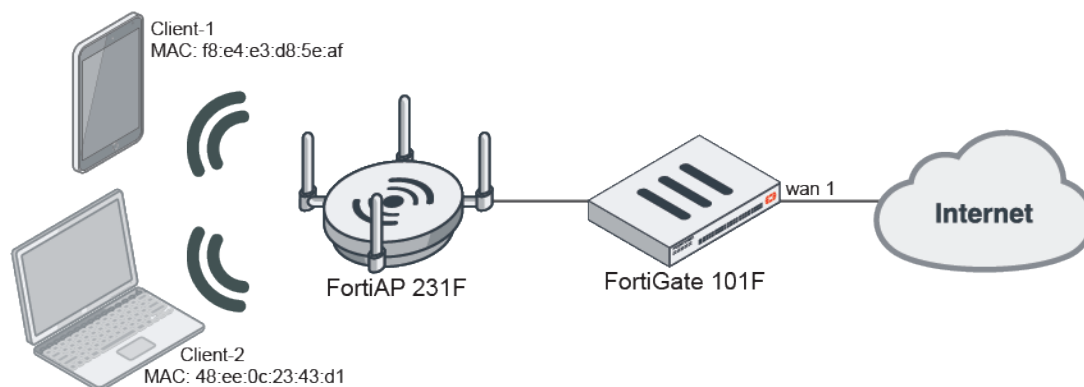
When a wireless client first connects, it is assigned to the default VLAN per the NAC profile. After the client information is captured, if it matches a NAC policy, the client is disconnected and, when it reconnects, assigned to the VLAN that is specified by the SSID policy.

The device properties that can be matched include: MAC address, hardware vendor, type, family, operating system, hardware version, software version, host, user, and source.

### Example

When both clients first connect, they are onboarded into the *vap\_v100* VLAN. The client information is captured after up to two minutes and, if it matches the NAC policy, the wireless controller disconnects the client. When the client reconnects, it is assigned to the VLAN specified by the policy.

In this example, NAC profiles are configured to onboard wireless Client-1 into default VLANs based on the device's MAC address, user group, or EMS tag.



**To configure the VAP, interfaces, profiles, and SSID policy in the GUI**

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies** and click **Create New** to create a NAC policy.
2. Enter a **Name** for the NAC policy and select what Category you want to base the NAC policy on (Device, User, EMS Tag).
3. Configure the policy device patterns based on the Category you selected.
4. In the Wireless Controller Action section, enable **Assign VLAN** and select which VLAN you want to apply to the policy.
5. When you are finished, click **OK**.
6. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select the SSID you want to apply the NAC policy to.
7. Enable **NAC profile** and select the NAC policy you want to apply.
8. Click **OK** to apply the changes.

**To configure the VAP, interfaces, profiles, and SSID policy in the CLI**

1. Create the VAP SSID:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi.fap.01"
    set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.01"
    set passphrase *****
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

2. Create two VLAN interfaces under the VAP:

```
config system interface
  edit "vap_v100"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 10.100.1.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping
    set device-identification enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 37
    set interface "wifi.fap.01"
    set vlanid 100
  next
  edit "vap_v200"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 10.101.1.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping
    set device-identification enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 40
    set interface "wifi.fap.01"
    set vlanid 200
  next
end
```

3. Create the wireless NAC profile:

```
config wireless-controller nac-profile
  edit "wifi-nac-profile-1"
    set onboarding-vlan "vap_v100"
```

```

    next
end

```

#### 4. Select the wireless NAC profile in the VAP:

```

config wireless-controller vap
    edit "wifi.fap.01"
        set nac enable
        set nac-profile "wifi-nac-profile-1"
    next
end

```

#### 5. Create the SSID policy:

```

config wireless-controller ssid-policy
    edit "wifi-ssid-policy-1"
        set vlan "vap_v200"
    next
end

```

#### 6. Create NAC policies to match clients based on [Device properties](#), [User groups](#), or [EMS tags](#).

## Device properties

This policy matches clients with the MAC address `f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af`.

### To match a wireless client based on its MAC address

#### 1. Create a NAC policy that matches wireless clients with a specific MAC address:

```

config user nac-policy
    edit "wifi-nac-policy-1"
        set category device
        set mac "f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af"
        set ssid-policy "wifi-ssid-policy-1"
    next
end

```

When both clients first connect, they are onboarded into the `vap_v100` VLAN:

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.1.10 ip6=:
mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af vci= host=fosqa-PowerEdge-R210 user= group= signal=-45 noise=-95
idle=1 bw=2 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk=
encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.1.11 ip6=:
mac=48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 vci= host=wifi-qa-01 user= group= signal=-25 noise=-95 idle=14
bw=0 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_
authed=no online=yes mimo=2

```

After the client information is collected, Client-1 matches the policy. It is disconnected, then reconnects and is assigned to the `vap_v200` VLAN in accordance with the NAC policy:

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=200 ip=10.101.1.10 ip6=:
mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af vci= host=fosqa-PowerEdge-R210 user= group= signal=-24 noise=-95
idle=0 bw=7 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk=
encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2

```

```

    vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.1.11 ip6=:
mac=48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 vci= host=wifi-qa-01 user= group= signal=-25 noise=-95 idle=0 bw=4
use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_
authed=no online=yes mimo=2

```

## 2. Verify that Client-1 matched the policy, and Client-2 did not:

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac_hlp -c sta-nac

STA (001/002) vfid,mac: 1, 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1
  ip          : 10.100.1.11
  wlan        : wifi.fap.01(tunnel)
  vlan-id(oper/dflt) : 100/100
  matched nac-policy : N/A
STA (002/002) vfid,mac: 1, f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af
  ip          : 10.101.1.10
  wlan        : wifi.fap.01(tunnel)
  vlan-id(oper/dflt) : 200/100
  matched nac-policy : wifi-nac-policy-1

```

## User groups

This policy matches clients that are authenticated in the `group_local` user group.

### To match a wireless client based on its user group

#### 1. Change the security mode to WPA2 enterprise only and add a user group in the VAP:

```

config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi.fap.01"
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set auth usergroup
    set usergroup "group_local" "group_radius"
    set schedule "always"
  next
end

```

#### 2. Create a NAC policy that matches wireless clients that are authenticated in a specific user group:

```

config user nac-policy
  edit "wifi-nac-policy-2"
    set category firewall-user
    set user-group "group_local"
    set ssid-policy "wifi-ssid-policy-1"
  next
end

```

When both clients first connect, they are onboarded into the `vap_v100` VLAN:

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
  vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.1.10 ip6=:
mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af vci= host=fosqa-PowerEdge-R210 user=local group=group_local
signal=-45 noise=-95 idle=1 bw=2 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_
enterprise mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
  vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.1.11 ip6=:
mac=48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 vci= host=wifi-qa-01 user=tester group=group_radius signal=-24

```

```
noise=-95 idle=27 bw=0 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_enterprise
mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
```

After the client information is collected, Client-1 matches the policy. It is disconnected, then reconnects and is assigned to the *vap\_v200* VLAN in accordance with the NAC policy:

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlaac -d sta online
vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=200 ip=10.101.1.10 ip6=:
mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af vci= host=fosqa-PowerEdge-R210 user=local group=group_local
signal=-20 noise=-95 idle=1 bw=9 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_
enterprise mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
vf=1 wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=100 ip=10.100.1.11 ip6=:
mac=48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 vci= host=wifi-qa-01 user=tester group=group_radius signal=-24
noise=-95 idle=35 bw=0 use=6 chan=157 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_enterprise
mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
```

### 3. Verify that Client-1 matched the policy, and Client-2 did not:

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlaac_hlp -c sta-nac

STA (001/002) vfid,mac: 1, 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1
ip                : 10.100.1.11
wlan              : wifi.fap.01(tunnel)
vlan-id(oper/dflt) : 100/100
matched nac-policy : N/A
STA (002/002) vfid,mac: 1, f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af
ip                : 10.101.1.10
wlan              : wifi.fap.01(tunnel)
vlan-id(oper/dflt) : 200/100
matched nac-policy : wifi-nac-policy-2
```

## EMS tags

This policy matches clients that have the specified EMS tag. EMS control must already be configured, see [Synchronizing FortiClient EMS tags and configurations](#) for details.

### To match a wireless client based on its EMS tag

#### 1. Find the EMS tag:

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list
MAC_FCTEMSTA20002318_ems135_winOS_tag(total-addr: 2): ID(62)
MAC(F0:B4:D2:AB:E0:09)
MAC(10:C3:7B:9C:46:AA)
```

#### 2. Create a NAC policy that matches a wireless client with that tag:

```
config user nac-policy
edit "wifi-nac-policy-3"
set category ems-tag
set ems-tag "MAC_FCTEMSTA20002318_ems135_winOS_tag"
set ssid-policy "wifi-ssid-policy-1"
next
end
```

When both clients first connect, they are onboarded into the *vap\_v100* VLAN. After the client information is collected, Client-1 matches the policy. It is disconnected, then reconnects and is assigned to the *vap\_v200* VLAN in



accordance with the NAC policy:

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
wtp=1 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=200 ip=10.101.1.11 ip6=fe80::add7:9b4a:cd39:e65c
mac=f0:b4:d2:ab:e0:09 vci=MSFT 5.0 host=DESKTOP-05HBKE1 user= group= signal=-52 noise=-
95 idle=6 bw=0 use=6 chan=40 radio_type=11AC(wave2) security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk=
encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
ip6=*fe80::add7:9b4a:cd39:e65c,256,
```

### 3. Verify that Client-1 matched the policy, and Client-2 did not:

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlac_hlp -c sta-nac

STA (001/002) vfid,mac: 1, 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1
ip                : 10.100.1.11
wlan              : wifi.fap.01(tunnel)
vlan-id(oper/dflt) : 100/100
matched nac-policy : N/A
STA (002/002) vfid,mac: 1, f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af
ip                : 10.101.1.10
wlan              : wifi.fap.01(tunnel)
vlan-id(oper/dflt) : 200/100
matched nac-policy : wifi-nac-policy-3
```

## Configuring user authentication

You can perform user authentication when the wireless client joins the wireless network and when the wireless user communicates with another network through a firewall policy.

You can use the following methods to authenticate connecting clients:

- [WPA2 Enterprise authentication on page 100](#)
- [WiFi single sign-on \(WSSO\) authentication on page 101](#)
- [Assigning WiFi users to VLANs dynamically on page 102](#)
- [MAC-based authentication on page 102](#)
- [Authenticating guest WiFi users on page 108](#)
- [Authenticating wireless clients with SAML credentials on page 108](#)

## WPA2 Enterprise authentication

WEP and WPA-Personal security rely on legitimate users knowing the correct key or passphrase for the wireless network. However, the more users you have, the more likely it is that the key or passphrase will become known to unauthorized people. WPA-Enterprise and captive portal security provide separate credentials for each user. User accounts can be managed through FortiGate user groups or an external RADIUS authentication server.

Enterprise authentication can be based on the local FortiGate user database or on a remote RADIUS server. Local authentication is essentially the same for WiFi users as it is for wired users, except that authentication for WiFi users occurs when they associate their device with the AP. Therefore, enterprise authentication must be configured in the SSID. WiFi users can belong to user groups just the same as wired users and security policies will determine which network services they can access.

If your WiFi network uses WPA2 Enterprise authentication verified by a RADIUS server, you need to configure the FortiGate unit to connect to that RADIUS server.

### Configuring connection to a RADIUS server - GUI

1. Go to **User & Authentication > RADIUS Servers** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter a **Name** for the server.  
This name is used in FortiGate configurations. It is not the actual name of the server.
3. In **Primary Server** area:
  - a. **IP/Name** — enter the network name or IP address for the server.
  - b. **Secret** — enter the shared secret used to access the server.
4. Optionally, enter the information for a secondary or backup RADIUS server.
5. Select **OK**.

### To configure the FortiGate unit to access the RADIUS server - CLI

```
config user radius
edit exampleRADIUS
    set auth-type auto
    set server 10.11.102.100
    set secret aoewmntiasf
end
```

To implement WPA2 Enterprise security, you select this server in the SSID security settings. See [Defining a wireless network interface \(SSID\) on page 36](#) and [WPA2 Security on page 62](#)

To use the RADIUS server for authentication, you can create individual FortiGate user accounts that specify the authentication server instead of a password, and you then add those accounts to a user group. Or, you can add the authentication server to a FortiGate user group, making all accounts on that server members of the user group.

## Creating a wireless user group

Most wireless networks require authenticated access. To enable creation of firewall policies specific to WiFi users, you should create at least one WiFi user group. You can add or remove users later. There are two types of user group to consider:

- A Firewall user group can contain user accounts stored on the FortiGate unit or external authentication servers such as RADIUS that contain and verify user credentials. For instructions on how to configure locally stored user groups, see [Basic wireless network example on page 277](#).
- A Fortinet single sign-on (FSSO) user group is used for integration with Windows Active Directory or Novell eDirectory. The group can contain Windows or Novell user groups who will be permitted access to the wireless LAN.

## WiFi single sign-on (WSSO) authentication

WSSO is RADIUS-based authentication that passes the user's user group memberships to the FortiGate. For each user, the RADIUS server must provide user group information in the Fortinet-Group-Name attribute. This information is stored in the server's database. After the user authenticates, security policies provide access to network services based on user groups.

1. Configure the RADIUS server to return the Fortinet-Group-Name attribute for each user.
2. Configure the FortiGate to access the RADIUS server, as described in [WPA2 Enterprise authentication on page 100](#).
3. Create firewall user groups on the FortiGate with the same names as the user groups listed in the RADIUS database. Leave the groups empty.
4. In the SSID choose WPA2-Enterprise authentication. In the **Authentication** field, select **RADIUS Server** and choose the RADIUS server that you configured.
5. Create security policies as needed, using user groups (**Source User(s)** field) to control access.

For configuration information see, [Configuring WiFi with WSSO using Windows NPS and user groups on page 81](#).

When a user authenticates by WSSO, the Firewall Users widget (**Dashboard > Users & Device**) shows the authentication method as WSSO.

## Assigning WiFi users to VLANs dynamically

Some enterprise networks use Virtual LANs (VLANs) to separate traffic. In this environment, to extend network access to WiFi users might appear to require multiple SSIDs. But it is possible to automatically assign each user to their appropriate VLAN from a single SSID. To accomplish this requires RADIUS authentication that passes the appropriate VLAN ID to the FortiGate by RADIUS attributes. Each user's VLAN assignment is stored in the user database of the RADIUS server.

1. Configure the RADIUS server to return the following attributes for each user:
  - Tunnel-Type (value: "VLAN")
  - Tunnel-Medium-Type (value: "IEEE-802")
  - Tunnel\_Private-Group-Id (value: the VLAN ID for the user's VLAN)
2. Configure the FortiGate to access the RADIUS server.
3. Configure the SSID with WPA2-Enterprise authentication. In the **Authentication** field, select **RADIUS Server** and choose the RADIUS server that you will use.
4. Create VLAN subinterfaces on the SSID interface, one for each VLAN. Set the VLAN ID of each as appropriate. You can do this on the **Network > Interfaces** page.
5. Enable Dynamic VLAN assignment for the SSID. For example, if the SSID interface is "office", enter:
 

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit office
    set dynamic-vlan enable
  end
```
6. Create security policies for each VLAN. These policies have a WiFi VLAN subinterface as **Incoming Interface** and allow traffic to flow to whichever **Outgoing Interface** these VLAN users will be allowed to access.

## MAC-based authentication

You can authenticate wireless clients by MAC address. A RADIUS server stores the allowed MAC address for each client and the wireless controller checks the MAC address independently of other authentication methods.

MAC-based authentication must be configured in the CLI. In the following example, MAC-based authentication is added to an existing access point "vap1" to use RADIUS server hq\_radius (configured on the FortiGate):

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit vap1
    set radius-mac-auth enable
    set radius-mac-auth-server hq_radius
```

end

See also [Adding a MAC filter on page 75](#)

## Combined MAC and MPSK based authentication

You can also use a combined MAC and MPSK based authentication to authenticate wireless clients against a RADIUS server. Instead of statically storing the MPSK passphrase(s) on the FortiGate, it can be passed from the RADIUS server dynamically when the client MAC is authenticated by the RADIUS server. The resulting passphrase will be cached on the FortiGate for future authentication, with a timeout configured for each VAP.

When a WiFi client attempts to connect to a SSID and inputs a password, the user is "registered" to the RADIUS server which stores the client's MAC and generates a passphrase for the user device or group. When the user connects to the FortiAP SSID using WPA2-Personal, the FortiGate wireless controller will dynamically authenticate the device's MAC address using RADIUS-based MAC authentication.

If authentication is successful, the RADIUS server will return a tunnel-password for that user device or group. If the client-provided passphrase matches this password, it can successfully connect to the SSID and be placed in a VLAN (if specified).

To implement MAC and MPSK based authentication, you must first configure the RADIUS server and MPSK profile. Then you can configure authentication based on how the client connects to the SSID.

### To configure the RADIUS server and MPSK profile

#### 1. Configure a RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
  edit "peap"
    set server "172.16.200.55"
    set secret *****
  next
end
```

#### 2. Configure the MPSK profiles:

```
config wireless-controller mpsk-profile
  edit "wifi.fap.01"
    set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.01"
    config mpsk-group
      edit "g1"
        config mpsk-key
          edit "p1"
            set passphrase *****
            set mpsk-schedules "always"
          next
        end
      next
    end
  next
end
edit "wifi.fap.02"
  set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.02"
  config mpsk-group
    edit "g1"
      config mpsk-key
        edit "p1"
          set passphrase *****
          set mpsk-schedules "always"
```

```
        next
      end
    next
  end
next
end
```

### 3. Check that the PMK values from the RADIUS server are cached on the FortiGate:

```
show wireless-controller mpsk-profile
edit "wifi.fap.01"
  set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.01"
  config mpsk-group
    edit "g1"
      config mpsk-key
        edit "p1"
          set passphrase *****
          set pmk ENC ***
          set mpsk-schedules "always"
        next
      end
    next
  end
next
end
next
edit "wifi.fap.02"
  set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.02"
  config mpsk-group
    edit "g1"
      config mpsk-key
        edit "p1"
          set passphrase ****
          set pmk ENC ***
          set mpsk-schedules "always"
        next
      end
    next
  end
next
end
next
end
```

After you've configured the RADIUS server and MPSK profile, you can configure MAC and MPSK based authentication based on how the client connects to the SSID:

- If the client connects to the SSID in tunnel mode, the MPSK key is cached on the FortiGate.
- If the client connects to the SSID in bridging mode, the MPSK key is cached on the FortiAP.

### To enable the RADIUS MAC Authentication - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > SSIDs**, and click **Create New > SSID** or edit an existing SSID.
2. In **Security mode**, select **WPA2 Personal**.
3. Under **Pre-shared Key Mode**, select **Multiple**.

Create New SSID

Network

Device detection ☒

WiFi Settings

SSID

Client limit ☐

Broadcast SSID ☒

Beacon advertising ☐ Name ☐ Model ☐ Serial number

Security Mode Settings

Security mode

Pre-shared Key

Mode

+ Add

Edit

Delete

Export Groups

Search

Group Name	VLAN ID	Keys
g1	Not assigned	1

1

OK

Cancel

4. Enable **RADIUS MAC authentication**.

The Authentication timeout field loads. You can change the timer from 1800 to 86400 seconds.

Create New SSID

**Pre-shared Key**

Mode ⓘ Single Multiple

Group Name	VLAN ID	Keys
g1	Not assigned	1

**RADIUS MAC authentication** ⓘ ☒

Authentication timeout  seconds

**Client MAC Address Filtering**

RADIUS server ☒ peap

**Additional Settings**

Dynamic VLAN assignment ☒

Schedule ⓘ always

5. Enable **RADIUS server** and select a server.
6. When you are finished, click **OK**.

### To configure MAC and MPSP authentication in tunnel mode

1. Configure the wireless controller VAP, enable `radius-mac-auth`, and select a profile for `mpsk-profile`:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "wifi.fap.01"
set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.01"
set radius-mac-auth enable
set radius-mac-auth-server "peap"
set radius-mac-mpsk-auth enable
set radius-mac-mpsk-timeout 1800
set schedule "always"
set mpsk-profile "wifi.fap.01"
next
end
```

2. On the RADIUS server, set a `Tunnel-Password` attribute in the example MAC account "F8-E4-E3-D8-5E-AF".

```
F8-E4-E3-D8-5E-AF Cleartext-Password := "F8-E4-E3-D8-5E-AF"
Tunnel-Type = "VLAN",
Tunnel-Medium-Type = "IEEE-802",
Tunnel-Private-Group-Id = 100,
Tunnel-Password = "111111111111",
Fortinet-Group-Name = group_mac
```

3. Confirm the example client (MAC:f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af) can connect to the SSID using the same Tunnel-Password passphrase "111111111111".

```
# dia wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=1 wtp=7 rId=2 wlan=wifi.fap.01 vlan_id=0 ip=10.10.80.2 ip6=: mac=f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af
vci= host=fosqa-PowerEdge-R210 user=F8-E4-E3-D8-5E-AF group=group_mac signal=-33
noise=-95 idle=3 bw=1 use=6 chan=149 radio_type=11AX_5G security=wpa2_only_
personal mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
rad_mac_auth=allow age=12
```

4. Verify that the RADIUS MPSK can be cached in the FortiGate:

```
# diagnose wpa wpad radius-mac-mpsk wifi-ssid.fap.01
SSID config: SSID(wifi-ssid.fap.01) VAP(wifi.fap.01) refcnt(1)
Total RADIUS MPSK cache count: (1)
  mac-binding: f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af
  vlan-id: 100
  expiration: 1785 seconds
```

5. MAC and MPSK based authentication is successfully implemented.

## To configure MAC and MPSK authentication in bridge mode

1. Configure the wireless controller VAP, enable radius-mac-mpsk, and select a profile for mpsk-profile:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "wifi.fap.02"
  set ssid "wifi-ssid.fap.02"
  set radius-mac-auth enable
  set radius-mac-auth-server "peap"
  set radius-mac-mpsk-auth enable
  set radius-mac-mpsk-timeout 1800
  set local-standalone enable
  set local-bridging enable
  set local-authentication enable
  set schedule "always"
  set mpsk-profile "wifi.fap.02"
next
end
```

2. Confirm the example client (MAC:f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af) can now connect to the above local-standalone SSID using the same Tunnel-Password passphrase "111111111111".

```
FortiAP-231F # sta
wlan11 (wifi-ssid.fap.02) client count 1
MAC: f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af ip:10.100.100.231 ip_proto:dhcp ip_age:74 host:fosqa-PowerEdge-
R210 vci:
vlanid:0 Auth:Yes channel:149 rate:48Mbps rssi:65dB idle:11s
Rx bytes:6095 Tx bytes:1719 Rx rate:87Mbps Tx rate:48Mbps Rx last:11s Tx last:68s
AssocID:1 Mode: Normal Flags:1000000b PauseCnt:0
```

3. Verify that the RADIUS MPSK can be cached on FortiAP:

```
FortiAP-231F # h_diag radius-mac-mpsk wifi-ssid.fap.02
SSID config: SSID(wifi-ssid.fap.02) VAP(wlan11) refcnt(1)
Total RADIUS MPSK cache count: (1)
  mac-binding: f8:e4:e3:d8:5e:af
```



```
vlan-id: 100
expiration: 1660 seconds
```

4. MAC and MPSK based authentication is successfully implemented.



Because Dynamic VLAN is not configured on each of the VAPs, the cache returned by the RADIUS server and the station statistics show different VLAN IDs. FortiGate does not use the VLAN passed by the RADIUS server, but still caches it.

---

## Authenticating guest WiFi users

The FortiOS Guest Management feature enables you to easily add guest accounts to your FortiGate unit. These accounts are authenticate guest WiFi users for temporary access to a WiFi network managed by a FortiGate unit.

To implement guest access, you need to

1. Go to **User & Authentication > User Groups** and create one or more guest user groups.
2. Go to **User & Authentication > Guest Management** to create guest accounts. You can print the guest account credentials or send them to the user as an email or SMS message.
3. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and configure your WiFi SSID to use captive portal authentication. Select the guest user group(s) that you created.

Guest users can log into the WiFi captive portal with their guest account credentials until the account expires.

## Authenticating wireless clients with SAML credentials

You can configure SAML user groups and apply it to a captive portal through a tunnel mode SSID. Then you can configure both a captive portal exempt firewall policy to allow wireless clients to contact the SAML IDP and a firewall policy with the SAML user group applied to allow authenticated traffic. When wireless clients connect to the SSID, they will be redirected to a login page for wireless authentication using SAML.

For configuration information, see [Captive portal authentication using SAML credentials on page 55](#).

## Custom RADIUS NAS-ID

You can configure the RADIUS NAS-ID as a custom ID or the hostname. When deploying a wireless network with WPA-Enterprise and RADIUS authentication, or using the RADIUS MAC authentication feature, FortiGate can use the custom NAS-ID in its Access-Request.

### Configuring RADIUS NAS-ID CLI

```
config user radius
  edit < server >
    set nas-id-type { legacy | custom | hostname }
    set nas-id < custom ID >
  next
end
```

You can configure `nas-id-type` with the following three options:

legacy	NAS-ID value is the value previously used by each daemon. This is the default setting.
custom	NAS-ID value is customized. Set <code>nas-id</code> to enter the custom ID.
hostname	NAS-ID value is the FortiGate hostname or HA group name if applicable.

## To create an SSID with WPA2-Enterprise security mode using RADIUS authentication:

### 1. Configure the SSID:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "wifi7"
set ssid "80F_ent_radius"
set security wpa2-only-enterprise
set voice-enterprise disable
set auth radius
set radius-server "server-55"
set schedule "always"
next
end
```

### 2. Configure the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
edit "server-55"
set server "172.18.56.104"
set secret ENC *
set acct-interim-interval 60
set radius-coa enable
config accounting-server
edit 1
set status enable
set server "172.18.56.104"
set secret ENC *
next
end
next
end
```

### 3. Set the nas-id-type:

```
config user radius
edit server-55
set nas-id-type hostname
next
end

config system global
set hostname "FortiWiFi-80F-2R"
end
```

### 4. After the station connects to the SSID, check the radius packets to confirm the NAS-Identifier value matches the hostname FortiWiFi-80F-2R:

```
(64) Received Access-Request Id 35 from 172.16.200.254:63111 to 172.16.200.55:1812
length 367
(64)   User-Name = "tester"
(64)   NAS-IP-Address = 0.0.0.0
(64)   NAS-Identifier = "FortiWiFi-80F-2R"
```

### To create a WPA2-Personal SSID using RADIUS MAC authentication:

#### 1. Configure the SSID:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi2"
    set ssid "80F_psk"
    set voice-enterprise disable
    set radius-mac-auth enable
    set radius-mac-auth-server "server-55"
    set passphrase ENC *
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

#### 2. Set the nas-id-type:

```
config user radius
  edit server-55
    set nas-id-type custom
    set nas-id FWF-80F-LR
  next
end
```

#### 3. After the station connects to the SSID, check the radius packets to confirm the NAS-Identifier value matches the custom value you configured, "FWF-80F-LR":

```
(87) Received Access-Request Id 3 from 172.16.200.254:62884 to 172.16.200.55:1812 length
228
(87)   User-Name = "F1-A4-23-75-9F-B1"
(87)   User-Password = "F1-A4-23-75-9F-B1"
(87)   Calling-Station-Id = "F1-A4-23-75-9F-B1"
(87)   NAS-IP-Address = 0.0.0.0
(87)   NAS-Identifier = "FWF-80F-LR"
```

## Configuring firewall policies for the SSID

For users on the WiFi LAN to communicate with other networks, firewall policies are required. This section describes creating a WiFi network to Internet policy.

Before you create firewall policies, you need to define any firewall addresses you will need.



To enable IPv6 addresses, go to **System > Feature Visibility** and enable **IPv6**.

---

### To create a firewall address for WiFi users - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses**.
2. Select **Create New > Address** and enter the following information:

<b>Category</b>	Select <b>Address</b> to create an IPv4 address.
<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the address. For example, wifi_net.
<b>Type</b>	Select <b>Subnet</b> .
<b>IP/Netmask</b>	Enter the subnet address. For example, 10.10.110.0/24.
<b>Interface</b>	Select the interface where this address is used. For example, example_wifi.

3. When you are finished, click **OK**

### To create a firewall address for WiFi users - CLI

```
config firewall address
edit "wifi_net"
    set associated-interface "example_wifi"
    set subnet 10.10.110.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

### To create a firewall policy - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and select **Create New**.
2. In **Incoming Interface**, select the wireless interface.
3. In **Source Address**, select the address of your WiFi network, wifi\_net for example.
4. In **Outgoing Interface**, select the Internet interface, for example, port1.
5. In **Destination Address**, select **All**.
6. In **Service**, select **ALL**, or select the particular services that you want to allow, and then select the right arrow button to move the service to the **Selected Services** list.
7. In **Schedule**, select **always**, unless you want to define a schedule for limited hours.
8. In **Action**, select **ACCEPT**.
9. Select **Enable NAT**.
10. Optionally, set up UTM features for wireless users.
11. Select **OK**.

### To create a firewall policy - CLI

```
config firewall policy
edit 0
    set srcintf "example_wifi"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set srcaddr "wifi_net"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set nat enable
end
```



To configure IPv6 addresses, use `set srcaddr6` and `set dstaddr6`.

## Configuring the built-in access point on a FortiWiFi unit



FortiWiFi does not support bridge mode SSIDs.

Both FortiGate and FortiWiFi units have the WiFi controller feature. If you configure a WiFi network on a FortiWiFi unit, you can also use the built-in wireless capabilities in your WiFi network as one of the access points.

If Virtual Domains are enabled, you must select the VDOM to which the built-in access point belongs. You do this in the CLI. For example:

```
config wireless-controller global
  set local-radio-vdom vdom1
end
```

### To configure the FortiWiFi unit's built-in WiFi access point

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Local WiFi Radio**.
2. Select a FortiAP profile to apply to the FortiWiFi access point (see [Creating a FortiAP profile on page 34](#) and select **FortiWiFi local radio** as the platform).
3. Optionally, you can override settings configured in the FortiAP profile.
4. Click **Apply**.

If you want to connect external APs such as FortiAP units, see [Access point configuration on page 155](#).

## Enforcing UTM policies on a local bridge SSID

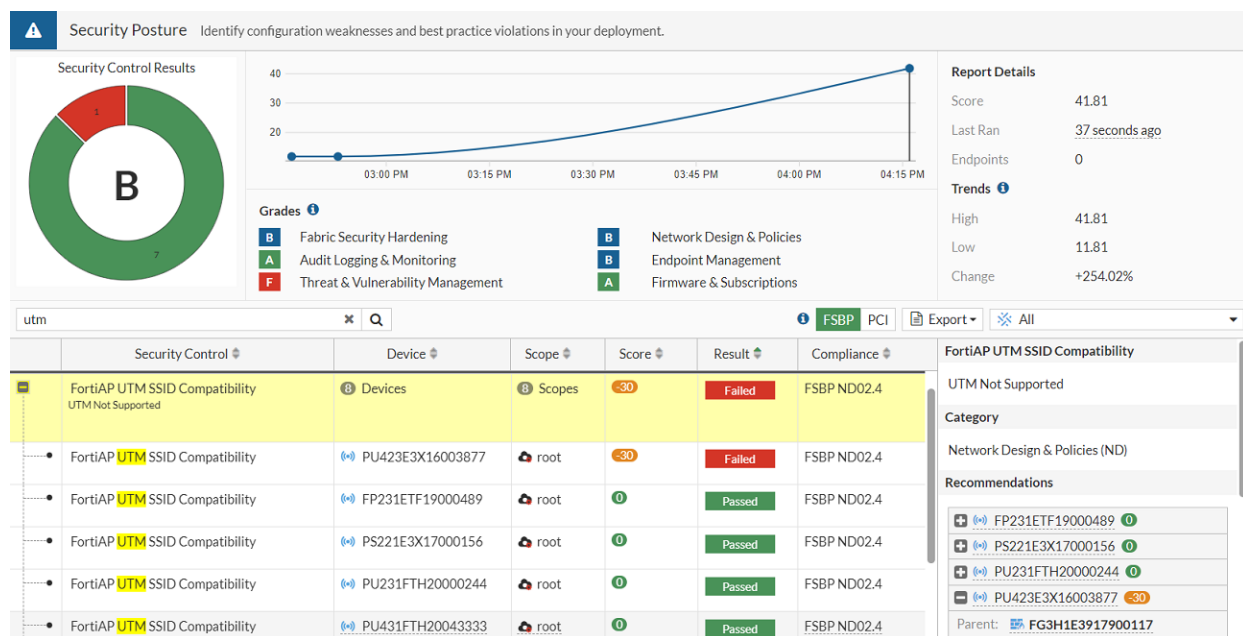
If a bridge mode SSID is configured for a UTM capable FortiAP, you can add security profiles to the wireless controller configuration that enables you to apply security profile features to the traffic over the bridge SSID.

For information on how to configure security profiles, see [FortiAP-S and FortiAP-U bridge mode security profiles on page 237](#)

However, not all FortiAPs are UTM capable. You can use the Security Rating check to review your managed FortiAPs and check if any UTM incapable FortiAPs are broadcasting SSIDs that contain security profiles.

### To run the Security Rating

1. Go to **Security Fabric > Security Rating** and click **Run Now** to run the security rating check.
2. Select the **Security Posture** scorecard and search for **FortiAP UTM SSID Compatibility** to find the result.  
If there are any UTM incapable FortiAPs broadcasting SSIDs with security profiles, the result will show as **Failed**.



## Configuring a Syslog profile

When FortiAPs are managed by FortiGate or FortiLAN Cloud, you can configure your FortiAPs to send logs (Event, UTM, and etc) to the syslog server. Syslog server information can be configured in a Syslog profile that is then assigned to a FortiAP profile.

### To configure a Syslog profile - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and select the profile you want to assign a syslog profile to.
2. Locate **System Log** and enable **Syslog profile**.
3. Click the **Syslog profile** field and click **Create** to create a new syslog profile.

The New Wireless Syslog Profile window loads.

### New Wireless Syslog Profile

Name

Comments

Server type

IP

FQDN

IP

0.0.0.0

Log level

Information ▼

Status

☒

OK

Cancel

4. Enter a **Name** for the Syslog profile.
5. Select the **Server type** you want to use.
  - If you select **IP**, enter the IP address of the syslog server.
  - If you select **FQDN**, enter the FQDN address of the syslog server.
6. Select a **Log level** to determine the lowest level of log messages that the FortiAP sends to the server:
7. Ensure that the **Status** is enabled.
8. Click **OK** to save the Syslog profile.
9. From the FortiAP profile, select the Syslog profile you created.
10. Click **OK** to save the FortiAP profile.

### To configure a Syslog profile - CLI:

1. Configure a syslog profile on FortiGate:

```
config wireless-controller syslog-profile
  edit "syslog-demo-1"
    set comment ''
    set server-status enable
    set server-addr-type ip
    set server-ip 192.16.9.12
    set server-port 514
    set log-level debugging
  next
end
```

2. Assign the syslog profile to a FortiAP profile:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP231F-default"
    config platform
      set type 231F
      set ddscan enable
    end
```

```

    set syslog-profile "syslog-demo-1"
    ...
next
end

```

### 3. Assign the FortiAP profile to a managed FortiAP unit:

```

config wireless-controller wtp
edit "FP231FTF20026472"
    set uuid 183ae8c6-09de-81ec-d12e-02a3c8eb88d6
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP231F-default"
    config radio-1
    end
    config radio-2
    end
next
end

```

### 4. From the FortiGate console, verify that the syslog profile has been successfully adopted:

```

FortiGate-80E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlap -c wtpprof FAP231F-default
WTPPROF (001/005) vdom,name: root, FAP231F-default
    platform          : FAP231F.
    refcnt             : 5 own(1) wlan(2) wtp(1)
    deleted            : no
    apcfg-profile      :
    ddscan             : enabled
    ble-profile        :
    syslog-profile      : syslog-demo-1(enabled server=192.16.9.12:514 log-level=7)
    led-state          : enabled
    lldp               : enabled
    poe-mode           : auto
...
FortiGate-80E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlap -c syslogprof
SYSLOG (001/001) vdom,name : root, syslog-demo-1
    refcnt             : 2 own(1) wtpprof(1)
    deleted            : no
    server status      : enabled
    server address     : 192.16.9.12
    server port        : 514
    server log level   : 7
    wtpprof cnt        : 1
    wtpprof 001        : FAP231F-default

```

### 5. From the FortiAP console, verify that the configurations have been successful pushed to the FortiAP unit:

```

FortiAP-231F # cw_diag -c syslog config
Syslog configuration: en=1 addr=192.16.9.12 port=514 log_level=7

```

## To configure a Syslog profile using a FQDN server address - CLI:

### 1. Configure a syslog profile on FortiGate:

```

config wireless-controller syslog-profile
edit "syslog-demo-2"
    set comment ''
    set server-status enable

```



```
    set server-addr-type fqdn
    set server-fqdn "syslog.test.env"
    set server-port 5140
    set log-level critical
  next
end
```

2. Assign the FortiAP profile to a managed FortiAP unit:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP231F-default"
    config platform
      set type 231F
      set ddscan enable
    end
    set syslog-profile "syslog-demo-2"
    ...
  next
end
```

3. Assign the FortiAP profile to a managed FortiAP unit:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP231FTF20026472"
    set uuid 183ae8c6-09de-81ec-d12e-02a3c8eb88d6
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP231F-default"
    config radio-1
    end
    config radio-2
    end
  next
end
```

4. From the FortiAP console, verify that the configurations have been successful pushed to the FortiAP unit:

```
FortiAP-231F # cw_diag -c syslog config
Syslog configuration: en=1 addr=syslog.test.env(192.16.9.12) port=5140 log_level=2
```

## Configuring Distributed Radio Resource Provisioning

To prevent interference between APs, the FortiOS WiFi Controller includes the Distributed Automatic Radio Resource Provisioning (DARRP) feature. Through DARRP, each FortiAP unit autonomously and periodically determines the channel that is best suited for wireless communications. FortiAP units select their channel so that they do not interfere with each other in large-scale deployments where multiple access points have overlapping radio ranges.

### To configure DARRP profiles - CLI

Channels are selected based on parameters including total RSSI, Noise Floor, Channel Load, Spectral RSSI, and more. Each of those parameters are multiplied by a weight value assigned by default under the `arrp-profile`. Once you enable DARRP under radio, the default `arrp-profile` takes effect. You can create multiple DARRP profiles and apply them to radios under FortiAP profiles.

```
config wireless-controller arrp-profile
  edit "arrp-default"
```

```
set comment ''
set selection-period 3600
set monitor-period 300
set weight-managed-ap 50
set weight-rogue-ap 10
set weight-noise-floor 40
set weight-channel-load 20
set weight-spectral-rssi 40
set weight-weather-channel 1000
set weight-dfs-channel 500
set threshold-ap 250
set threshold-noise-floor "-85"
set threshold-channel-load 60
set threshold-spectral-rssi "-65"
set threshold-tx-retries 300
set threshold-rx-errors 50
set include-weather-channel no
set include-dfs-channel no
next
end
```

### To enable and apply DARRP profiles to FortiAP profiles

In this example, DARRP is enabled and DARRP profiles are applied for both radios:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit FAP321C-default
config radio-1
set darrp enable
set arrp-profile "arrp-profile1"
end
config radio-2
set darrp enable
set arrp-profile "arrp-profile2"
end
end
```

### To configure DAARP to support more channel bandwidth options

You can configure DARRP will to consider the radio bandwidth in its channel selection, adding support for 40, 80, and 160Mhz channel bandwidth.

This example changes the bandwidth in Radio1 from 20Mhz to 40Mhz, and changes Radio2 from 20Mhz to 80Mhz

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "433F"
config platform
set type 433F
set ddscan enable
end
set handoff-sta-thresh 55
set allowaccess https ssh
config radio-1
set band 802.11ax,n,g-only
set channel-bonding 40MHz
set darrp enable
set arrp-profile "arrp-profile1"
```

```
end
config radio-2
  set band 802.11ax-5G
  set channel-bonding 80MHz
  set darrp enable
  set arrp-profile "arrp-profile2"
end
config radio-3
  set mode monitor
end
next
end
```

### To set DARRP timing

You can configure separate DARRP profiles to run on different schedules. In this example, one profile (arrp-profile1) runs DARRP all the time, and a second profile (arrp-profile2) runs DARRP once a day on the weekdays.

```
config wireless-controller arrp-profile
edit "arrp-profile1"
  set override-darrp-optimize enable
  set darrp-optimize 3600
  set darrp-optimize-schedules "always"
next
edit "arrp-profile2"
  set comment ''
  set selection-period 3600
  set monitor-period 300
  set weight-managed-ap 50
  set weight-rogue-ap 10
  set weight-noise-floor 40
  set weight-channel-load 20
  set weight-spectral-rssi 40
  set weight-weather-channel 1000
  set weight-dfs-channel 500
  set threshold-ap 250
  set threshold-noise-floor "-85"
  set threshold-channel-load 60
  set threshold-spectral-rssi "-65"
  set threshold-tx-retries 300
  set threshold-rx-errors 50
  set include-weather-channel disable
  set include-dfs-channel disable
  set override-darrp-optimize disable
next
end
```



Confine DARRP activity to a low-traffic period to reduce interruption caused by channel change.

---

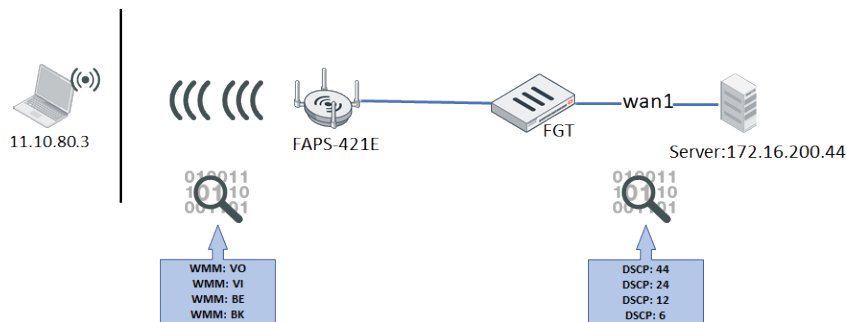
## Translating WiFi QoS WMM marking to DSCP values

FortiGates can preserve the WiFi Multi-Media (WMM) QoS marking of packets by translating them to Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) values when forwarding upstream. When wireless client sends QoS type packets with WMM priority categories such as AC\_VO, AC\_VI, AC\_BE, AC\_BK, FortiAP can forward these packets by translating WMM to DSCP marking and transmit the packets from the Ethernet to their destination.

Use the following QoS profile CLI commands to implement this function:

```
config wireless-controller qos-profile
  edit qos-wifi
    set wmm-dscp-marking [enable/disable]
    enable      Enable WMM Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) marking.
    disable     Disable WMM Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) marking.
  end
```

wmm-dscp-marking	Enable/disable WMM Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) marking (default = disable).
wmm-vo-dscp	DSCP marking for voice access (default = 48).
wmm-vi-dscp	DSCP marking for video access (default = 32).
wmm-be-dscp	DSCP marking for best effort access (default = 0).
wmm-bk-dscp	DSCP marking for background access (default = 8).



### To configure WMM QoS marking of packets:

1. Create a QoS profile with `wmm-dscp-marking` enabled, and modify the `wmm-dscp` settings.

```
config wireless-controller qos-profile
  edit qos-wifi
    set wmm-dscp-marking enable
    set wmm-vo-dscp 44
    set wmm-vi-dscp 24
    set wmm-be-dscp 12
    set wmm-bk-dscp 6
  end
```

2. Select the QoS profile on a VAP interface.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "stability3"
```

```

        set qos-profile "qos-wifi"
    next
end

```

### 3. Verify that the wmm-dscp-marking values are pushed on FortiAP.

```

cw_diag -c k-qos wlan00
WLAN Kernel QoS Settings
..
....
WLAN wlan00 :
    wmm                               : 1
    wmm uapsd                         : 1
    call admission control             : 0
    call capacity                     : 0
    bandwidth admission control       : 0
    bandwidth capacity                : 0
    dscp mapping                      : 0
    dscp marking                      : 1
        vo dscp                       : 44
        vi dscp                       : 24
        be dscp                       : 12
        bk dscp                       : 6


```

### 4. Verify that, when sending traffic from a client with a WMM setting of VO, the FortiGate receives the packets with a DSCP TID value or 44.

```

Destination address: 00:ff:96:54:a7:74 (00:ff:96:54:a7:74)
Transmitter address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
Source address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
BSS Id: Fortinet_c7:65:39 (90:6c:ac:c7:65:39)
STA address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
.... 0000 = Fragment number: 0
0000 0000 0010 .... = Sequence number: 2
Frame check sequence: 0x4d09e877 [correct]
[FCS Status: Good]
Qos Control: 0x0007
.... 0111 = TID: 7
[.... 0111 = Priority: Network Control (Voice) (7)]
.... 0000 0000 0010 .... = QoS bit 4: Bits 8-15 of QoS Control field are TXOP Duration Requested
.... 0000 0000 0010 .... = Ack Policy: Normal Ack (0x0)
.... 0000 0000 0010 .... = Payload Type: MSDU
0000 0000 .... = TXOP Duration Requested: 0 (no TXOP requested)

```



```

> Ethernet II, Src: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0), Dst: 00:ff:96:54:a7:74 (00:ff:96:54:a7:74)
v Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 11.10.80.3, Dst: 172.16.200.44
    0100 .... = Version: 4
    .... 0101 = Header Length: 20 bytes (5)
    v Differentiated Services Field: 0xb0 (DSCP: Unknown, ECT: Not-ECT)
        1011 00.. = Differentiated Services Codepoint: Unknown (44)
        .... 00 = Explicit Congestion Notification: Not ECT-Capable Transport (0)
    Total Length: 84


```

### 5. Verify that, when sending traffic from a client with a WMM setting of VI, the FortiGate receives the packets with a DSCP TID value or 24.

```

Transmitter address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
Source address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
BSS Id: Fortinet_c7:65:39 (90:6c:ac:c7:65:39)
STA address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
.... 0000 = Fragment number: 0
0000 0000 1010 .... = Sequence number: 10
Frame check sequence: 0x7749636d [correct]
[FCS Status: Good]
Qos Control: 0x0005
.... 0101 = TID: 5
[.... 0101 = Priority: Video (Video) (5)]
.... 0000 0000 1010 .... = QoS bit 4: Bits 8-15 of QoS Control field are TXOP Duration Requested
.... 0000 0000 1010 .... = Ack Policy: Normal Ack (0x0)
.... 0000 0000 1010 .... = Payload Type: MSDU
0000 0000 .... = TXOP Duration Requested: 0 (no TXOP requested)

```



```

> Ethernet II, Src: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0), Dst: 00:ff:96:54:a7:74 (00:ff:96:54:a7:74)
v Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 11.10.80.3, Dst: 172.16.200.44
    0100 .... = Version: 4
    .... 0101 = Header Length: 20 bytes (5)
    v Differentiated Services Field: 0xb0 (DSCP: CS3, ECT: Not-ECT)
        0100 00.. = Differentiated Services Codepoint: Class Selector 3 (24)
        .... 00 = Explicit Congestion Notification: Not ECT-Capable Transport (0)
    Total Length: 84
    Identification: 0x313a (12602)


```

### 6. Verify that, when sending traffic from a client with a WMM setting of BE, the FortiGate receives the packets with a DSCP TID value or 12.

```

Transmitter address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
Source address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
BSS Id: Fortinet_c7:65:39 (90:6c:ac:c7:65:39)
STA address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
.... 0000 = Fragment number: 0
0100 1001 0100 .... = Sequence number: 1172
Frame check sequence: 0xb1a666f6 [correct]
[FCS Status: Good]
Qos Control: 0x0000
.... 0000 = TID: 0
[.... 0000 = Priority: Best Effort (Best Effort) (0)]
.... 0000 0000 0100 .... = QoS bit 4: Bits 8-15 of QoS Control field are TXOP Duration Requested
.... 0000 0000 0100 .... = Ack Policy: Normal Ack (0x0)
.... 0000 0000 0100 .... = Payload Type: MSDU
0000 0000 .... = TXOP Duration Requested: 0 (no TXOP requested)

```



```

> Ethernet II, Src: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0), Dst: 00:ff:96:54:a7:74 (00:ff:96:54:a7:74)
v Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 11.10.80.3, Dst: 172.16.200.44
    0100 .... = Version: 4
    .... 0101 = Header Length: 20 bytes (5)
    v Differentiated Services Field: 0x30 (DSCP: AF12, ECT: Not-ECT)
        0011 00.. = Differentiated Services Codepoint: Assured Forwarding 12 (12)
        .... 00 = Explicit Congestion Notification: Not ECT-Capable Transport (0)

```

### 7. Verify that, when sending traffic from a client with a WMM setting of BK, the FortiGate receives the packets with a DSCP TID value or 6.

```

Transmitter address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
Source address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
BSS Id: Fortinet_c7:65:39 (90:6c:ac:c7:65:39)
STA address: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0)
.... 0000 = Fragment number: 0
0000 0000 .... = Sequence number: 0
Frame check sequence: 0xf008a251 [correct]
[FCS Status: Good]
Qos Control: 0x0001
..... 0001 = TID: 1
[..... 0001 = Priority: Background (Background) (1)]
..... 0000 = QoS bit 4: Bits 0-15 of QoS Control field are TXOP Duration Requested
..... 0000 = Ack Policy: Normal Ack (0x00)
..... 0000 = Payload Type: MSDU
0000 0000 .... = TXOP Duration Requested: 0 (no TXOP requested)

```

➔

```

> Ethernet II, Src: IntelCor_1c:ce:b0 (7c:7a:91:1c:ce:b0), Dst: 00:ff:96:54:a7:74 (00:ff:96:54:a7:74)
v Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 11.10.80.3, Dst: 172.16.200.44
0100 .... = Version: 4
.... 0101 = Header Length: 20 bytes (5)
v Differentiated Services Field: 0x18 (DSCP: Unknown, ECN: Not-ECT)
0001 10... = Differentiated Services Codepoint: Unknown (6)
.... ..00 = Explicit Congestion Notification: Not ECN-Capable Transport (0)

```

## Configuring Layer 3 roaming

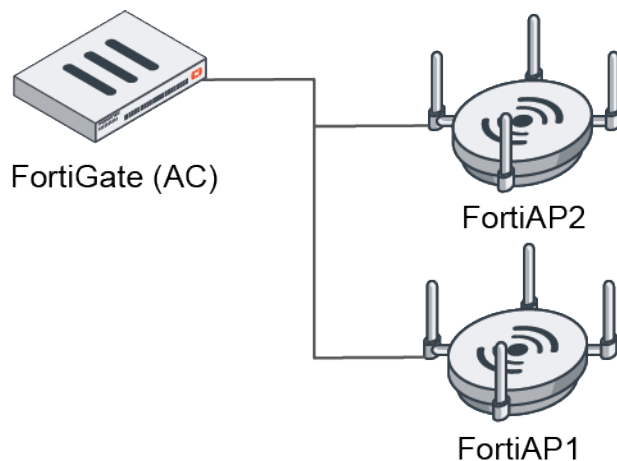
Roaming is client's ability to maintain its association while it roams from one AP to another with as little latency as possible. When a wireless client connects to an access point, the managed wireless controller maintains client's database or information like MAC and IP addresses, security context and associations, quality of service (QoS), the WLAN. The controller uses this information to forward frames and manage traffic to and from the wireless client.

As a wireless client roams from one department or floor to another, the design could mean that they cross an L3 boundary and experience latency. This is especially noticeable when running VoIP, Video or streaming services. To support this, you can configure a wireless network to enable Layer 3 roaming between different VLANs and subnets on the same or different Wireless Controller. A client connected to the SSID on one FortiAP can roam to the same SSID on another FortiAP managed by the same or different FortiGate Wireless Controller, and continue to use the same IP. When the client idles longer than a configurable amount of time (`client-idle-rehome-timeout`), the client will rehome, receive an address on the new subnet from the new FortiAP, and move to its new L3 segment.

This feature supports two topologies:

- **L3 roaming intra-controller**

In this example, there are two FortiAPs (FAP1 and FAP2) being managed by a controller. The FortiAPs are located on different floors of the same building. Each FortiAP is mapped to a different VLAN, but are on the same SSID. The client roams from FAP1 to FAP 2 and the L3 handoff is handled by the controller. The client maintains the same IP address.

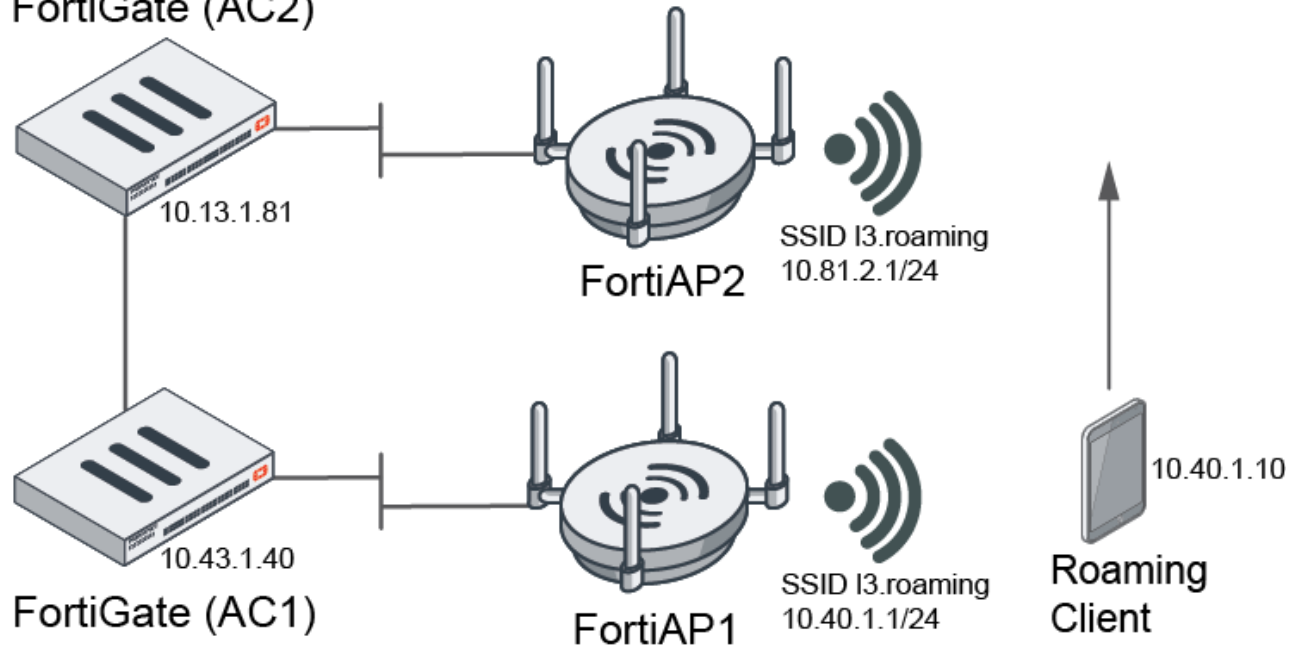


- **L3 roaming inter-controller**

In this example, there are two controllers (Controller1 and Controller2) each managing a FortiAP (FAP1 and FAP2) respectively. The L3 client roams from Controller1's FAP1 to Controller 2's FAP2. Both FortiAPs have the same

SSID, and each FAP has the SSID tied to a different VLAN. The client roams between the two FAPs and the L3 handoff is handled by Controller1 and Controller2's mobility tunnel. The client maintains the same IP address.

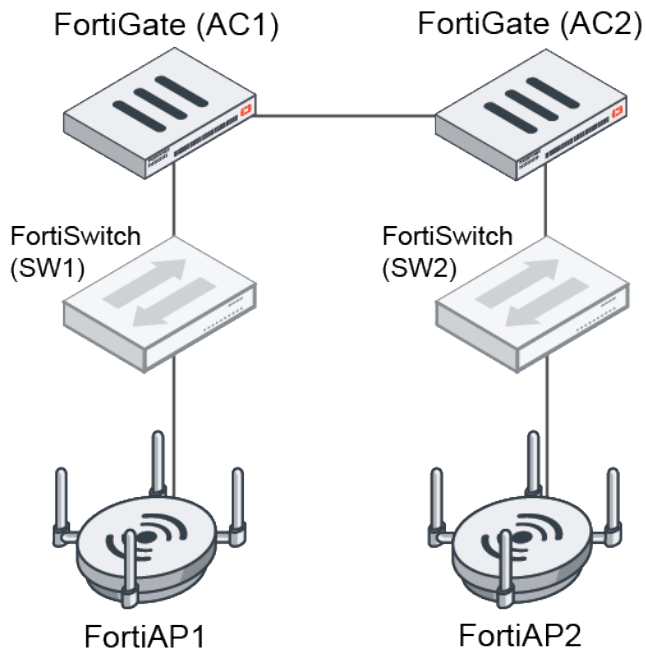
### FortiGate (AC2)



In addition, for the L3 roaming inter-controller topology, bridge mode SSIDs support two roaming modes:

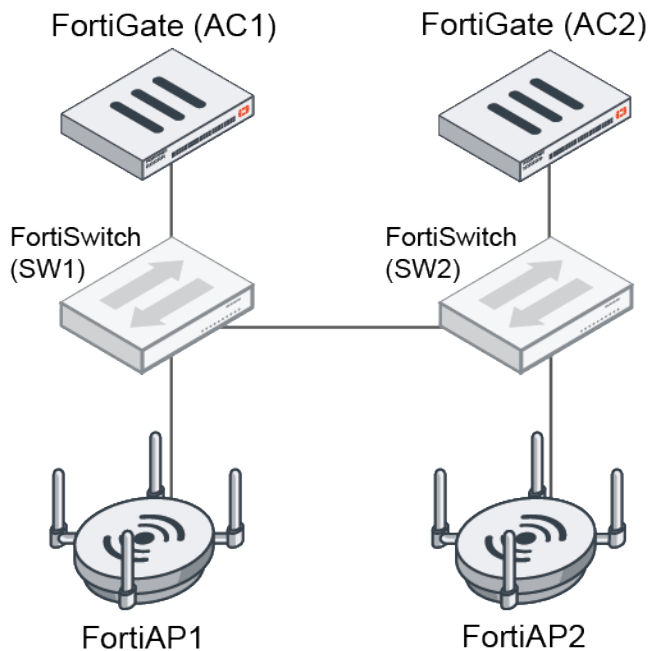
- **Indirect Mode**

In indirect mode, the L3 handoff is handled by the mobility tunnel between the FortiGate Wireless Controllers.



- **Direct Mode**

In direct mode, the two FortiAPs must be able to reach each other with no NAT in the path and the L3 handoff occurs between the FortiAPs directly.



**Note:** Direct mode is preferred when feasible.

## Configuring L3 Roaming for Tunnel Mode SSIDs

### To configure Intra-Controller L3 roaming - CLI

1. Configure the `client-idle-rehome-timeout` (default is 20 seconds):

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set client-idle-rehome-timeout 20
end
```

2. configure the L3 roaming support SSID:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "l3_rm1"
    set ssid "l3.roaming"
    set passphrase ENC
    set schedule "always"
    set l3-roaming enable
  next
end
config system interface
  edit "l3_rm1"
    set vdom "root"
    set ip 10.40.1.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping
    set type vap-switch
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 18
  next
end
```

3. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP433F:



```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "433F"
    config platform
        set type 433F
        set ddscan enable
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    set allowaccess ssh
    config radio-1
        set mode disabled
    end
    config radio-2
        set band 802.11ax-5G
        set power-mode dBm
        set power-value 1
        set channel "36"
        set vap-all manual
        set vaps "13_rm1"
    end
    config radio-3
        set mode monitor
    end
next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
edit "FP433FXX00000000"
    set uuid b04flcca-8528-51ec-2dc0-c744cbef4179
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "433F"
    config radio-2
    end
next
end
```

#### 4. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP831F:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "831F"
    config platform
        set type 831F
        set ddscan enable
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    set allowaccess ssh
    config radio-1
        set mode disabled
    end
    config radio-2
        set band 802.11ax-5G
        set channel "36" "40"
        set vap-all manual
        set vaps "13_rm1"
    end
    config radio-3
        set mode disabled
    end
next
```

```
end
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP831FXX00000000"
    set uuid 23ed4966-af92-51ec-44e8-3c1318698661
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "831F"
    config radio-2
  end
next
end
```

### To configure Inter-Controller L3 roaming - CLI

This configuration requires two FortiGate units. In order to enable L3 roaming supported VAP, both FortiGate units must have the same SSID, security, and passphrase.

The following example uses:

- AC1 as FGT40F
  - FAP1 as FAP433E
- AC2 as FGT81EP
  - FAP2 as FAP831F

#### 1. Configure the L3 roaming peer IP for AC1 (FGT-40F):

```
config system interface
  edit "wan"
    set vdom "root"
    set ip 10.43.1.40 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
    set type physical
    set role wan
    set snmp-index 1
  next
end
config wireless-controller inter-controller
  set l3-roaming enable
  config inter-controller-peer
    edit 1
      set peer-ip 10.43.1.81
    next
  end
end
```

#### a. Configure the client-idle-rehome-timeout (default is 20 seconds):

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set client-idle-rehome-timeout 20
end
```

#### b. configure the L3 roaming support SSID:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "l3_rml"
    set ssid "l3.roaming"
    set passphrase ENC
    set schedule "always"
    set l3-roaming enable
```

```
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "l3_rml"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.40.1.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set type vap-switch
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 18
    next
end
```

**c. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP433F:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "433F"
        config platform
            set type 433F
            set ddscan enable
        end
        set handoff-sta-thresh 55
        set allowaccess ssh
        config radio-1
            set mode disabled
        end
        config radio-2
            set band 802.11ax-5G
            set power-mode dBm
            set power-value 1
            set channel "36"
            set vap-all manual
            set vaps "l3_rml"
        end
        config radio-3
            set mode monitor
        end
    next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
    edit "FP433FXX00000000"
        set uuid b04f1cca-8528-51ec-2dc0-c744cbef4179
        set admin enable
        set wtp-profile "433F"
        config radio-2
        end
    next
end
```

**2. Configure the L3 roaming peer IP for AC2 (FGT-81EP):**

```
config system interface
    edit "wan"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.43.1.81 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
        set type physical
    end
```

```
        set role wan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
config wireless-controller inter-controller
    set l3-roaming enable
    config inter-controller-peer
        edit 1
            set peer-ip 10.43.1.40
        next
    end
end
```

**a. Configure the client-idle-rehome-timeout (default is 20 seconds):**

```
config wireless-controller timers
    set client-idle-rehome-timeout 20
end
```

**b. configure the L3 roaming support SSID:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
    edit "l3_rm1"
        set ssid "l3.roaming"
        set passphrase ENC
        set schedule "always"
        set l3-roaming enable
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "l3_rm1"
        set vdom "root"
        set 10.81.2.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping speed-test
        set type vap-switch
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 23
    next
end
```

**c. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP831F:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "831F"
        config platform
            set type 831F
            set ddscan enable
        end
        set handoff-sta-thresh 55
        set allowaccess ssh
        config radio-1
            set mode disabled
        end
        config radio-2
            set band 802.11ax-5G
            set channel "36" "40"
            set vap-all manual
            set vaps "l3_rm1"
```

```

        end
        config radio-3
            set mode disabled
        end
    next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
edit "FP831FXX00000000"
    set uuid 23ed4966-af92-51ec-44e8-3c1318698661
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "831F"
    config radio-2
        end
    next
end

```

### 3. Check the peer status from AC1 (FGT-40F):

```

FortiGate-40F # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha
WC fast failover info
mode      : disabled
l3r       : enabled
peer cnt: 1
          FG81EPXX00000000 10.43.1.81:5246      UP 2

```

### 4. Check the peer status from AC2 (FGT-81EP):

```

FortiGate-81E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha
WC fast failover info
mode      : disabled
l3r       : enabled
peer cnt: 1
          FGT40FXX00000000 10.43.1.40:5246      UP 3

```

## Understanding L3 roaming events for inter-controller L3 roaming for a tunnel mode SSID

When the wireless client is connected with "l3.roaming" on AP1 in AC1, the client receives IP 10.40.1.10 from AP1 in AC1:

```

FortiGate-40F # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=0 wtp=2 rId=2 wlan=l3_rml vlan_id=0 ip=10.40.1.10 ip6=fe80::7766:7ffe:ee4d:c396
mac=a4:c3:f0:6d:69:33 vci= host=test-wifi user= group= signal=-65 noise=-95 idle=1 bw=3
use=7 chan=36 radio_type=11AC(wave2) security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_
authed=no l3r=1,1 10.43.1.81:5247 -- 10.43.1.40:5247 33,0 online=yes mimo=2

```

When the client leaves AP1 and roams towards AP2, it connects with the same SSID "l3.roaming" on AP2. Wireless traffic passed from AP2 and is sent to AC2. Eventually the wireless traffic is transferred from AC2 to AC1 and traffic is maintained from AC1. The wireless client maintains the original IP of 10.40.1.10:

```

FortiGate-81E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=0 wtp=3 rId=2 wlan=l3_rml vlan_id=0 ip=10.40.1.10 ip6=: mac=a4:c3:f0:6d:69:33 vci=
host= user= group= signal=-66 noise=-95 idle=0 bw=2 use=7 chan=36 radio_type=11AC(wave2)
security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no l3r=0,1 0.0.0.0:0 -- 0.0.0.0:0
0,0 online=yes mimo=2

```

If the wireless client idle time exceeds `client-idle-rehome-timeout`, it triggers the rehome event. The wireless client will send a DHCP request and obtain a new IP address from AC2 (10.81.2.20). Now the wireless client traffic is maintained from AC2:

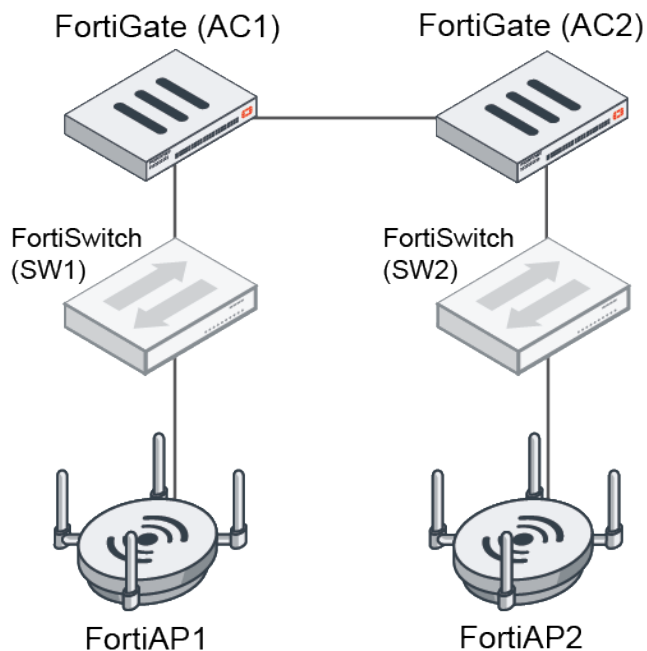
```
FortiGate-81E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=0 wtp=3 rId=2 wlan=l3_rm1 vlan_id=0 ip=10.81.2.20 ip6=:: mac=a4:c3:f0:6d:69:33 vci=
host=test-wifi user= group= signal=-65 noise=-95 idle=0 bw=0 use=6 chan=36 radio_type=11AC
(wave2) security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no l3r=1,0 0.0.0.0:0 --
0.0.0.0:0 0,0 online=yes mimo=2
```

## Configuring L3 Roaming for Bridge Mode SSIDs

L3 roaming inter-controller topology using bridge mode SSIDs supports two roaming modes:

- **Indirect Mode**

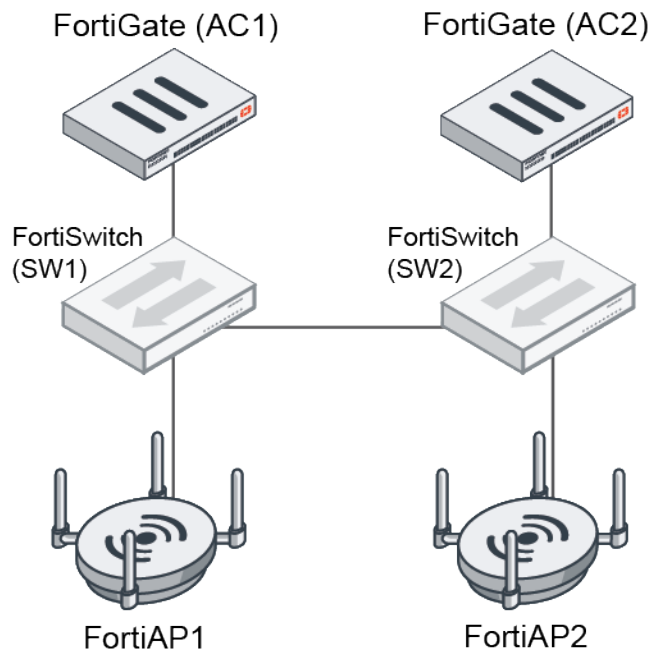
In indirect mode, the L3 handoff is handled by the mobility tunnel between the FortiGate Wireless Controllers.



- **Direct Mode**

In direct mode, the two FortiAPs must be able to reach each other with no NAT in the path and the L3 handoff occurs

between the FortiAPs directly.



Direct mode is preferred if it is feasible in the topology.

The following configurations require dynamic user VLAN assignment by RADIUS to be configured for RADIUS users per the steps in [VLAN assignment by RADIUS on page 88](#), specifically, configuring RADIUS user attributes that are used for the VLAN ID assignment.

### To configure Intra-Controller L3 roaming for a bridge mode SSID - CLI

1. Configure the `client-idle-rehome-timeout` (default is 20 seconds):

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set client-idle-rehome-timeout 20
end
```

2. configure the L3 roaming support bridge mode SSID and related VLAN interface:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "l3_br1"
    set ssid "L3Roaming_br1"
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set auth radius
    set radius-server "wifi-radius"
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
    set dynamic-vlan enable
    set l3-roaming enable
  next
end
config system interface
  edit "lan"
    set vdom "root"
    set ip 10.40.0.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
```

```
        set type hard-switch
        set stp enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 4
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "lan_100"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.43.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 10
        set interface "lan"
        set vlanid 100
    next
end
```

### 3. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP433F:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "433F"
        config platform
            set type 433F
            set ddscan enable
        end
        set handoff-sta-thresh 55
        config radio-1
            set mode disabled
        end
        config radio-2
            set band 802.11ax-5G
            set vap-all manual
            set vaps "l3_br1"
            set channel "36"
        end
        config radio-3
            set mode disabled
        end
    next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
    edit "FP433FXX00000000"
        set uuid b04f1cca-8528-51ec-2dc0-c744cbef4179
        set admin enable
        set wtp-profile "433F"
        config radio-2
        end
    next
end
```

### 4. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP831F:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "831F.1"
        config platform
```



```
        set type 831F
        set ddscan enable
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    set allowaccess https ssh
    config radio-1
        set mode disabled
    end
    config radio-2
        set band 802.11ax-5G
        set power-level 99
        set vap-all manual
        set vaps "l3_br1"
        set channel "36" "40"
    end
    config radio-3
        set mode disabled
    end
next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
    edit "FP831FXX00000000"
        set uuid b867ca7c-cbc5-51ec-d5ac-4a395282be68
        set admin enable
        set wtp-profile "831F.1"
        config radio-2
        end
    next
end
```

### To configure Inter-Controller L3 roaming for a bridge mode SSID - CLI

This configuration requires two FortiGate units. In order to enable L3 roaming supported VAP, both FortiGate units must have the same SSID, security, and passphrase.

The following example uses:

- AC1 as FGT40F
  - FAP1 as FAP433E
- AC2 as FGT81EP
  - FAP2 as FAP831F

#### 1. Configure the L3 roaming peer IP for AC1 (FGT-40F):

```
config system interface
    edit "wan"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.43.1.40 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
        set type physical
        set role wan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
config wireless-controller inter-controller
    set l3-roaming enable
```

```
config inter-controller-peer
  edit 1
    set peer-ip 10.43.1.81
  next
end
end
```

**a. Configure the client-idle-rehome-timeout (default is 20 seconds):**

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set client-idle-rehome-timeout 20
end
```

**b. Configure the L3 roaming support bridge mode SSID and related VLAN interface:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "l3_br1"
    set ssid "L3Roaming_br1"
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set auth radius
    set radius-server "wifi-radius"
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
    set dynamic-vlan enable
    set l3-roaming enable
    set l3-roaming-mode indirect
  next
end
config system interface
  edit "lan"
    set vdom "root"
    set ip 10.40.0.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
    set type hard-switch
    set stp enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 4
  next
end
config system interface
  edit "lan_100"
    set vdom "root"
    set ip 10.43.100.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping
    set device-identification enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 10
    set interface "lan"
    set vlanid 100
  next
end
```

**c. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP433F:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "433F"
    config platform
      set type 433F
```

```

        set ddscan enable
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    config radio-1
        set mode disabled
    end
    config radio-2
        set band 802.11ax-5G
        set vap-all manual
        set vaps "l3_br1"
        set channel "36"
    end
    config radio-3
        set mode disabled
    end
next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
    edit "FP433FXX00000000"
        set uuid b04f1cca-8528-51ec-2dc0-c744cbef4179
        set admin enable
        set wtp-profile "433F"
        config radio-2
        end
    next
end

```

## 2. Configure the L3 roaming peer IP for AC2 (FGT-81EP):

```

config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.43.1.81 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
        set type physical
        set role wan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
config wireless-controller inter-controller
    set l3-roaming enable
    config inter-controller-peer
        edit 1
            set peer-ip 10.43.1.40
        next
    end
end

```

### a. Configure the client-idle-rehome-timeout (default is 20 seconds):

```

config wireless-controller timers
    set client-idle-rehome-timeout 20
end

```

### b. Configure the L3 roaming support bridge mode SSID and related VLAN interface:

```

config wireless-controller vap
    edit "l3_br1"

```

```
        set ssid "L3Roaming_br1"
        set security wpa2-only-enterprise
        set auth radius
        set radius-server "wifi-radius"
        set local-bridging enable
        set schedule "always"
        set dynamic-vlan enable
        set l3-roaming enable
        set l3-roaming-mode indirect
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "lan_hw"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.81.0.129 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
        set type hard-switch
        set stp enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 52
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "lan_100"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.81.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 34
        set interface "lan_hw"
        set vlanid 100
    next
end
```

**c. Assign L3 roaming VAP to FAP831F:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit "831F.1"
        config platform
            set type 831F
            set ddscan enable
        end
        set handoff-sta-thresh 55
        set allowaccess https ssh
        config radio-1
            set mode disabled
        end
        config radio-2
            set band 802.11ax-5G
            set power-level 99
            set vap-all manual
            set vaps "l3_br1"
            set channel "36" "40"
        end
        config radio-3
            set mode disabled
```

```

        end
    next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
    edit "FP831FXX00000000"
        set uuid b867ca7c-cbc5-51ec-d5ac-4a395282be68
        set admin enable
        set wtp-profile "831F.1"
        config radio-2
        end
    next
end

```

### 3. Check the peer status from AC1 (FGT-40F):

```

FortiGate-40F # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha
WC fast failover info
    mode      : disabled
    l3r       : enabled
    peer cnt: 1
                FG81EPXX00000000 10.43.1.81:5246      UP 0

```

### 4. Check the peer status from AC2 (FGT-81EP):

```

FortiGate-81E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha
WC fast failover info
    mode      : disabled
    l3r       : enabled
    peer cnt: 1
                FGT40FXX00000000 10.43.1.40:5246      UP 0

```

## Understanding L3 roaming events for inter-controller L3 roaming for a bridge mode SSID

When the wireless client is connected with "L3Roaming\_br1" on AP1 in AC1, the client receives IP 10.43.100.2 from AP1 in AC1, bridged to "lan\_100" VLAN interface:

```

FortiGate-40F # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=0 wtp=2 rId=2 wlan=l3_br1 vlan_id=100 ip=10.43.100.2 ip6=fe80::c84:737e:2ba0:7ae2
mac=22:cf:0e:1a:7f:d2 vci= host= user=vlan0100 group=wifi-radius signal=-67 noise=-95 idle=6
bw=0 use=6 chan=36 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_enterprise mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_
authed=no l3r=1,0 G=0.0.0.0:0,0.0.0.0:0-0-0 -- 0.0.0.0:0 0,0 online=yes mimo=2

```

When the client leaves AP1 and roams towards AP2, it connects with the same SSID "L3Roaming\_br1" on AP2. Wireless traffic passes from AP2 and is sent to AC2. Eventually the wireless traffic is transferred from AC2 to AC1 and traffic is maintained from AC1. The wireless client maintains the original IP of 10.43.100.2:

```

FortiGate-81E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=0 wtp=10 rId=2 wlan=l3_br1 vlan_id=0 ip=10.43.100.2 ip6=: mac=22:cf:0e:1a:7f:d2 vci=
host= user=vlan0100 group=wifi-radius signal=-58 noise=-95 idle=1 bw=5 use=7 chan=36 radio_
type=11AC security=wpa2_only_enterprise mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_authed=no l3r=0,1
G=0.0.0.0:0,0.0.0.0:0-0-0 -- 0.0.0.0:0 0,0 online=yes mimo=2

```

If the wireless client idle time exceeds `client-idle-rehome-timeout`, it triggers the rehome event. The wireless client will send a DHCP request and obtain a new IP address from AC2 (10.81.100.2). Now the wireless client traffic is maintained from AC2:

```
FortiGate-81E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
L vf=0 wtp=10 rId=2 wlan=l3_br1 vlan_id=100 ip=10.81.100.2 ip6=fe80::c84:737e:2ba0:7ae2
mac=22:cf:0e:1a:7f:d2 vci= host= user=vlan0100 group=wifi-radius signal=-55 noise=-95 idle=3
bw=0 use=6 chan=36 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_enterprise mpsk= encrypt=aes cp_
authed=no l3r=1,0 G=0.0.0.0:0,0.0.0.0:0-0-0 -- 0.0.0.0:0 0,0 online=yes mimo=2
```

## Advanced Wireless Features

By default, the FortiGate GUI hides advanced features to simplify the site layout. You can go to **System > Feature Visibility** to enable different types advanced features, including Advanced Wireless Features.

After enabling Advanced Wireless Features, several entries in the Navigation bar will change names.

- [Operations Profiles Entry on page 138](#): FortiAP, QoS, and FortiAP Configuration.
- [Connectivity Profiles Entry on page 143](#): MPSK and Bonjour.
- [Protection Profiles Entry on page 147](#): WIDS and L3 Firewall (also known as L3 Access Control List configurations for FortiAPs).
- Additional advanced options for wireless features under the **SSIDs** and **WiFi Settings** entries are visible.
  - **SSIDs > Edit Interface**: Voice-Enterprise, Multiband operation, Fast BSS transition, Probe response suppression, Sticky client removal, multicast enhancement, IGMP snooping, Radio sensitivity, Airtime weight, QoS profile, and L3 firewall profile.
  - **WiFi Settings**: Duplicate SSID, DARRP, Phishing SSID detection, and SNMP settings.



Note that this guide is intended to be used when Advanced Wireless Features is disabled, and therefore uses the default entry names. If a topic covers a feature that requires Advanced Wireless Features to be enabled, it will specify users must first enable Advanced Wireless Features.

---

### To enable Advanced Wireless Features - GUI

1. From the FortiOS GUI, go to **System > Feature Visibility**.
2. Under the **Additional Features** column, locate and enable **Advanced Wireless Features**.

Feature Visibility		
Core Features	Security Features	Additional Features
<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced Routing +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AntiVirus +	<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced Endpoint Control +
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPv6 +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Application Control +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Advanced Wireless Features +
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DNS Filter +	<input type="checkbox"/> Allow Unnamed Policies +
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Switch Controller +	<input type="checkbox"/> Email Filter +	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Detection-Based SD-WAN +
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WiFi Controller +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Endpoint Control +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Certificates +
	<input type="checkbox"/> Explicit Proxy +	<input type="checkbox"/> DNS Database +
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> File Filter +	<input type="checkbox"/> DoS Policy +
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Intrusion Prevention +	<input type="checkbox"/> Email Collection +
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Video Filter +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FortiExtender +
	<input type="checkbox"/> Web Application Firewall +	<input type="checkbox"/> FortiGate Cloud Sandbox +
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web Filter +	<input type="checkbox"/> ICAP +
	<input type="checkbox"/> Zero Trust Network Access +	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Implicit Firewall Policies +

**Apply**

### 3. Click **Apply**.

The Navigation bar reloads with the new features visible.

### To enable Advanced Wireless Features - CLI:

```
config system settings
    set gui-advanced-wireless-features enable
end
```

## Operations Profiles Entry

When you enable Advanced Wireless Features, FortiAP Profiles is renamed to Operation Profiles and contains additional tabs that enable you to manage QoS and FortiAP Configuration profiles.

Dashboard

Network

Policy & Objects

Security Profiles

VPN

User & Authentication

WiFi & Switch Controller

Local WiFi Radio

Managed FortiAPs

WiFi Clients

WiFi Maps

SSIDs

Operation Profiles

FortiAP Profiles

QoS Profiles

FortiAP Configuration Profiles

Create New

Edit

Clone

Delete

Search

Name	Platform(s)	Radio Mode	Band	SSIDs
11ac-only	Local WiFi Radio	R1 Disabled	R1 N/A	R1 N/A
FAP221C-default	FAP-221C	R1 Access Point R2 Access Point	R1 2.4GHz 802.11n/g R2 5GHz 802.11ac/n/a	R1 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs R2 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs
FAP221E-default	FAP-221E	R1 Access Point R2 Access Point	R1 2.4GHz 802.11n/g R2 5GHz 802.11ac/n/a	R1 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs R2 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs
FAP231F-default	FAP-221E	R1 Access Point R2 Access Point	R1 2.4GHz 802.11ax/n/g R2 5GHz 802.11ax/ac/n/a	R1 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs R2 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs
FAPU221EV-default	FAP-U221EV	R1 Access Point R2 Access Point	R1 2.4GHz 802.11n/g R2 5GHz 802.11ac/n/a	R1 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs R2 All Tunnel Mode SSIDs

## FortiAP Profile Advanced Settings

When you create or edit a FortiAP profile, you can configure additional advanced settings.

New FortiAP Profile

☐ AeroScout

Locate WiFi clients when not connected ☐

Advanced Settings

DTLS policy ☒ Clear text ☐ DTLS ☐ IPsec VPN

Maximum client count

Handoff RSSI

Handoff threshold

LED usage ☒

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

FortiAP Profiles > New/Edit	config wireless-controller wtp-
FortiAP Profile Advanced	profile
Settings	edit <name>
DTLS Policy	set dtls-policy {option1}, {option2}, ...
Maximum client count	set max-clients {integer}



Handoff RSSI	<code>set handoff-rssi {integer}</code>	
Handoff threshold	<code>set handoff-sta-thresh {integer}</code>	
LED usage	<code>set led-state [enable disable]</code> <code>set led-schedules &lt;name1&gt;, &lt;name2&gt;, ...</code>	led-schedules shown when led-state set to enable

## QoS Profiles


You can create or edit Quality of Service (QoS) profiles by clicking the **QoS Profiles** tab.


FortiAP Profiles


QoS Profiles

FortiAP Configuration Profiles



+ Create new

 Edit

 Delete

+ 

 Search

Name 	Ref. 
Example QoS Profile	0

Click **Create new** to create a QoS profile.

New QoS Profile

Name	Example QoS Profile
Comment	
Maximum uplink bandwidth for SSIDs	0
Maximum downlink bandwidth for SSIDs	0
Maximum uplink bandwidth for clients	0
Maximum downlink bandwidth for clients	0
Client rate burst	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WMM Control	
U-APSD power save mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Call admission control	<input type="checkbox"/>
DSCP mapping <a href="#">i</a>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DSCP marking <a href="#">i</a>	<input type="checkbox"/>

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

QoS Profiles > New/Edit QoS Profile	<code>config wireless-controller qos-profile</code>
-------------------------------------	---

Name	edit <name>	
Comment	set comment {string}	
Maximum uplink bandwidth for SSIDs	set uplink {integer}	
Maximum downlink bandwidth for SSIDs	set downlink {integer}	
Maximum uplink bandwidth for clients	set uplink-sta {integer}	
Maximum downlink bandwidth for clients	set downlink-sta {integer}	
Client rate burst	set burst [enable disable]	
WMM Control	set wmm [enable disable]	
U-APSD power save mode	set wmm-uapsd [enable disable]	
Call admission control	set call-admission-control [enable disable]	
Maximum VoWLAN phones count	set call-capacity {integer}	Shown when call-admission-control set to enable
Bandwidth admission control	set bandwidth-admission-control [enable disable]	
Maximum bandwidth capacity (Kbps)	set bandwidth-capacity {integer}	Shown when bandwidth-admission-control set to enable
DSCP mapping	set dscp-wmm-mapping [enable disable]	
Voice access	set dscp-wmm-vo <id1>, <id2>, ...	Shown when dscp-wmm-mapping set to enable
Video access	set dscp-wmm-vi <id1>, <id2>, ...	Shown when dscp-wmm-mapping set to enable
Best effort access	set dscp-wmm-be <id1>, <id2>, ...	Shown when dscp-wmm-mapping set to enable
Background access	set dscp-wmm-bk <id1>, <id2>, ...	Shown when dscp-wmm-mapping set to enable
DSCP marking	set wmm-dscp-marking [enable disable]	
Voice access	set wmm-vo-dscp {integer}	Shown when wmm-dscp-marking set to enable
Video access	set wmm-vi-dscp {integer}	Shown when wmm-dscp-marking set to enable

Best effort access	set wmm-be-dscp {integer}	Shown when wmm-dscp-marking set to enable
Background access	set wmm-bk-dscp {integer}	Shown when wmm-dscp-marking set to enable

## FortiAP Configuration Profiles

You can create or edit FortiAP Configuration Profile for managing local FortiAP configuration by clicking the **FortiAP Configuration Profiles** tab.

FortiAP Profiles		QoS Profiles	FortiAP Configuration Profiles
+ Create new		Edit	Delete
		+ Search	
Name		Ref.	
Example Config Profile		1	

Click **Create new** to create a FortiAP Configuration profile.

New FortiAP Configuration Profile

Name
Example Config Profile

Comment

FortiAP family
FortiAP FortiAP-U FortiAP-C

Command list

+ Create new Edit Delete

ID	Name	Type
No results		

Wireless Controller

Waiting time
10

Type
Default Specify Defined By FortiAP Configuration

OK Cancel

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

FortiAP Configuration Profiles > New/Edit FortiAP Configuration Profile	config wireless-controller apcfg-profile	
Name	edit <name>	
Comment	set comment {var-string}	
FortiAP family	set ap-family [fap fap-u ...]	
Command list > New / Edit Command	config command-list	<a href="#">FortiAP CLI configuration and diagnostics commands on page 359</a>
ID	edit <id>	
Name	set name {string}	
Type	set type [non-password password]	
Value	set value {string} / set passwd-value {password}	
Wireless controller		
Waiting time	set ac-timer {integer}	
Type	set ac-type [default specify ...]	
IP	set ac-ip {ipv4-address}	Shown when ac-type set to specify
Port	set ac-port {integer}	Shown when ac-type set to specify

## Connectivity Profiles Entry

You can access Connectivity Profiles to manage your MPSK and Bonjour profiles.

The screenshot shows the FortiWiFi configuration interface. On the left is a dark sidebar menu with the following items: Dashboard, Network, Policy & Objects, Security Profiles, VPN, User & Authentication, **WiFi & Switch Controller** (highlighted), Local WiFi Radio, Managed FortiAPs, WiFi Clients, WiFi Maps, SSIDs, Operation Profiles, and Connectivity Profiles (with a star icon). The main content area has two tabs: 'MPSK Profiles' (active) and 'Bonjour Profiles'. Below the tabs are buttons: '+ Create new', 'Edit', 'Delete', and a search bar with a magnifying glass icon. Below these is a table with two columns: 'Name' and 'Ref.'.

Name	Ref.
1006005	0
test-17906	0
test-mpsk	1

## MPSK Profiles

After you click **Connectivity Profile**, the **MPSK Profiles** tab loads by default. From there you can create or edit MPSK profiles to manage multiple pre-shared keys.

Click **Create new** to create an MPSK profile.

The 'New MPSK Profile' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Maximum concurrent client count:** A text input field with the value '0'.
- MPSK group list:** A section containing:
  - Buttons: '+ Add', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Export Groups'.
  - A table with columns 'Name' and 'VLAN ID'.
  - The table content shows 'No results'.
  - A small counter box in the bottom right corner of the table area showing '0'.
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' at the bottom.

From there you can create and add MPSK groups and determine how you want to add your MPSK keys.

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

MPSK Profiles > New / Edit MPSK Profile	config wireless-controller mpsk-profile	
Name	edit <name>	
Maximum concurrent client count	set mpsk-concurrent-clients {integer}	
MPSK Group List > New/Edit MPSK Group	config mpsk-group	
Name	edit <name>	
VLAN type	set vlan-type [no-vlan fixed-vlan]	
VLAN ID	set vlan-id {integer}	Shown when vlan-type set to fixed-vlan
MPSK key list > New / Edit MPSK Key	config mpsk-key	
Name	edit <name>	
Comment	set comment {var-string}	
Pre-shared key	set passphrase {password}	
MAC address	set mac {mac-address}	
Client limit type	set concurrent-client-limit-type [default unlimited ...]	
Client limit	set concurrent-clients {integer}	Shown when concurrent-client-limit-type set to specified

```
MPSK schedule                               set mpsk-schedules <name1>,  
                                             <name2>, ...
```

## Bonjour Profiles

Bonjour is Apple's zero configuration networking protocol. Bonjour profiles allow APs and FortiAPs to connect to networks using Bonjour. You can create or edit Bonjour profiles by clicking the **Bonjour Profiles** tab.

MPSK Profiles			Bonjour Profiles		
+ Create new			Edit Delete + Search		
Name		Comments	Ref.		
Example Bonjour Profile			0		

Click **Create new** to create a Bonjour profile.

New Bonjour Profile

Name

Example Bonjour Profile

Comment

Policy list

+ Create new

Edit

Delete

Source VLAN

Services

No results

OK

Cancel

From there you can create and add policies that determine which services you want to advertise across the network.

The image shows two overlapping configuration windows. The 'New Bonjour Profile' window on the left has fields for 'Name' (Example Bonjour Profile), 'Comment', and a 'Policy list' section with '+ Create new', 'Edit', and 'Delete' buttons. Below these are 'Source VLAN' and 'Services' dropdowns, and a 'No results' message. The 'New Bonjour Policy' window on the right has fields for 'Policy ID' (0), 'Description', and 'Source VLAN' (0). It also has 'Destination VLAN' with 'All' and 'Specify' buttons. The 'Services' section contains a grid of checkboxes: All (checked), AirPlay, Apple File Sharing, BitTorrent, FTP, iChat, iTunes, Printers, Windows Share, Scanners, SSH, and ChromeCast. Both windows have 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

Bonjour Profiles > New/Edit Bonjour Profile	<code>config wireless-controller bonjour-profile</code>
Name	<code>edit &lt;name&gt;</code>
Comment	<code>set comment {string}</code>
Policy list > New/Edit Bonjour Policy	<code>config policy-list</code>
Policy ID	<code>edit &lt;policy-id&gt;</code>
Description	<code>set description {string}</code>
Source VLAN	<code>set from-vlan {string}</code>
Destination VLAN	<code>set to-vlan {string}</code>
Services	<code>set services {option1}, {option2}, ...</code>

## Protection Profiles Entry

When you enable Advanced Wireless Features, WIDS Profiles is renamed to Protection Profiles and contains additional tabs that enable you to manage L3 Firewall Profiles.



WIDS Profiles    L3 Firewall Profiles

+ Create new   Edit   Delete   + Search

Name	Rogue AP Detection	Comments	Ref.
default	✓ Enabled	Default WIDS profile.	0
default-wids-apscan-enabled	✓ Enabled		0

## WIDS Profiles

After you click **Protection Profiles**, the **WIDS Profiles** tab loads by default. From there you can create or edit WIDS profiles to configure the type of security threats you want to monitor.

## L3 Firewall Profile

You can create or edit L3 Firewall Profiles to configure the WiFi bridge access control list by clicking the **L3 Firewall Profiles** tab.

WIDS Profiles    L3 Firewall Profiles

+ Create new   Edit   Delete   + Search

Name	Comments	Ref.
Example L3 Firewall Profile		0

Click **Create new** to create a L3 Firewall profile.

**New L3 Firewall Profile**

Name

Comment

IPv4 rule list

[+ Create new](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Source	Destination	Action
No results		

IPv6 rule list

[+ Create new](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Source	Destination	Action
No results		

**OK** **Cancel**

From there, you can create IPv4 or IPv6 rule lists to allow or deny traffic that matches the configured policy.

**New L3 Firewall Profile**

Name

Comment

IPv4 rule list

[+ Create new](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Source	Destination	Action
No results		

**New IPv4 Rule** ✕

ID

Comment

Source address [Any](#) [Local LAN](#) [Specify](#)

Source port

Destination address [Any](#) [Local LAN](#) [Specify](#)

Destination port

IANA protocol number

Action [Allow](#) [Deny](#)

**OK** **Cancel**

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

```
L3 Firewall Profiles > New/Edit  config wireless-controller access-control-list
L3 Firewall Profile
Name                             edit <name>
```

Comment	set comment {string}
IPv4 rule list > New/Edit IPv4 Rule	config layer3-ipv4-rules
ID	edit <rule-id>
Comment	set comment {string}
Source address	set srcaddr {user}
Source port	set srcport {integer}
Destination address	set dstaddr {user}
Destination port	set dstport {integer}
IANA protocol number	set protocol {integer}
Action	set action [allow deny]
IPv6 rule list > New/Edit IPv6 Rule	config layer3-ipv6-rules
ID	edit <rule-id>
Comment	set comment {string}
Source address	set srcaddr {user}
Source port	set srcport {integer}
Destination address	set dstaddr {user}
Destination port	set dstport {integer}
IANA protocol number	set protocol {integer}
Action	set action [allow deny]

## Advanced SSID options

When you create or edit an SSID, you can configure additional advanced settings.

Create New SSID

Advanced Settings

Voice-Enterprise

☐

Multiband operation

☐

Fast BSS transition

☐

Probe response suppression

☐

Sticky client removal

☐

Multicast enhancement

☐

IGMP snooping

☐

Radio sensitivity

☐

Airtime weight

QoS profile

L3 firewall profile

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

Edit Interface > Advanced Settings	config wireless-controller vap edit <name>
Voice-Enterprise	set voice-enterprise [disable enable]
Multiband operation	set mbo [disable enable]
Fast BSS transition	set fast-bss-transition [disable enable]
Probe response suppression	set probe-resp-suppression [enable disable]
Sticky client removal	set sticky-client-remove [enable disable]
Multicast enhancement	set multicast-enhance [enable disable]
ICMP snooping	set igmp-snooping [enable disable]
Radio sensitivity	set radio-sensitivity [enable disable]
Airtime weight	set atf-weight {integer}
QoS profile	set qos-profile {string}
L3 firewall profile	set access-control-list {string}

## Advanced WiFi Settings options

More options are exposed on WiFi Settings page, including Duplicate SSID, DARRP related settings, Phishing SSID detection setting, and SNMP settings.

WiFi Settings

WiFi certificate

Fortinet\_Wifi

WiFi CA certificate

Fortinet\_Wifi\_CA

WiFi country/region

United States

FortiAP auto firmware provisioning

Duplicate SSID

DARRP optimization interval (seconds)

86400

DARRP optimization schedule

default-darrp-optimize

+

Phishing SSID detection

SNMP Settings

Engine ID

Contact information

CPU usage threshold

80

Memory usage threshold

80

User list

+ Create new

Edit

Delete

Name	Security Level
No results	

These fields correspond to the following CLI settings:

WiFi Settings	config wireless-controller setting
---------------	------------------------------------

FortiWiFi and FortiAP 7.2.4 Configuration Guide  
Fortinet Inc.

152

Duplicate SSID	set duplicate-ssid [enable disable]	
DARRP optimization interval (seconds)	set darrp-optimize {integer}	
DARRP optimization schedule	set darrp-optimize-schedules <name1>, <name2>, ...	
Phishing SSID detection setting	set phishing-ssid-detect [enable disable]	
SNMP settings	config wireless-controller snmp	
Engine ID	set engine-id {string}	
Contact information	set contact-info {string}	
CPU usage threshold	set trap-high-cpu-threshold {integer}	
Memory usage threshold	set trap-high-mem-threshold {integer}	
User list > New/Edit SNMP User	config user	
Name	edit <name>	
Current SNMP user	set status [enable disable]	
Queries	set queries [enable disable]	
Traps	set trap-status [enable disable]	
Authentication	set security-level [no-auth- no-priv auth-no-priv ...]	
Authentication protocol	set auth-proto [md5 sha]	Shown when authentication setting enabled
Authentication password	set auth-pwd {password}	Shown when authentication setting enabled
Privacy	set priv-proto [aes des ...]	Shown when authentication setting enabled
Privacy password	set priv-pwd {password}	Shown when authentication setting enabled
Notify host IP	set notify-hosts {ipv4- address}	
Community list > New/Edit SNMP Community	config community	
ID	edit <id>	

Name	set name {string}
Current SNMP community	set status [enable disable]
V1 queries	set query-v1-status [enable disable]
V2c queries	set query-v2c-status [enable disable]
V1 traps	set trap-v1-status [enable disable]
V2c traps	set trap-v2c-status [enable disable]
Host list > New/Edit Host List	config hosts
ID	edit <id>
IP	set ip {user}

# Access point configuration

This section describes how to configure access points for your wireless network.

FortiAP units discover WiFi controllers. The administrator of the WiFi controller authorizes the FortiAP units that the controller can manage.

In most cases, FortiAP units can find WiFi controllers through the wired Ethernet without any special configuration. Review the [Network topology of managed APs on page 156](#) section to make sure that your method of connecting the FortiAP unit to the WiFi controller is valid. Then, you are ready to follow the procedures in [Discovery and authorization of APs on page 158](#).

If your FortiAP units are unable to find the WiFi controller, refer to [Advanced WiFi controller discovery on page 170](#) for detailed information about the FortiAP unit controller discovery methods and how you can configure them.

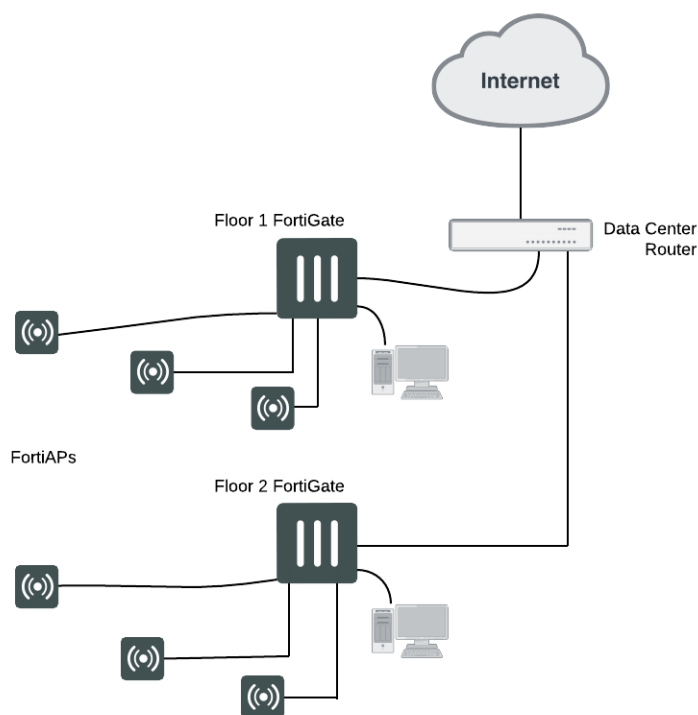


## Network topology of managed APs

The FortiAP unit can be connected to the FortiGate unit in any of the following ways:

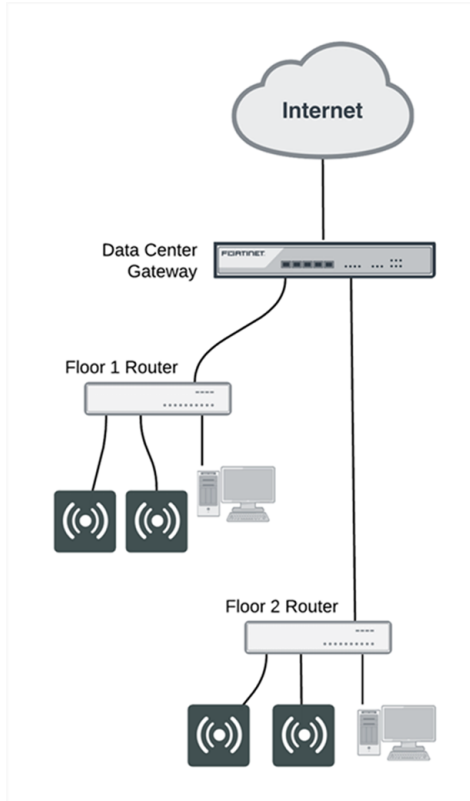
- **Direct connection:** The FortiAP unit is directly connected to the FortiGate unit with no switches between them. This configuration is common for locations where the number of FortiAPs matches the number of internal ports available on the FortiGate. In this configuration, the FortiAP unit requests an IP address from the FortiGate unit, enters discovery mode and quickly finds the FortiGate WiFi controller. This configuration is also known as a wirecloset deployment.

### Direct connection deployment



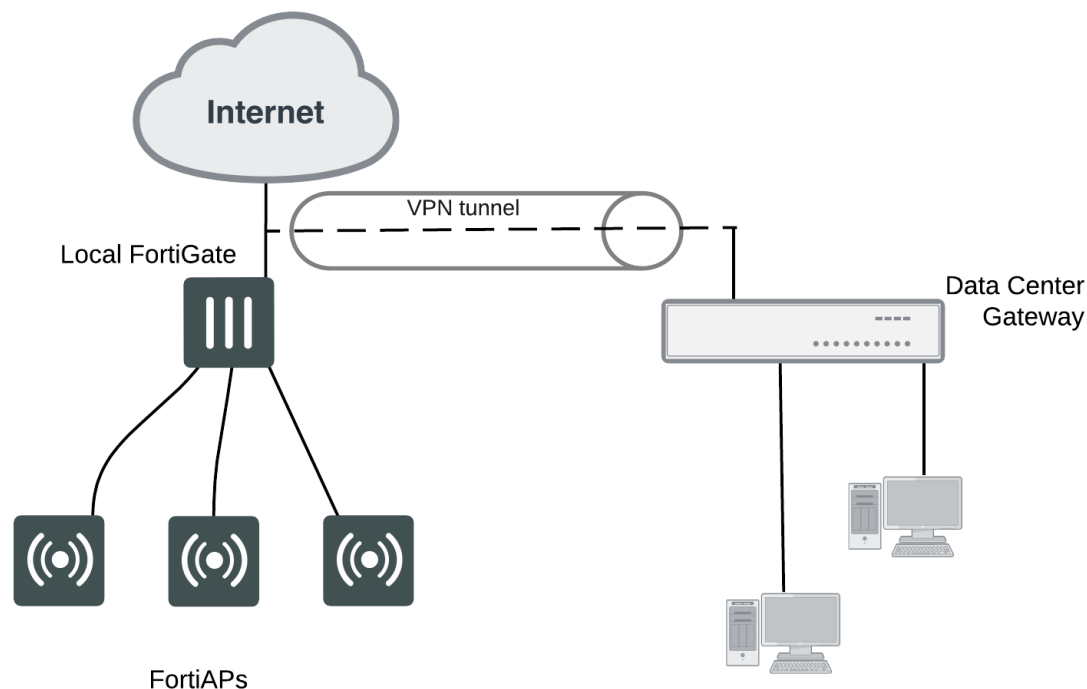
- **Switched connection:** The FortiAP unit is connected to the FortiGate WiFi controller by an Ethernet switch operating in L2 switching mode or L3 routing mode. There must be a routable path between the FortiAP unit and the FortiGate unit and ports 5246 and 5247 must be open. This configuration is also known as a gateway deployment.

### Switched connection deployment



- **Connection over WAN:** The FortiGate WiFi controller is off-premises and connected by a VPN tunnel to a local FortiGate. In this method of connectivity, it's best to configure each FortiAP with the static IP address of the WiFi controller. Each FortiAP can be configured with three WiFi controller IP addresses for redundant failover. This configuration is also known as a data center remote management deployment.

### Connection-over-WAN deployment



## Discovery and authorization of APs

To complete the discovery and authorization of APs, perform the following tasks:

- [Pre-authorizing a FortiAP unit on page 158](#)
- [Enabling and configuring a discovered AP on page 161](#)
- [Disabling the automatic discovery of unknown FortiAPs on page 162](#)
- [Enabling the automatic authorization of extension devices on page 162](#)
- [Assigning the same FortiAP profile to multiple FortiAP units on page 163](#)
- [Overriding the FortiAP profile on page 163](#)

### Pre-authorizing a FortiAP unit

There are two ways of pre-authorizing a FortiAP unit:

- Enter an individual FortiAP unit information in advance; the unit is authorized and begins to function when it is connected.
- Specify a Wildcard Serial Number to represent the model of the FortiAPs you want to authorize; the pre-configured SN is replaced by the actual SN of the FortiAP, and the FortiAP is authorized when it is connected.

## Pre-authorizing an individual FortiAP unit

### To pre-authorize an individual FortiAP unit

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and select **Create New**.  
On some models the **WiFi Controller** menu is called **WiFi & Switch Controller**.
2. Enter the **Serial Number** of the FortiAP unit.
3. Configure the **Wireless Settings** as required.
4. Select **OK**.

## Pre-authorizing a FortiAP by specifying a Wildcard Serial Number

You can pre-configure and pre-authorize a template FortiAP SN to represent the SN of specific FortiAP models. When a physical FortiAP connects, the pre-configured SN is replaced by the actual SN of the FortiAP, and the FortiAP can be automatically authorized.

For example, a Wildcard Serial Number of FP231F\*\*\*\*000001 will allow the first FortiAP-231F to register to the Wireless Controller to be authorized automatically and adopt profile configurations.

A Wildcard Serial Number consists of three parts:

- A six digit valid prefix for a FortiAP model, like "FP231F".
- Four "\*" (asterisks) to indicate that the Serial Number is a Wildcard Serial Number.
- Six digits containing any valid characters. The characters do not need to match the actual Serial Number of the FortiAP you are registering.

The last six digits enable you to create multiple profiles where each new FortiAP that registers adopts one of the wildcard SN profiles in order.

### To pre-authorize a FortiAP by specifying a Wildcard Serial Number - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and click **Create New > Managed AP**.
2. In **Serial number**, enter a Wildcard Serial Number (example "FP231F\*\*\*\*000001").
3. Select a **FortiAP profile** you want to apply to the FortiAP.

4. Click **OK** to save.

5. Connect the FortiAP unit to your topology.

Once the FortiAP is discovered by FortiGate, FortiGate will try to find a matching Wildcard SN. When FortiGate finds a matching Wildcard SN, the template Serial Number is renamed to match the newly discovered physical FortiAP SN.

### To configure a Wildcard Serial Number and pre-authorize a FortiAP- CLI:

1. Pre-configure a Wildcard FortiAP SN (example "FP231F\*\*\*\*000001").

```
config wireless-controller wtp
edit "FP231F****000001"
set uuid 47ab50f8-5f7c-51ec-0a60-4ff00a3eba2e
set admin enable
set wtp-profile "FAP231F-test"
config radio-1
end
config radio-2
end
next
end
```

2. Connect the FortiAP unit to your topology.

Once the FortiAP is discovered by FortiGate, FortiGate will try to find a matching Wildcard SN. When FortiGate finds a matching Wildcard SN, the template Serial Number is renamed to match the newly discovered physical

## FortiAP SN.

```

FortiGate-80E-POE # diag debug enable
FortiGate-80E-POE # diag debug cli 7
Debug messages will be on for unlimited time.
FortiGate-80E-POE # 0: config wireless-controller wtp
0: rename "FP231F****000001" to "FP231FTF20026472"
0: end

```

The pre-configured template FortiAP SN is successfully renamed to match the FortiAP SN "FP231FTF20026472".

3. The new FortiAP is now pre-authorized and can be managed from the FortiGate without manual authorization. Note that the UUID does not change.

```

config wireless-controller wtp
edit "FP231FTF20026472"
set uuid 47ab50f8-5f7c-51ec-0a60-4ff00a3eba2e
set admin enable
set wtp-profile "FAP231F-test"
config radio-1
end
config radio-2
end
next
end

```

## Enabling and configuring a discovered AP

1. Connect the FortiAP unit to the FortiGate unit. Within two minutes, the **WiFi Controller > Managed FortiAPs** page displays the discovered FortiAP unit.
2. Select the FortiAP unit and authorize that unit.

### Discovered access point unit

<div><div>+ Create New</div><div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div><div>Refresh</div></div><div><div>Search</div><div>Q</div></div></div>										
Access Point	Status	SSIDs	Channel	Health	Clients	OS Version	LLDP	FortiAP Profile	Connected Via	Ref.
<div><div>FP221ETF18038154</div></div>	<div><div>Waiting for Authorization</div></div>	<div><div>R1 None</div><div>R2 None</div></div>	<div><div>R1 0</div><div>R2 0</div></div>		0		Disabled	FAP221E-default	<div><div>wan1</div></div>	0



When you authorize a FortiAP unit, it is configured by default to use the default FortiAP profile (determined by model). The FortiAP profile defines the entire configuration for the AP (see [Creating a FortiAP profile on page 34](#)). You can assign a different profile, if needed, by right-clicking the authorized FortiAP and selecting **Assign Profile**.

### To add and configure the discovered AP unit - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.  
This configuration also applies to local WiFi radio on FortiWiFi models.
2. Select the FortiAP unit from the list and edit it.
3. Optionally, enter a **Name**. Otherwise, the unit will be identified by serial number.
4. Select **Authorize**.

5. Select a **FortiAP Profile**.

6. Select **OK**.

The physical access point is now added to the system. If the rest of the configuration is complete, it should be possible to connect to the wireless network through the AP.

### To add the discovered AP unit - CLI

First get a list of the discovered access point unit serial numbers:

```
get wireless-controller wtp
```

Add a discovered unit and associate it with AP-profile1, for example:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP22A3U10600118
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile AP-profile1
  end
```

### To view the status of the added AP unit

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP22A3U10600118
  get
```

The `join-time` field should show a time, not “N/A”. See the preceding GUI procedure for more information.

## Disabling the automatic discovery of unknown FortiAPs

By default, FortiGate adds newly discovered FortiAPs to the Managed FortiAPs list, awaiting the administrator's authorization. Optionally, you can disable this automatic registration function to avoid adding unknown FortiAPs. A FortiAP will be registered and listed only if its serial number has already been added manually to the Managed FortiAPs list. AP registration is configured on each interface.

To disable automatic discovery and registration, enter the following command:

```
config system interface
  edit port15
    set ap-discover disable
  end
```

## Enabling the automatic authorization of extension devices

To simplify adding FortiAP or FortiSwitch devices to your network, you can enable automatic authorization of devices as they are connected, instead of authorizing each one individually.

This feature is only configurable in the CLI.

### To enable automatic authorization on all dedicated interfaces

```
config system global
  set auto-auth-extension-device enable
end
```

### To enable automatic authorization per-interface

```
config system interface
  edit <port>
    set auto-auth-extension-device enable
  end
```

## Assigning the same FortiAP profile to multiple FortiAP units

The same profile can now be applied to multiple managed FortiAP units at the same time. To do this, do the following:

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** to view the AP list.
2. Select all FortiAP units you wish to apply the profile to.
3. Right click on one of the selected FortiAPs and select **Assign Profile**.
4. Choose the profile you wish to apply.

## Overriding the FortiAP profile

In the FortiAP configuration **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**, there are several radio settings under **Override Radio 1** and **Override Radio 2**. You can choose to set a value independently of the FortiAP profile setting. When each of the radios are disabled, you will see what the FortiAP Profile has each of the settings configured to.

<b>Band</b>	The available options depend on the capability of the radio. Overriding <b>Band</b> also overrides <b>Channels</b> . Make appropriate settings in <b>Channels</b> .
<b>Channels</b>	Choose channels. The available channels depend on the Band.
<b>Transmit power mode</b>	Select how you want to determine transmit power. The 100% setting is the maximum power permitted in your region. See <a href="#">Setting your geographic location on page 31</a> .
<b>SSIDs</b>	Select a traffic mode for SSIDs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Tunnel</b> – available tunnel-mode SSIDs are automatically assigned to this radio.</li> <li>• <b>Bridge</b> – available bridge-mode SSIDs are automatically assigned to this radio.</li> <li>• <b>Manual</b> – manually select which available SSIDs and SSID groups to assign to this radio.</li> </ul>

### To override radio settings in the CLI

In this example, Radio 1 is set to 802.11n on channel 11, regardless of the profile setting.

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FP221C3X14019926
    config radio-1
      set override-band enable
      set band 802.11n
      set override-channel enable
      set channel 11
    end
```

You can override settings for band, channel, vaps (SSIDs), and Transmit power mode.

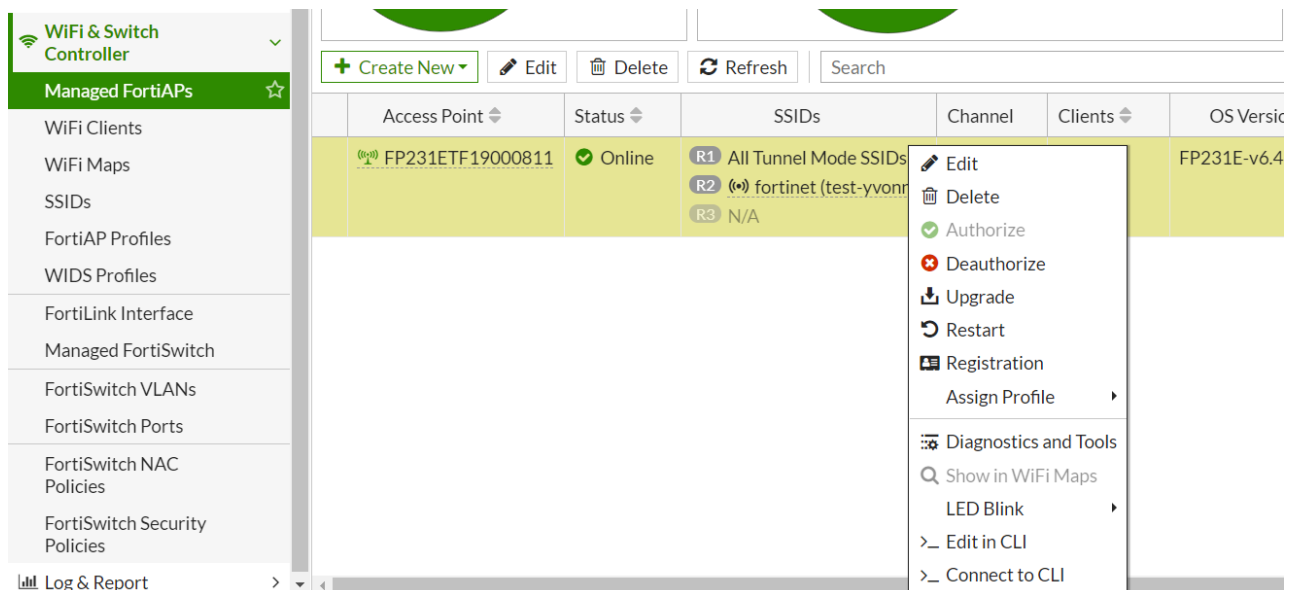


Outside of configuring radio settings, you can also override FortiAP LED state, WAN port mode, IP Fragmentation prevention method, spectrum analysis, split tunneling, and login password settings.

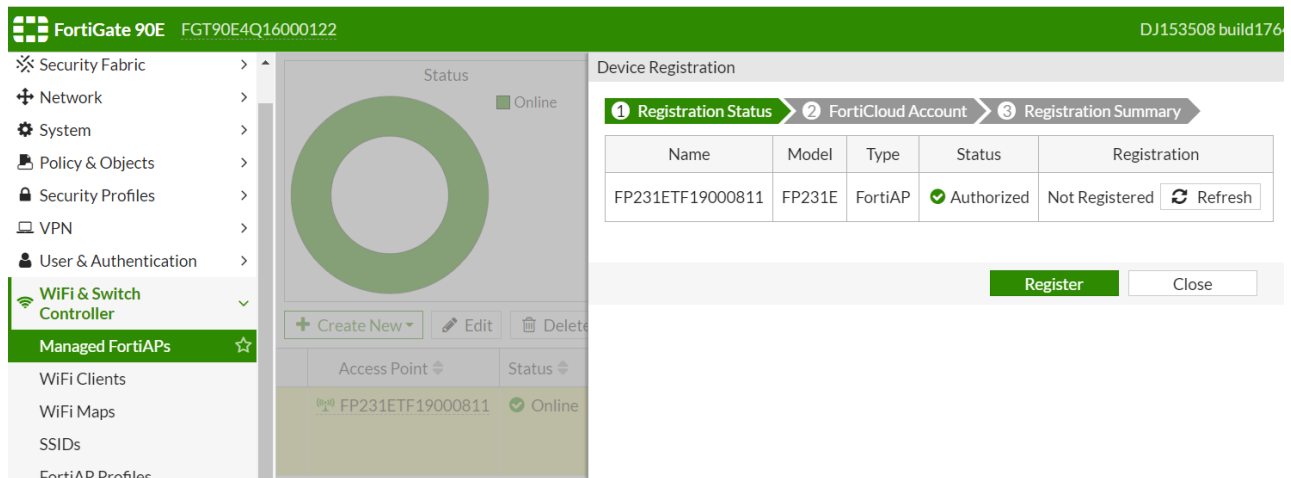
## Register a FortiAP to FortiCloud

After authorizing a FortiAP, you can register that FortiAP to FortiCloud directly from the FortiGate GUI.

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Select the FortiAP unit you want to register.
3. Right-click and select **Registration**.



The Device Registration window opens.



4. Click **Register** to proceed to the next step.
5. Enter your FortiCloud account information and click **Submit**.  
It can take up to 30 minutes to register the device.
6. Once the device is registered, you can view the registration status from the FortiAP Diagnostic and Tools page.

## FortiAP CLI access

This section explains how to access the FortiAP CLI through the FortiAP Ethernet port or the FortiGate.

### Accessing the FortiAP CLI through the FortiAP Ethernet port

The FortiAP unit has a CLI through which some configuration options can be set.

#### To access the FortiAP CLI through the FortiAP Ethernet port

1. Connect your computer to the FortiAP Ethernet interface, either directly with a cross-over cable or through a separate switch or hub.
2. Change your computer IP address to 192.168.1.3
3. Using SSH, connect to IP address 192.168.1.2.
4. Ensure that FortiAP is in a private network with no DHCP server for the static IP address to be accessible.
5. Login with user name admin and no password.
6. Enter commands, as needed.
7. Optionally, use the `passwd` command to assign an administrative password for better security.
8. Save the configuration by entering the following command:  
`cfg -c .`
9. Unplug the FortiAP and then plug it back in, in order for the configuration to take effect.

### Accessing the FortiAP CLI through the FortiGate

After the FortiAP has been installed, physical access to the unit can be inconvenient. You can access the FortiAP CLI of a connected FortiAP unit through the FortiGate unit that controls it.

#### To access the FortiAP CLI through the FortiGate

1. In the FortiGate GUI, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Right click the row of the FortiAP that you want to connect to and then select **>\_ Connect to CLI**.  
*The CLI Console window opens.*
3. If the password prompt appears, then enter the required password. By default, there is no password.
4. When you are finished using the FortiAP CLI, enter `exit`.
5. To close the CLI Console window, click the X in the top right corner of the window.

## FortiAP Configuration mode

To facilitate the initial deployment, you can reset FortiAP to enter the Configuration mode. With your Wi-Fi device, you can access the FortiAP Configuration mode GUI, and then configure FortiAP.



The FortiAP Configuration mode is available on FortiAP-S and FortiAP-W2, E models.

When FortiAP is in Configuration mode, the following behaviors apply:

- FortiAP broadcasts its SSID as FAP-config-<serial-number>.
- FortiAP does not broadcast any SSID configured by its controller.
- Only one WiFi client can connect to the broadcasted SSID.
- This SSID is open in NAT mode to allow internet connectivity.
- The transmit power for the broadcasted SSID is tuned down to 1 dBm on each radio, so the broadcasted SSID can only be connected to from a nearby location.
- FortiAP automatically exits the Configuration mode after 30 minutes or if you reboot FortiAP.

FortiAP enters the Configuration mode when you hold the reset button for 5 to 10 seconds while FortiAP is booted up.

#### Reset button behavior

Reset duration (seconds)	Action
less than 5	Reboot
5 to 10	Configuration mode
more than 10	Factory reset

## Resetting FortiAP to enter the Configuration mode

1. Make sure FortiAP is booted up.
2. Use a pin to push and hold the reset button for 5 to 10 seconds.  
FortiAP reboots and then enters the Configuration mode.  
FortiAP starts to broadcast an open security SSID FAP-config-<serial-number>, for example FAP-config-FP421E3X16000715.
3. You can now access the GUI or CLI of the FortiAP Configuration mode by performing:
  - the recommended procedure, [Accessing the GUI of the FortiAP Configuration mode on page 166](#)
  - or [Accessing the CLI of the FortiAP Configuration mode on page 168](#)

## Accessing the GUI of the FortiAP Configuration mode

**Note:** This is the recommended procedure.

1. Use only one Wi-Fi device to connect to the SSID FAP-config-<serial-number>.
2. Open a web browser and visit <https://192.168.100.1>.
3. In the **User Name** field, type admin.
4. In the **Password** field, type the password associated with the admin account.  
The FortiAP Dashboard window opens with a CONFIG MODE red banner at the bottom.
5. Under Settings, click **Local Configuration**.

## FortiAP Config Mode - Local Configuration

FortiAP-S221E

admin

Information

Dashboard

System Status

WTP Configuration

Radio Configuration

Settings

Local Configuration

System

Host Name

Login Password

FortiAP Location

Idle Timeout (minute)

Baud Rate

☒ 9600
 ☐ 19200
 ☐ 38400
 ☐ 57600
 ☐ 115200

LED State

☐ Enabled
 ☐ Disabled
 ☒ Controlled by AC

WANLAN Mode

☒ WAN-ONLY
 ☐ WAN-LAN
 ☐ AGGREGATE

Access Point Mode

☒ Thin AP
 ☐ Site survey

Network

Address Mode

☒ DHCP
 ☐ STATIC

Management VLAN ID

DNS Server IP (default)

Local IP Address (default)

Local Network Mask (default)

Gateway IP (default)

Allow HTTPS Access

☐ Disabled
 ☐ Enabled
 ☒ Controlled by AC

Allow SSH Access

☐ Disabled
 ☐ Enabled
 ☒ Controlled by AC

Spanning Tree Protocol Mode

☒ Disabled
 ☐ Enabled
 ☐ Disabled with blocked WAN port switch

Bonjour Gateway

☐ Disabled
 ☐ Enabled
 ☒ Controlled by AC

Connectivity

Uplink

☒ Ethernet
 ☐ Mesh
 ☐ Ethernet with mesh backup support

WTP Configuration

AC Discovery Type

☒ Auto
 ☐ Static
 ☐ DHCP
 ☐ DNS
 ☐ Broadcast
 ☐ Multicast
 ☐ FortiAP Cloud

AC IP Address 1

AC IP Address 2

AC IP Address 3

AC Host Name 1

AC Host Name 2

AC Host Name 3

Multicast Address

DHCP Option Code

FortiAP Cloud Server

FortiAP Cloud Account

FortiAP Cloud Password

AC Control Port

AP Data Channel Security

☒ Clear text
 ☒ DTLS enabled
 ☒ IPsec enabled

OK

Cancel

CONFIG MODE (reboot to exit config mode)

6. Make configuration changes.
7. To save configuration changes, click **OK**.

- To exit the Configuration mode, go to the admin menu at the top-right corner and click **Reboot**.

## FortiAP Config Mode - Reboot

The screenshot shows the FortiAP-S221E configuration interface. The top bar is green with the FortiAP logo and the text 'FortiAP-S221E'. On the right, there is a user profile icon labeled 'admin'. The left sidebar contains a menu with 'Information', 'Dashboard', 'System Status', 'WTP Configuration', 'Radio Configuration', 'Settings', and 'Local Configuration' (which is highlighted in green). The main area displays the 'WTP Configuration' settings. A red box highlights the 'Reboot' button in the top-right corner of the configuration area. Below the configuration fields, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. At the bottom of the interface, a red banner reads 'CONFIG MODE (reboot to exit config mode)'.

- To confirm the system reboot, click **Yes**.
- When the web browser displays a System Rebooting message, you can close the web browser window. Configuration changes take effect after FortiAP restarts.

## Accessing the CLI of the FortiAP Configuration mode

- To connect to FortiAP, you can:
  - start a secure shell (SSH) session with the IP address of the FortiAP, or
  - start a console session, if your FortiAP has a console port.
- Use *admin*, as the login user.
- Type the password associated with the admin account.
- Make configuration changes. For details about FortiAP CLI commands, see [FortiAP CLI configuration and diagnostics commands on page 359](#).
- To save configuration changes, type:

```
cfg -c
```

- To exit the Configuration mode, type:

```
reboot
```

Configuration changes take effect after FortiAP restarts.

## FortiAP unit firmware upgrade

You can automatically upgrade your FortiAP unit firmware to the latest compatible firmware after it is authorized by the WiFi controller. You can also manually view and upgrade the FortiAP firmware from the FortiGate unit.

### Checking the FortiAP unit firmware version

To view the list of FortiAP units that the FortiGate unit manages, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**. The **OS Version** column shows the current firmware version running on each AP.

### Enabling automatic FortiAP upgrade after authorization

You can enable the automatic federated upgrade of a FortiAP unit upon discovery and authorization by the WiFi controller. When you enable this feature, newly discovered FortiAPs are automatically upgraded to the latest compatible firmware from FortiGuard Distribution Service (FDS).

#### To enable automatic FortiAP upgrade - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > WiFi Settings** and enable **FortiAP auto firmware provisioning**.
2. Click **Apply**.
3. Connect and authorize a FortiAP.

The FortiAP will be upgraded to the latest compatible firmware from FDS.

#### To enable automatic FortiAP upgrade - CLI

1. Enable `firmware-provision-on-authorization` via the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller setting
  set firmware-provision-on-authorization enable
  set darrp-optimize-schedules "default-darrp-optimize"
end
```

2. Connect and authorize a FortiAP.

The FortiAP will be upgraded to the latest compatible firmware from FDS.



When `firmware-provision-on-authorization` is enabled, any new FortiAPs that are authorized will automatically have `firmware-provision-latest` set to `once`.

---

### Upgrading FortiAP firmware from the FortiGate unit

You can manually upgrade the FortiAP firmware using either the GUI or the CLI. Only the CLI method can update all FortiAP units at once.

### To upgrade FortiAP unit firmware - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Right-click the FortiAP unit in the list and select **Upgrade**.  
or  
Click the row of the FortiAP that you want to upgrade, and click **Edit**. In Firmware, click **Upgrade**.
3. Upgrade using FortiGuard, or select **Browse** and locate the firmware upgrade file.
4. Click **Upgrade**.
5. When the upgrade process completes, select **OK**.  
The FortiAP unit restarts.

### To upgrade FortiAP unit firmware - CLI

1. Upload the FortiAP image to the FortiGate unit.  
For example, the Firmware file is FAP\_22A\_v4.3.0\_b0212\_fortinet.out and the server IP address is 192.168.0.100.  

```
execute wireless-controller upload-wtp-image tftp FAP_22A_v4.3.0_b0212_fortinet.out 192.168.0.100
```

  
If your server is FTP, change `tftp` to `ftp`, and if necessary add your user name and password at the end of the command.
2. Verify that the image is uploaded:  

```
execute wireless-controller list-wtp-image
```
3. Upgrade the FortiAP units:  

```
exec wireless-controller reset-wtp all
```

  
If you want to upgrade only one FortiAP unit, enter its serial number instead of `all`.

## Upgrading FortiAP firmware from the FortiAP unit

You can connect to a FortiAP unit's internal CLI to update its firmware from a TFTP server on the same network. This method does not require access to the wireless controller.

1. Place the FortiAP firmware image on a TFTP server on your computer.
2. Connect the FortiAP unit to a separate private switch or hub or directly connect to your computer via a cross-over cable.
3. Change your computer IP address to 192.168.1.3.
4. Using SSH, connect to IP address 192.168.1.2.  
This IP address is overwritten if the FortiAP is connected to a DHCP environment. Ensure that the FortiAP unit is in a private network with no DHCP server.
5. Login with the username "admin" and no password.
6. Enter the following command.  
For example, the FortiAP image file name is FAP\_22A\_v4.3.0\_b0212\_fortinet.out.  

```
restore FAP_22A_v4.3.0_b0212_fortinet.out 192.168.1.3
```

## Advanced WiFi controller discovery

A FortiAP unit can use any of six methods to locate a controller. By default, FortiAP units cycle through all six of the discovery methods. In most cases there is no need to make configuration changes on the FortiAP unit.

There are exceptions. The following section describes the WiFi controller discovery methods in more detail and provides information about configuration changes you might need to make so that discovery will work.

## Controller discovery methods

There are six methods that a FortiAP unit can use to discover a WiFi controller. When the FortiAP discovery type is set to auto, the AP Controller (AC) uses the following discovery methods in sequence:

**1(static) → 2(dhcp) → 3(dns) → 7(fortiapcloud) → 5(multicast) → 6(broadcast)**

For every discovery type, FortiAP sends out discovery requests and sets a timer, an interval defined as a random number of seconds (between 2 and 180, default is 5 seconds), which is set via the CLI:

### CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set discovery-interval 5
end
```

After the timeout is reached, FortiAP sends out another discovery request, up to a maximum of 3 times.

After about 3 - 15 seconds, if FortiAP has no AC connection, it will switch to another discovery type and repeat the above process until the last one (**broadcast**) fails, which will lead to SULKING state.

After about 30 seconds, FortiAP will go into an AC\_IP\_DISCOVER state. After the AC IP is found, it will go to IDLE state, and will eventually go to the DISCOVERY state, and repeat the above process again.

Note that, while the process above is showcasing the auto discovery method, it's recommended to set the AC\_DISCOVERY\_TYPE to your used method in order to reduce downtime.

## Static IP configuration

If FortiAP and the controller are not in the same subnet, broadcast and multicast packets cannot reach the controller. The admin can specify the controller's static IP on the AP unit. The AP unit sends a discovery request message in unicast to the controller. Routing must be properly configured in both directions.

### To specify the controller's IP address on a FortiAP unit

```
cfg -a AC_IPADDR_1="192.168.0.100"
```

By default, the FortiAP unit receives its IP address, netmask, and gateway address by DHCP. If you prefer, you can assign these statically.

### To assign a static IP address to the FortiAP unit

```
cfg -a ADDR_MODE=STATIC
cfg -a AP_IPADDR="192.168.0.100"
cfg -a AP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
cfg -a IPGW=192.168.0.1
cfg -c
```

For information about connecting to the FortiAP CLI, see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#).



## DHCP

If you use DHCP to assign an IP address to your FortiAP unit, you can also provide the WiFi controller IP address at the same time. This is useful if the AP is located remotely from the WiFi controller and other discovery techniques will not work. Since the AP sequentially goes through all the different discovery methods, DHCP has the best ratio between configuration and time for discovery.

When you configure the DHCP server, configure Option 138 to specify the WiFi controller IP address(es). The most direct method is to input an IP address in hexadecimal format. For example, 192.168.0.1 converts to C0A80001.

For DHCP servers that support inputting other option types, you can select the "IP" type and then input a regular IP address.

You can also input multiple addresses (concatenated in hexadecimal format). The first address has the highest priority.

If Option 138 is used for some other purpose on your network, you can use a different option number if you configure the AP units to match.

### To change the FortiAP DHCP option code

To use option code 139 for example, enter

```
cfg -a AC_DISCOVERY_DHCP_OPTION_CODE=139
```

For information about connecting to the FortiAP CLI, see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#).

## DNS

The access point can discover controllers through your domain name server (DNS). For the access point to do so, you must configure your DNS to return controller IP addresses in response. Allow DNS lookup of the hostname configured in the AP by using the AP parameter "AC\_HOSTNAME\_1".

By default, the AC\_HOSTNAME\_1 parameter is set to \_capwap-control.\_udp.example.com.

### To change the default parameter

1. From the FortiAP CLI, enter the following commands:

```
cfg -a AC_HOSTNAME_1=<yourcompany.com>
cfg -c
```

2. Add an A record to the DNS server to resolve the configured domain.

## FortiLAN Cloud

The access point can discover FortiLAN Cloud by doing a DNS lookup of the hardcoded FortiAP Cloud AP controller hostname "apctrl1.fortinet.com". The FortiAP Cloud AC discovery technique finds the AC info from apctrl1.fortinet.com using HTTPS.

**FortiAP Cloud - APController:** apctrl1.fortinet.com:443 208.91.113.187:443

## Broadcast request

The AP unit broadcasts a discovery request message to the network and the controller replies. The AP and the controller must be in the same broadcast domain. No configuration adjustments are required.

## Multicast request

The AP unit sends a multicast discovery request and the controller replies with a unicast discovery response message. The AP and the controller do not need to be in the same broadcast domain if multicast routing is properly configured.

The default multicast destination address is 224.0.1.140. It can be changed through the CLI. The address must be same on the controller and AP.

### To change the multicast address on the controller

```
config wireless-controller global
  set discovery-mc-addr 224.0.1.250
end
```

### To change the multicast address on a FortiAP unit

```
cfg -a AC_DISCOVERY_MC_ADDR="224.0.1.250"
```

For information about connecting to the FortiAP CLI, see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#).

## Wireless client load balancing for high-density deployments

Wireless load balancing allows your wireless network to distribute wireless traffic more efficiently among wireless access points and available frequency bands. FortiGate wireless controllers support the following types of client load balancing:

- Access point handoff - the wireless controller signals a client to switch to another access point.
- Frequency handoff - the wireless controller monitors the usage of 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, and signals clients to switch to the lesser-used frequency.

Load balancing is not applied to roaming clients.

## Access point handoff

Access point handoff wireless load balancing involves the following:

- If the load on an access point (ap1) exceeds a threshold (of for example, 30 clients) then the client with the weakest signal will be signaled by wireless controller to drop off and join another nearby access point (ap2).
- When one or more access points are overloaded (for example, more than 30 clients) and a new client attempts to join a wireless network, the wireless controller selects the least busy access point that is closest to the new client and this access point is the one that responds to the client and the one that the client joins.

## Frequency handoff or band-steering

Encouraging clients to use the 5 GHz WiFi band if possible enables those clients to benefit from faster interference-free 5GHz communication. The remaining 2.4 GHz clients benefit from reduced interference.

The WiFi controller probes clients to determine their WiFi band capability. It also records the RSSI (signal strength) for each client on each band.

If a new client attempts to join the network, the controller looks up that client's MAC address in its wireless device table and determines if it is a dual band device. If it is not a dual band device, then it is allowed to join. If it is a dual band device, then its RSSI on 5 GHz is used to determine whether the device is close enough to an access point to benefit from movement to 5 GHz frequency.

If both conditions of 1) dual band device and 2) RSSI value is strong, then the wireless controller does not reply to the join request of the client. This forces the client to retry a few more times and then timeout and attempt to join the same SSID on 5 GHz. Once the Controller see this new request on 5 GHz, the RSSI is again measured and the client is allowed to join. If the RSSI is below threshold, then the device table is updated and the controller forces the client to timeout again. A client's second attempt to connect on 2.4 GHz will be accepted.

## Handoff configuration

From the GUI, edit a custom AP profile and in the Client load balancing field, select **Frequency Handoff** and **AP Handoff** as required for the AP profile.

From the CLI, you configure wireless client load balancing thresholds for each custom AP profile.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit new-ap-profile
    set handoff-rssi <rssi_int>
    set handoff-sta-thresh <clients_int>
    set frequency-handoff {disable | enable}
    set ap-handoff {disable | enable}
    config radio-1
    end
    config radio-2
    end
  end
```

Configuration options	Description
handoff-rssi	The RSSI threshold. Clients with a 5 GHz RSSI threshold over this value are load balanced to the 5 GHz frequency band. Default is 25. Range is 20 to 30.
handoff-sta-thresh	The access point handoff threshold. If the access point has more clients than this threshold it is considered busy and clients are changed to another access point. Default is 30, range is 5 to 25.
frequency-handoff	Enable or disable frequency handoff load balancing. Disabled by default.
ap-handoff	Enable or disable access point handoff load balancing. Disabled by default.

Frequency handoff must be enabled on the 5 GHz radio to learn client capability.

## FortiAP groups

FortiAP groups facilitate the application of FortiAP profiles to large numbers of FortiAPs. A FortiAP can belong to no more than one FortiAP group. A FortiAP group can include only one model of FortiAP.

Through the VLAN pool feature, a FortiAP group can be associated with a VLAN to which WiFi clients will be assigned. For more details about VLAN pool assignment, see [Configuring dynamic user VLAN assignment on page 88](#).

### To create a FortiAP group - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and select **Create New > Managed AP Group**.
2. Give the group a **Name**.
3. Choose **Members**.
4. Click **OK**.

### To create a FortiAP group - CLI

In this example, `wtp-group-1` is created for a FortiAP-221C and one member device is added.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-group
  edit wtp-group-1
    set platform-type 221C
    config wtp-list
      edit FP221C3X14019926
    end
  end
end
```

## LAN port options

FortiAPs have at least one Ethernet port that operates as a WAN port to provide management connection to a WiFi Controller such as FortiGate or FortiLAN Cloud. Some FortiAP models have multiple LAN ports that can provide wired network access.

There are some differences in LAN configuration among FortiAP models:

- Some FortiAP models have one WAN port and one or more LAN ports. By default, the LAN ports are offline. You can directly configure LAN port operation via the web UI of a WiFi Controller, or in the FortiGate CLI (`config wireless-controller wtp-profile>config lan`).
- Other FortiAP models have two ports, labeled LAN1 and LAN2. By default, LAN1 and LAN2 are direct pass-through ports, and can work as the WAN interface. When necessary, the LAN1 and LAN2 ports can be re-configured for WAN-LAN operation.

For information on which FortiAP models have configurable WAN/LAN ports, refer to the FortiAP product data sheet.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Configuring a port to WAN-LAN operation mode on page 176](#)
- [Bridging a LAN port with an SSID on page 176](#)
- [Bridging a LAN port with the WAN port on page 179](#)

- [Configuring FortiAP LAN ports on page 179](#)
- [Verifying wired clients connected to FortiAP LAN ports on page 181](#)

## Configuring a port to WAN-LAN operation mode

Some FortiAP models have two LAN ports instead of having both a WAN port and a LAN port. You can configure one of the LAN ports to operate under the WAN-LAN mode. To configure a port to WAN-LAN operation, you must first configure the CLI in the FortiGate, and then in the CLI of the FortiAP.

### To configure a port to WAN-LAN operation

1. Access the FortiGate CLI.
2. Select the "wan-lan" option in the wtp-profile, for example:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit <profile_name>
set wan-port-mode wan-lan
end
```

By default, the wan-port-mode is set to wan-only.

Once the wan-port-mode is set to wan-lan, LAN Port options become available in the web UI and the CLI of WiFi controller, similar to FortiAP models that have labeled WAN and LAN ports.

3. Access the FortiAP CLI (see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#)).
4. Enable the WAN-LAN mode. The method varies depending on the FortiAP model type.

- Enabling WAN-LAN mode on FortiAP, FortiAP-S, and FortiAP-W2 models:

```
cfg -a WANLAN_MODE=WAN-LAN
cfg -c
```

**Note:** By default, WANLAN\_MODE is set to WAN-ONLY.

- Enabling WAN-LAN mode on FortiAP-U models:

```
cfg -a FAP_ETHER_TRUNK=3
cfg -c
```

**Note:** By default, FAP\_ETHER\_TRUNK is set to 0.

5. Once the WiFi Controller and the FortiAP are both configured, LAN1 will work as the WAN interface and LAN2 will work as the LAN interface.

## Bridging a LAN port with an SSID

Bridging a LAN port with a FortiAP SSID combines traffic from both sources to provide a single broadcast domain for wired and wireless users.

In this configuration:

- The IP addresses for LAN clients come from the DHCP server that serves the wireless clients.
- Traffic from LAN clients is bridged to the SSID's VLAN.
- Wireless and LAN clients are on the same network and can communicate locally, via the FortiAP.
- Any host connected to the LAN port will be taken as authenticated by default, unless the MAC-address authentication is configured on capable FAP models. For information on configuring MAC address authentication, see [MAC Authentication for LAN port hosts on page 177](#)

For configuration instructions, see [Configuring FortiAP LAN ports on page 179](#).

## MAC Authentication for LAN port hosts



The following models and versions support the MAC authentication on LAN port:

- FAP-U 6.2.0 and later, managed by FGT running FOS 6.4.3+, without RADIUS accounting and dynamic VLAN assignment.
- FAP 7.0.0 and later, FAP-W2 7.0.0 and later, FAP-C 5.4.3, managed by FGT running FOS 7.0.0+, with RADIUS accounting and dynamic VLAN assignment.

There are two methods for authenticating hosts connected to a LAN port:

- RADIUS-based MAC authentication; and
- MAC address group based from FortiGate.

### To configure RADIUS-based MAC authentication

1. On a RADIUS server, add user entries that have the same username and password as the MAC addresses of the hosts connecting through the LAN port (see [MAC-based authentication on page 102](#)).

The MAC-address user entries can have additional RADIUS attributes added for dynamic VLAN ID assignment (see [Configuring dynamic user VLAN assignment on page 88](#)).

2. Prepare a VAP with the "radius-mac-auth" feature enabled, and then set the MAC authentication of the LAN port to the RADIUS method.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "port-mac"
    set ssid "lan-bridge-port-mac"
    set security open
    set radius-mac-auth enable
    set radius-mac-auth-server "peap"
    set schedule "always"
    set port-macauth radius
    set port-macauth-timeout 300
    set port-macauth-reauth-timeout 180
    set dynamic-vlan enable
  next
end
```

3. Assign the VAP to a LAN port with the "bridge-to-ssid" mode in an AP profile.

**Note:** In order for the LAN authentication to take effect, the same VAP must be set under an AP radio at the same time.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "AP profile"
    config platform
      set type 23JF
    end
    config lan
      set port1-mode bridge-to-ssid
      set port1-ssid "port-mac"
    end
    config radio-1
      set band 802.11ax,n,g-only
      set vap-all manual
      set vaps "port-mac"
    end
  ... ..
```

```

    ... ..
next
end

```

## To configure address group based MAC authentication

1. On FortiGate WiFi controller, add an address group containing MAC addresses with either an allow or deny policy (see [Configuring security on page 45](#)).

```

config wireless-controller address
  edit "001"
    set mac 01:02:03:0a:0b:0c
    set policy allow
  next
  edit "002"
    set mac 01:02:03:0a:0b:0d
    set policy deny
  next
end
config wireless-controller addrgrp
  edit "mac-group"
    set default-policy deny
    set addresses "001" "002"
  next
end

```

2. In a VAP, first select the address group for the "MAC filter" feature, and then set the MAC authentication of the LAN port to address-group.

```

config wireless-controller vap
  edit "port-mac"
    set ssid "lan-bridge-port-mac"
    set security open
    set address-group "mac-group"
    set port-macauth address-group
  next
end

```

3. Assign the VAP to a LAN port with the "bridge-to-ssid" mode in an AP profile.

**Note:** In order for the LAN authentication to take effect, the same VAP must be set under an AP radio at the same time.

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "AP profile"
    config platform
      set type 23JF
    end
    config lan
      set port1-mode bridge-to-ssid
      set port1-ssid "port-mac"
    end
    config radio-1
      set band 802.11ax,n,g-only
      set vap-all manual
      set vaps "port-mac"
    end
    ... ..
    ... ..
  next
end

```

## Bridging a LAN port with the WAN port

Bridging a LAN port with the WAN port enables the FortiAP unit to be used as a hub which is also an access point.

In this configuration

- The IP addresses for LAN clients come from the WAN directly and will typically be in the same range as the AP itself.
- All LAN client traffic is bridged directly to the WAN interface.
- Communication between wireless and LAN clients can only occur if a policy on the FortiGate unit allows it.

For configuration instructions, see [Configuring FortiAP LAN ports on page 179](#).

## Configuring FortiAP LAN ports

You can configure FortiAP LAN ports for APs through a FortiAP Profile. A profile applies to APs that are the same model and share the same configuration. If you have multiple models or different configurations, you might need to create several FortiAP Profiles. You can also override FortiAP Profile configurations by editing the individual AP directly.

### Configuring FortiAP LAN ports using profiles

FortiAP profiles apply configurations to multiple APs of the same model.

#### To configure FortiAP LAN ports - GUI

1. If your FortiAP unit has LAN ports, but no WAN ports, enable LAN port options in the CLI. See [Configuring a port to WAN-LAN operation mode on page 176](#).
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**.
3. Edit the default profile for your FortiAP model or select **Create New**.
4. If you are creating a new profile, enter a **Name** and select the correct **Platform** (model).
5. Select SSIDs.
6. In the **LAN Port** section, set **Mode** to **Bridge to** and select an SSID or **WAN Port** as needed.  
On some models with multiple LAN ports, you can set **Mode** to **Custom** and configure the LAN ports individually.  
Enable each port that you want to use and select an SSID or **WAN Port** as needed.
7. Select **OK**.

Be sure to select this profile when you authorize your FortiAP units.

#### To configure FortiAP LAN ports - CLI

In this example, the default FortiAP-11C profile is configured to bridge the LAN port to the office SSID.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP11C-default"
    config lan
      set port-mode bridge-to-ssid
      set port-ssid office
    end
  end
end
```



In this example, the default FortiAP-28C profile is configured to bridge LAN port1 to the office SSID and to bridge the other LAN ports to the WAN port.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP28C-default"
    config lan
      set port1-mode bridge-to-ssid
      set port1-ssid office
      set port2-mode bridge-to-wan
      set port3-mode bridge-to-wan
      set port4-mode bridge-to-wan
      set port5-mode bridge-to-wan
      set port6-mode bridge-to-wan
      set port7-mode bridge-to-wan
      set port8-mode bridge-to-wan
    end
  end
```

In this example, the default FortiAP-320C profile is configured to bridge the LAN port to the office SSID.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP320C-default"
    set wan-port-mode wan-lan
    config lan
      set port-mode bridge-to-ssid
      set port-ssid office
    end
  end
end
```

## Configuring individual FortiAP LAN ports

For an individual AP, you can override the FortiAP profile settings by editing device configurations directly.

### To override FortiAP Profile LAN port configurations - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Select the FortiAP unit from the list and select **Edit**.
3. Select the **FortiAP Profile**, if this has not already been done.
4. In the **LAN Port** section, select **Override**.  
The options for **Mode** are shown.
5. Set **Mode** to **Bridge to** and select an SSID or **WAN Port**, or **NAT to WAN** as needed.  
On some models with multiple LAN ports, you can set **Mode** to **Custom** and configure the LAN ports individually.  
Enable and configure each port that you want to use.
6. Select **OK**.

### To override FortiAP Profile LAN port configurations - GUI

In this example, a FortiAP unit's configuration overrides the FortiAP Profile to bridge the LAN port to the office SSID.

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP320C3X14020000"
    set wtp-profile "FAP320C-default"
    set override-wan-port-mode enable
    set wan-port-mode wan-lan
```

```

set override-lan enable
config lan
    set port-mode bridge-to-ssid
    set port-ssid office
end
end

```

## Verifying wired clients connected to FortiAP LAN ports

Once the FortiGate and FortiAP have WAN-LAN operation and LAN Port Mode options configured, you can verify and collect data about connected wired clients such as their mode of connection, Tx/Rx rate, authentication status, and OS details. The information is displayed in the FortiGate CLI using `diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c lan-sta`.



The FortiAP LAN1 port must be connected to the FortiGate.

The FortiAP LAN2 port must be connected to the wired clients, either directly to the LAN2 port or through a switch connected to LAN2.

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c lan-sta
-----LAN STA      1-----
LAN STA mac      : 00:24:9b:79:df:48 (0-1.1.1.2:5246)
  pId            : 0  BR-TO-TUN-SSID Example_SSID
  vlan          : 0
  macauth       : No
  ip            : 95.1.1.2  ARP  48 seconds
  ip6           : fe80::ddaa:41b0:4633:30dd  ARP  4945 seconds  666 pkts
  host info     : VAN-301127-PC1
  vci info      : MSFT 5.0
  os info       : Windows
  uplink        : 226.00bps 33637 pkts 7221244 bytes 9 seconds
  downlink      : 31.00bps 29085 pkts 15442358 bytes 9 seconds
-----Total      1 LAN STAs-----

```

## LAN port aggregation and redundancy

Some FortiAP models have dual Ethernet ports, labeled LAN1 and LAN2. These ports can be reconfigured to support Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) and uplink/POE redundancy.

For information on which FortiAP models have ports that support being reconfigured, refer to the FortiAP product data sheet.

### Enabling LACP

Such FortiAP LAN1 and LAN2 ports can be re-configured to function as one aggregated link, per IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), allowing data traffic across both ports to increase the overall throughput and support redundancy.

LACP enables you to bind two or more physical interfaces together to form an aggregated (combined) link. This new link has the bandwidth of all the links combined. If a link in the group fails, traffic is transferred automatically to the remaining interfaces. The only noticeable effect is reduced bandwidth.



You can only enable the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) from the FortiAP CLI. The commands for enabling LACP differ depending on the FortiAP model type.

---

### To enable LACP on a FortiAP, FortiAP-S, or FortiAP-W2 model - CLI

1. Access the CLI of your FortiAP (see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#)).
2. In the FortiAP CLI, set the `WANLAN_MODE` parameter to `AGGREGATE` by entering the following command:

```
cfg -a WANLAN_MODE=AGGREGATE
```

**Note:** By default, `WANLAN_MODE` is set to `WAN-ONLY`.

3. Save the changes to the device flash with the following command:

```
cfg -c
```

### To enable LACP on a FortiAP U model - CLI

1. Access the CLI of your FortiAP (see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#)).
2. In the FortiAP CLI, set the `FAP_ETHER_TRUNK` parameter to `2` by entering the following command:

```
cfg -a FAP_ETHER_TRUNK=2
```

**Note:** By default, `FAP_ETHER_TRUNK` is set to `0`.

3. Save the changes to the device flash with the following command:

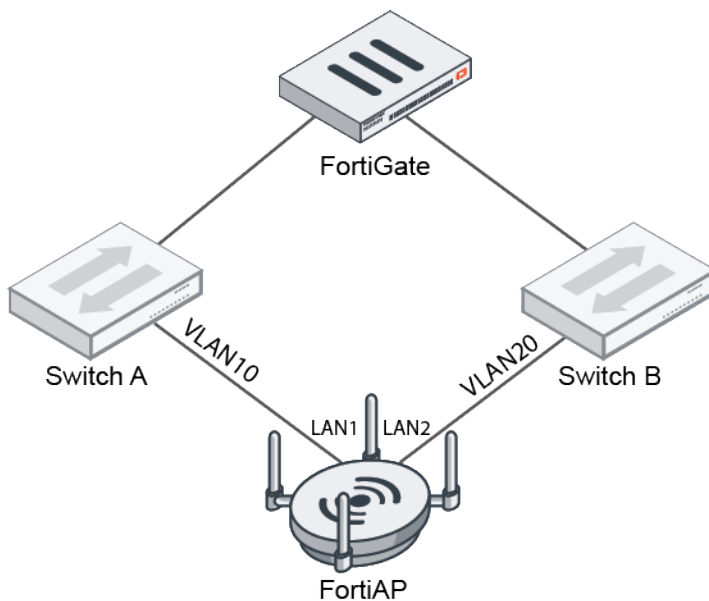
```
cfg -c
```

## Configuring uplink redundancy without LACP

In a redundant interface, traffic only travels over one interface at any time. This differs from an aggregated interface where traffic travels over all interfaces for increased bandwidth.

FortiAP models with dual LAN1 and LAN2 ports can support redundant uplink without configuring LACP. The redundancy is achieved by isolating both ports with two different management VLANs.

### Example uplink redundancy configuration



The preceding figure shows an example uplink configuration:

- On Switch A, VLAN10 is configured as the untagged management VLAN and connects from the FortiAP LAN 1 port to Switch A.
- On Switch B, VLAN20 has been configured the untagged management VLAN and connects from the FortiAP LAN 2 port to Switch B.
- Having different management VLANs prevent L2 loops.
- There are no routing or policies between these VLANs/subnets so the FortiAP cannot discover a management interface outside of its subnet. This prevents routing loops if multicast policies or Bonjour are configured later.
- On the FortiAP, AC1 is set to the VLAN10 management IP and AC2 to the VLAN20 management IP.
- If the uplink on VLAN 10 and Switch A fails, the FortiAP will reboot and come online using VLAN20 on Switch B. As soon as AC1 on VLAN10 becomes reachable again, the AP will fallback to the primary link.



For FortiAP models where both LAN ports support POE, this configuration can also achieve POE redundancy.

## CAPWAP

This section contains topics related to CAPWAP management and configuration.

- [IP fragmentation of packets in CAPWAP tunnels on page 184](#)
- [CAPWAP bandwidth formula on page 185](#)
- [CAPWAP Offloading on page 186](#)

## IP fragmentation of packets in CAPWAP tunnels

A common problem with controller-based WiFi networks is reduced performance due to IP fragmentation of packets in the CAPWAP tunnel.

Fragmentation can occur because of CAPWAP tunnel overhead increasing packet size. If the original wireless client packets are close to the maximum transmission unit (MTU) size for the network (usually 1500 bytes for Ethernet networks unless jumbo frames are used) the resulting CAPWAP packets may be larger than the MTU, causing the packets to be fragmented. Fragmenting packets can result in data loss, jitter, and decreased throughput.

The FortiOS/FortiAP solution to this problem is to cause wireless clients to send smaller packets to FortiAP devices, resulting in 1500-byte CAPWAP packets and no fragmentation. The following options configure CAPWAP IP fragmentation control:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP321C-default
    set ip-fragment-preventing {tcp-mss-adjust | icmp-unreachable}
    set tun-mtu-uplink {0 | 576 | 1500}
    set tun-mtu-downlink {0 | 576 | 1500}
  end
end
```

By default, `tcp-mss-adjust` is enabled, `icmp-unreachable` is disabled, and `tun-mtu-uplink` and `tun-mtu-downlink` are set to 0.

To set `tun-mtu-uplink` and `tun-mtu-downlink`, use the default TCP MTU value of 1500. This default configuration prevents packet fragmentation because the FortiAP unit limits the size of TCP packets received from wireless clients so the packets don't have to be fragmented before CAPWAP encapsulation.

The `tcp-mss-adjust` option causes the FortiAP unit to limit the maximum segment size (MSS) of TCP packets sent by wireless clients. The FortiAP does this by adding a reduced MSS value to the SYN packets sent by the FortiAP unit when negotiating with a wireless client to establish a session. This results in the wireless client sending packets that are smaller than the `tun-mtu-uplink` setting, so that when the CAPWAP headers are added, the CAPWAP packets have an MTU that matches the `tun-mtu-uplink` size.

The `icmp-unreachable` option affects all traffic (UDP and TCP) between wireless clients and the FortiAP unit. This option causes the FortiAP unit to drop packets that have the "Don't Fragment" bit set in their IP header and that are large enough to cause fragmentation and then send an ICMP packet -- type 3 "ICMP Destination unreachable" with code 4 "Fragmentation Needed and Don't Fragment was Set" back to the wireless controller. This should cause the wireless client to send smaller TCP and UDP packets.

## Overriding IP fragmentation settings on a FortiAP

If the FortiAP Profile settings for IP fragmentation are not appropriate for a particular FortiAP, you can override the settings on that specific unit.

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP321C3X14019926
    set override-ip-fragment enable
    set ip-fragment-preventing {tcp-mss-adjust | icmp-unreachable}
    set tun-mtu-uplink {0 | 576 | 1500}
    set tun-mtu-downlink {0 | 576 | 1500}
  end
end
```

## CAPWAP bandwidth formula

The following section provides information on how to calculate the control plane CAPWAP traffic load in local bridging. The formula provided can help estimate the approximate package bandwidth cost. This is important for knowing precisely how much bandwidth is required on a WAN link for a centralized FortiGate managing hundreds of access points.

There are multiple factors that might affect the volume of CAPWAP control traffic, including the number of stations there are and large WiFi events.

The Ethernet/IP/UDP/CAPWAP uplink header cost should be approximately 66 bytes.

The tables below depict basic and commonly used optional CAPWAP bandwidth costs, on a per-AP basis.

Note the following:

- **STA:** The number of stations associated with the FortiAP.
- **ARP scan:** Finds hidden devices in your network.
- **VAP:** The number of VAPS held by the FortiAP.
- **Radio:** The number of radios (maximum of two) enabled by the FortiAP.

### Basic per-AP CAPWAP bandwidth costs

Content	Time (seconds)	Payload (byte)	Package bandwidth cost (bps)
Echo Req	30	16	$(66+16)*8/30=21.86$
STA scan	30	$25+20*sta$	$(66+25+20*sta)*8/30=24.26+5.3*sta$
ARP scan	30	$25+18*sta$	$(66+25+18*sta)*8/30=24.26+4.8*sta$
STA CAP	30	$25+19*sta$	$(66+25+19*sta)*8/30=24.26+5.1*sta$
STA stats	1	$25+41*sta$	$(66+25+41*sta)*8/1=728.0+328.0*sta$
VAP stats	15	$40+18*vap$	$(66+40+18*vap)*8/15=56.53+9.6*vap$
Radio stats	15	$25+25*radio$	$(66+25+25*radio)*8/15=48.53+13.3*radio$
<b>Total:</b>			$908.7+343.2*sta+9.6*vap+13.3*radio$

### Commonly used optional per-AP CAPWAP bandwidth costs

Content	Time (seconds)	Payload (byte)	Package bandwidth cost (bps)
AP scan	30	$25+63*scanned-ap$	$(66+25+63*scanned-ap)*8/30=24.26+16.8*scanned-ap$
<b>Total:</b>			$932.96+343.2*sta+9.6*vap+13.3*radio+16.8*scanned-ap$



Enabling WIDS features, LLDP, MESH, FortiPresence, and Client Station Locating Service can lead to additional bandwidth consumption.

**Example:**

There are 100 FortiAPs, with 187 stations distributed among them. Each FortiAP holds five VAPs among their radios, and each enables two radios. The basic CAPWAP bandwidth cost would be:

$$908.7 * 100 + 343.2 * 187 + 9.6 * 5 * 100 + 13.3 * 2 * 100 = \mathbf{162.51 \text{ kbps}}$$

Additionally, if two FortiAPs enabled "AP scan", and suppose one scans 99 APs in each scan and the other scans 20 APs in each scan, the additional CAPWAP bandwidth cost would be:

$$(24.26 + 16.8 * 99) + (24.26 + 16.8 * 20) = \mathbf{2 \text{ kbps}}$$

**LLDP protocol**

The LLDP protocol is enabled by default when you create a new FortiAP profile. Each FortiAP using that profile can then send back information about the switch and port that it is connected to. You can also manage the LLDP protocol in the FortiAP Profile via the CLI.

To enable LLDP, enter the following:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <profile-name>
    set lldp enable
  end
```

**CAPWAP Offloading**

Offloading over CAPWAP traffic is supported on mid-range to high-end FortiGates with traffic from tunnel mode virtual APs. The WTP data channel DTLS policy (`dtls-policy`) must be set to `clear-text` or `ipsec-vpn` in the WTP profile (**wireless-controller wtp-profile**). Traffic is not offloaded if it is fragmented.

Session fast path requirements:

1. Enable offloading managed FortiAP and FortiLink CAPWAP sessions:

```
config system npu
  set capwap-offload enable
end
```

2. Enable offloading security profile processing to CP processors in the policy:

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set auto-asic-offload enable
  next
end
```

**Verify the system session for offloading**

- Check the system session, when `dtls-policy=clear-text` to verify npu info: **flag=0x81/0x89, offload=8/8**

```
FG1K2D3I16800192 (vdom1) # diagnose sys session list
  session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=21 expire=3591 timeout=3600
  flags=00000000 sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=5
  origin-shaper=
  reply-shaper=
```

```

per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty npu f00
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=16761744/11708/1 reply=52/1/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
origin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=57->37/37->57
gwy=172.16.200.44/10.65.1.2
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.65.1.2:50452->172.16.200.44:5001(172.16.200.65:50452)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.44:5001->172.16.200.65:50452(10.65.1.2:50452)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=1
serial=00009a97 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpd_b_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x000c00
npu info: flag=0x81/0x89, offload=8/8, ips_offload=0/0, epid=158/216, ipid=216/158,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=216/158, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=2/2, out_npu=2/2, fwd_en=0/0, qid=4/2
total session 1

```

- Check the system session, when dtls-policy=ipsec-vpn to verify npu info: **flag=0x81/0x82, offload=8/8**

```

FG1K2D3I16800192 (vdom1) # diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=7 expire=3592 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=5
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/wlc-004100_0 vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty npu f00
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=92/2/1 reply=92/2/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
origin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=57->37/37->57
gwy=172.16.200.44/10.65.1.2
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.65.1.2:50575->172.16.200.44:5001(172.16.200.65:50575)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.44:5001->172.16.200.65:50575(10.65.1.2:50575)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=1
serial=0000a393 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpd_b_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x000c00
npu info: flag=0x81/0x82, offload=8/8, ips_offload=0/0, epid=158/216, ipid=216/158,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=216/158, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=2/2, out_npu=2/2, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
total session 1

```

## LED options

Optionally, the status LEDs on FortiAP can be kept dark. This is useful in dormitories, classrooms, hotels, medical clinics, and hospitals where lights can distract or annoy occupants.

On FortiGate, the LED state is controlled in the FortiAP Profile. By default the LEDs are enabled. The setting is CLI-only. For example, to disable the LEDs on FortiAP-221C units controlled by the FAP221C-default profile, enter:



```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP221C-default
    set led-state disable
  end
```

You can override the FortiAP Profile LED state setting on an individual FortiAP using the CLI. For example, to make sure the LEDs are disabled on one specific unit, enter:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP221C3X14019926
    set override-led-state enable
    set led-state disable
  end
```

The LED state is also controllable from the FortiAP unit itself. By default, the FortiAP follows the FortiAP Profile setting.

## LED schedules

Use the command below (`led-schedule`) to assign recurring firewall schedules for illuminating LEDs on the FortiAP. This entry is only available when `led-state` is enabled, at which point LEDs will be visible when at least one of the schedules is valid.

Separate multiple schedule names with a space, as configured under `config firewall schedule group` and `config firewall schedule recurring`.

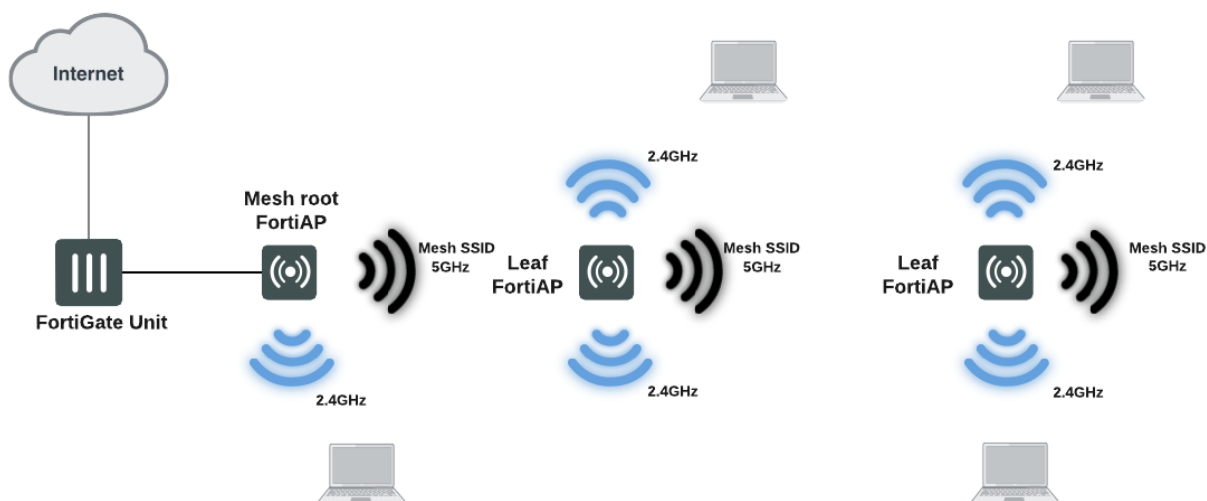
### Syntax

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit {name}
    set led-state {enable | disable}
    set led-schedules <name>
  next
end
```

# Wireless mesh configuration

The access points of a WiFi network are usually connected to the WiFi controller through Ethernet wiring. A wireless mesh eliminates the need for Ethernet wiring by connecting WiFi access points to the controller by radio. This is useful where installation of Ethernet wiring is impractical.

## Wireless mesh topology



A wireless mesh is a multiple access point (AP) network in which only one FortiAP unit is connected to the wired network. The other FortiAPs communicate with the controller over a separate backhaul SSID that isn't available to regular WiFi clients. The AP connected to the network by Ethernet is called the mesh root node. The backhaul SSID carries CAPWAP discovery, configuration, and other communications that would usually be carried on an Ethernet connection.

The root node can be a FortiAP unit or the built-in AP of a FortiWiFi unit. APs that serve regular WiFi clients are called leaf nodes. Leaf APs also carry the mesh SSID for more distant leaf nodes. A leaf node can connect to the mesh SSID directly from the root node or from any of the other leaf nodes. This provides redundancy in case of an AP failure.

All access points in a wireless mesh configuration must have at least one of their radios configured to provide mesh backhaul communication. As with wired APs, when mesh APs start up, they can be discovered by a FortiGate or FortiWiFi unit WiFi controller and authorized to join the network.

The backhaul SSID delivers the best performance when it is carried on a dedicated radio. On a two-radio FortiAP unit, for example, the 5 GHz radio could carry only the backhaul SSID while the 2.4 GHz radio carries one or more SSIDs that serve users. You can configure background WiFi scanning in this mode.

The backhaul SSID can also share the same radio with SSIDs that serve users. Performance is reduced because the backhaul and user traffic compete for the available bandwidth. Background WiFi scanning isn't available in this mode. One advantage of this mode is that a two-radio AP can offer WiFi coverage on both bands.

## Wireless mesh deployment modes

There are two common wireless mesh deployment modes:

<b>Wireless mesh</b>	Access points are connected to a FortiGate or FortiWiFi unit WiFi controller. WiFi users connect to wireless SSIDs in the same way as on non-mesh WiFi networks.
<b>Wireless bridging</b>	Two LAN segments are connected together over a wireless link (the backhaul SSID). On the leaf AP, the Ethernet connection can be used to provide a wired network. Both WiFi and wired users on the leaf AP are connected to the LAN segment to which the root AP is connected.

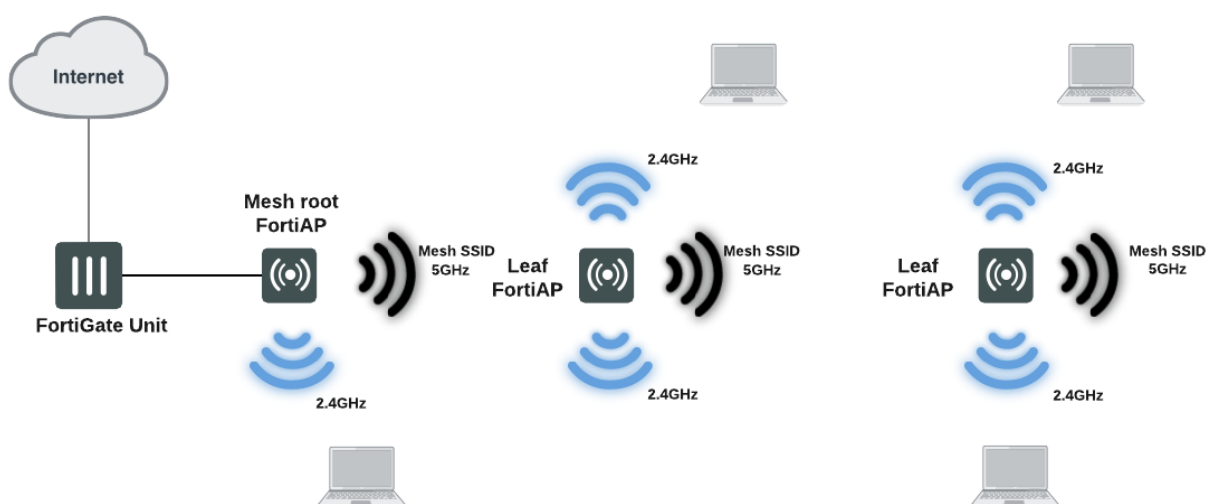
## Firmware requirements

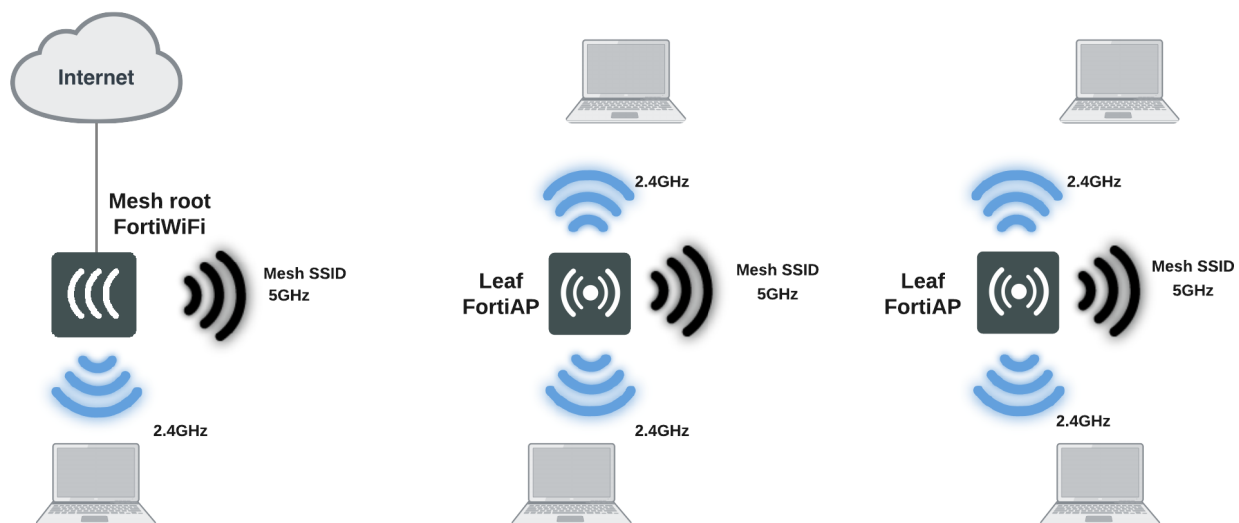
All FortiAP units that are part of the wireless mesh network must be upgraded to FortiAP firmware version 5.0, build 003, or higher. FortiAP-222B units must have their BIOS upgraded to version 400012. The FortiWiFi or FortiGate unit used as the WiFi controller must be running FortiOS firmware version 5.0 or higher.

## Types of wireless mesh

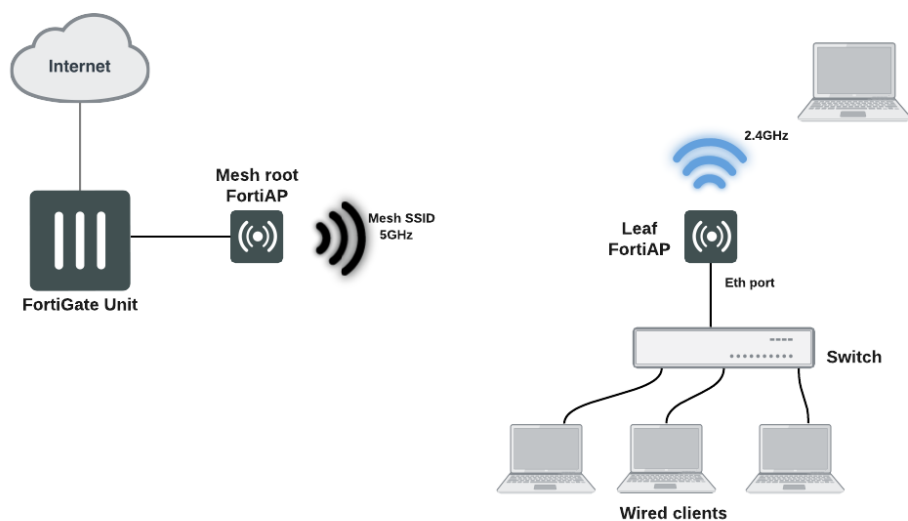
A WiFi mesh can provide access to widely-distributed clients. The mesh root AP which is directly connected to the WiFi controller can be either a FortiAP unit or the built-in AP of a FortiWiFi unit that is also the WiFi controller.

### FortiAP units used as both mesh root AP and leaf AP



**FortiWiFi unit as mesh root AP with FortiAP units as leaf APs**

An alternate use of the wireless mesh is as a point-to-point relay. Both wired and WiFi users on the leaf AP side are connected to the LAN segment on the mesh root side.

**Point-to-point wireless mesh**

## Fast-roaming for mesh backhaul link

Mesh implementations for leaf FortiAP can perform background scanning when the leaf AP is associated with the root. Various options for background scanning can be configured with the CLI. For more details about the mesh variables available in the FortiAP CLI, see [Mesh variables on page 361](#)

## Configuring a meshed WiFi network

To configure a mesh WiFi network, perform the following tasks:

- [Creating the mesh root SSID on page 192](#)
- [Creating the FortiAP profile on page 192](#)
- [Configuring the mesh root AP on page 193](#)
- [Configuring the mesh leaf FortiAPs on page 194](#)
- [Authorizing leaf APs on page 195](#)
- [Creating security policies on page 195](#)
- [Viewing the status of the mesh network on page 195](#)

This section assumes that the end-user SSIDs already exist.

### Creating the mesh root SSID

The mesh route SSID is the radio backhaul that conveys the user SSID traffic to the leaf FortiAPs.

#### To configure the mesh root SSID

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New > SSID**.
2. Enter a **Name** for the WiFi interface.
3. In **Traffic Mode**, select **Mesh Downlink**.
4. Enter the **SSID**.
5. Set **Security Mode** to **WPA2 Personal** and enter the **Pre-shared key**.  
Remember the key because you need to enter it for the leaf FortiAP configuration.
6. Select **OK**.

### Creating the FortiAP profile

Create a FortiAP profile for the meshed FortiAPs. If more than one FortiAP model is involved, you need to create a profile for each model. Typically, the profile is configured so that Radio 1 (5GHz) carries the mesh backhaul SSID while Radio 2 (2.4GHz) carries the SSIDs to which users connect.

For Radio 1, use the **Select SSIDs** option and choose only the backhaul SSID. The radio that carries the backhaul traffic must not carry other SSIDs.

Radio 2 carries user SSIDs and shouldn't carry the backhaul. Use the **Select SSIDs** option and choose the networks that you want to provide.

For more information, see [Creating a FortiAP profile on page 34](#).

## Configuring the mesh root AP

The mesh root AP can be either a FortiWiFi unit's built-in AP or a FortiAP unit.

### To enable a FortiWiFi unit's local radio as mesh root

1. On the FortiWiFi unit, go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Local WiFi Radio**.
2. Select **Enable WiFi Radio**.
3. In **SSID**, select **Select SSIDs**, then select the mesh root SSID.
4. Optionally, adjust **Transmit power** amount or select **Auto**.
5. Select **Apply**.



In a network with multiple wireless controllers, make sure that each mesh root has a unique SSID. Other controllers using the same mesh root SSID may be detected as fake or rogue APs. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** to change the SSID.

---

### To configure a network interface for the mesh root FortiAP unit

1. On the FortiGate unit, go to **Network > Interfaces**, and edit the interface to which the AP unit connects.
2. In **Addressing mode**, select **Manual**.
3. In **IP/Network Mask**, enter an IP address and netmask for the interface.
4. In the Administrative Access section, go to **IPv4** and select the **Security Fabric Connection** checkbox.
5. When FortiAP units are connected to the interface on FortiGate (directly or through a switch), you can go to the Edit Interface section and set the **Role** to **LAN**.  
Selecting the LAN role loads the DHCP Server toggle. If you enable **DHCP Server**, the GUI can automatically set the DHCP IP range based on the interface IP address.
6. Click **OK**.

At this point you can connect the mesh root FortiAP (see below). If you are planning to configure leaf FortiAPs through the wireless controller (see [Configuring the mesh leaf FortiAPs on page 194](#)), then connect the root unit later.

### To enable the root FortiAP unit

1. Connect the root FortiAP unit's Ethernet port to the FortiGate network interface that you configured.
2. On the FortiGate unit, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.  
If the root FortiAP unit is not listed, wait 15 seconds and select **Refresh**. Repeat if necessary. If the unit is still missing after a minute or two, power cycle the root FortiAP unit and try again.
3. Right-click the FortiAP entry and choose your profile from the **Assign Profile** submenu.
4. Right-click the FortiAP entry and select **Authorize**.  
Initially, the **State** of the FortiAP unit is **Offline**. Periodically click **Refresh** to update the status. Within about two minutes, the state changes to **Online**.
5. Select **OK**.

## Configuring the mesh leaf FortiAPs

The FortiAP units that serve as leaf nodes must be preconfigured. This involves changing the FortiAP unit's internal configuration. You can do this by direct connection or through the FortiGate wireless controller.

### Method 1: Direct connection to the FortiAP

1. Configure the computer IP as 192.168.1.3.
2. Connect the computer to the FortiAP unit's Ethernet port and use the default IP address, 192.168.1.2.
3. Log in to the FortiAP as admin. By default, no password is set.
4. Enter the following commands:
  - a. If you are using the GUI, go to **Connectivity > Uplink** and select the **Mesh** option. Then enter the **Mesh AP SSID** and **Mesh AP Password** (pre-shared key).
  - b. If you are using the FortiAP CLI (SSH), enter the following commands, substituting your own SSID and password (pre-shared key):

```
cfg -a MESH_AP_TYPE=1
cfg -a MESH_AP_SSID=fortinet.mesh.root
cfg -a MESH_AP_PASSWD=hardtoguess
cfg -c
exit
```
5. Disconnect the computer.
6. Power down the FortiAP.
7. Repeat the preceding steps for each leaf FortiAP.

### Method 2: Connecting through the FortiGate unit

1. Connect the Ethernet port on the leaf FortiAP to the FortiGate network interface that you configured for FortiAPs. Connect the FortiAP unit to a power source unless PoE is used.
2. On the FortiGate unit, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.  
If the FortiAP unit is not listed, wait 15 seconds and select **Refresh**. Repeat if necessary. If the unit is still missing after a minute or two, power cycle the FortiAP unit and try again.
3. Select the discovered FortiAP unit and authorize it. Click **Refresh** every 10 seconds until the **State** indicator changes to **Online**.
4. Right-click the FortiAP and select **> Connect to CLI**. The **CLI Console** window opens. Log in as "admin".
5. Enter the following commands, substituting your own SSID and password (pre-shared key):

```
cfg -a MESH_AP_TYPE=1
cfg -a MESH_AP_SSID=fortinet.mesh.root
cfg -a MESH_AP_PASSWD=hardtoguess
cfg -c
exit
```
6. Disconnect the FortiAP and delete it from the **Managed FortiAP** list.
7. Repeat the preceding steps for each leaf FortiAP.

## Authorizing leaf APs

When the root FortiAP is connected and online, apply power to the preconfigured leaf FortiAPs. The leaf FortiAPs will connect themselves wirelessly to the WiFi Controller through the mesh network. You must authorize each unit.

1. On the FortiGate unit, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**. Periodically select **Refresh** until the FortiAP unit is listed. This can take up to three minutes.  
The **State** of the FortiAP unit should be **Waiting for Authorization**.
2. Right-click the FortiAP entry and choose your profile from the **Assign Profile** submenu.
3. Right-click the FortiAP entry and select **Authorize**.  
Initially, the **State** of the FortiAP unit is **Offline**. Periodically click **Refresh** to update the status. Within about two minutes, the state changes to **Online**.

## Creating security policies




To permit traffic to flow from the end-user WiFi network to the network interfaces for the Internet and other networks, you need to create security policies and enable NAT.

## Viewing the status of the mesh network

On the FortiGate unit, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** to view the list of APs.

<div><div>+ Create New</div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div><div>Refresh</div><div>Search</div><div>Q</div></div>				Managed <div>10</div>		AP <div>atom-et-kvm</div>				
	Access Point	Status	SSIDs	Channel	Health	Clients	OS Version	LLDP	FortiAP Profile	Re
	<div><div></div>FC24JE4N1700374</div>	<div>Online</div>	<div><div>R1</div>None</div> <div><div>R2</div>None</div>	<div><div>R1</div>11</div> <div><div>R2</div>48</div>	<div>Good</div>	0	FC24JE-v5.4-build0222	No LLDP neighbors found.	FAPC24JE-default	<div>0</div>
<div><div></div></div>	<div><div></div>MESH-Root-AP_1</div>	<div>Online</div>	<div><div>R1</div><div>example-staff</div></div> <div><div>R2</div>fortinet.mesh.root</div>	<div><div>R1</div>1</div> <div><div>R2</div>36</div>	<div>Good</div>	1	PS223E-v6.2-build0259	eth0: SW1G1-W-G3 - port13	S223	<div>0</div>

The **SSIDs** column lists the SSID of each FortiAP radio and uses icons to show the Traffic mode of each radio.

Bridge	
Mesh	
Tunnel	

To see more information about each radio, mouse over the **SSIDs** information.

## Configuring a point-to-point bridge

To connect two wired network segments using a WiFi link, you can create a point-to-point bridge. The effect is the same as connecting the two network segments to the same wired switch.

You need to:

- Configure a mesh-backhaul SSID and a mesh root AP as described in [Configuring the mesh root AP on page 193](#).  
**Note:** The mesh root AP for a point-to-point bridge must be a FortiAP unit, not the internal AP of a FortiWiFi unit.



- Configure a mesh leaf FortiAP as described in [Configuring the mesh leaf FortiAPs on page 194](#) and add these steps to configure the Ethernet bridge:
  - If you are using the FortiAP GUI, select **Ethernet Bridge**.
  - If you are using the FortiAP CLI, insert the following command before the line reading `cfg -c`:  
`cfg -a MESH_ETH_BRIDGE=1`
- Connect the local wired network to the Ethernet port on the mesh leaf FortiAP unit. Users are assigned IP addresses from the DHCP server on the wired network connected to the mesh root FortiAP unit.



In general, the mesh-Ethernet bridge automatically detects VLAN ID tags in data packets and allows them to pass. When necessary, you can configure VLAN IDs for permanent support in a mesh-Ethernet bridge. To do this, enter the following commands in the mesh leaf FortiAP CLI:

```
cfg -a MESH_ETH_BRIDGE_VLANS=100,200,300
cfg -c
```

---

# Hotspot 2.0 configuration

## Hotspot 2.0 ANQP configuration

Hotspot 2.0 Access Network Query Protocol (ANQP) is a query and response protocol that defines seamless roaming services offered by an AP. To configure Hotspot 2.0 ANQP, use the CLI commands available under `config wireless-controller hotspot20`:



A hotspot profile needs to be attached to VAP, and can only be attached to an enterprise security VAP. You can configure the security type and attach the hotspot profile with the following commands:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit {name}
    set security wpa2-only-enterprise
    set hotspot20-profile {string}
next
end
```

### Syntax

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-3gpp-cellular
edit {name}
    config mcc-mnc-list
    edit {id}
        set id {integer}
        set mcc {string}
        set mnc {string}
    next
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-ip-address-type
edit {name}
    set ipv6-address-type {option}
    set ipv4-address-type {option}
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-nai-realm
edit {name}
    config nai-list
    edit {name}
        set encoding {enable | disable}
        set nai-realm {string}
    config eap-method
    edit {index}
        set method {option}
    config auth-param
    edit {index}
```

```
                set id {option}
                set val {option}
            next
        next
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-network-auth-type
    edit {name}
        set auth-type {option}
        set url {string}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-roaming-consortium
    edit {name}
        config oi-list
            edit {index}
                set oi {string}
                set comment {string}
            next
        next
    end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-name
    edit {name}
        config value-list
            edit {index}
                set lang {string}
                set value {string}
            next
        next
    end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-conn-capability
    edit {name}
        set icmp-port {option}
        set ftp-port {option}
        set ssh-port {option}
        set http-port {option}
        set tls-port {option}
        set pptp-vpn-port {option}
        set voip-tcp-port {option}
        set voip-udp-port {option}
        set ikev2-port {option}
        set ikev2-xx-port {option}
        set esp-port {option}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-operator-name
    edit {name}
        config value-list
            edit {index}
                set lang {string}
                set value {string}
            next
        next
    end
```

```
        next
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider
    edit {name}
        config friendly-name
            edit {index}
                set lang {string}
                set friendly-name {string}
            next
        set server-uri {string}
        set osu-method {option}
        set osu-nai {string}
        config service-description
            edit {service-id}
                set lang {string}
                set service-description {string}
            next
        set icon {string}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-wan-metric
    edit {name}
        set link-status {option}
        set symmetric-wan-link {option}
        set link-at-capacity {enable | disable}
        set uplink-speed {integer}
        set downlink-speed {integer}
        set uplink-load {integer}
        set downlink-load {integer}
        set load-measurement-duration {integer}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile
    edit {name}
        set access-network-type {option}
        set access-network-internet {enable | disable}
        set access-network-asra {enable | disable}
        set access-network-esr {enable | disable}
        set access-network-uesa {enable | disable}
        set venue-group {option}
        set venue-type {option}
        set hessid {mac address}
        set proxy-arp {enable | disable}
        set l2tif {enable | disable}
        set pame-bi {enable | disable}
        set anqp-domain-id {integer}
        set domain-name {string}
        set osu-ssid {string}
        set gas-comeback-delay {integer}
        set gas-fragmentation-limit {integer}
        set dgaf {enable | disable}
        set deauth-request-timeout {integer}
```

```

    set wnm-sleep-mode {enable | disable}
    set bss-transition {enable | disable}
    set venue-name {string}
    set roaming-consortium {string}
    set nai-realm {string}
    set oper-friendly-name {string}
    config osu-provider
        edit {name}
        next
    set wan-metrics {string}
    set network-auth {string}
    set 3gpp-plmn {string}
    set conn-cap {string}
    set qos-map {string}
    set ip-addr-type {string}
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 icon
    edit {name}
        config icon-list
            edit {name}
                set lang {string}
                set file {string}
                set type {option}
                set width {integer}
                set height {integer}
            next
        next
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 qos-map
    edit {name}
        config dscp-except
            edit {index}
                set dscp
                set up
            next
        config dscp-range
            edit {index}
                set up
                set low
                set high
            next
        next
    next
end

```

## Hotspot 2.0 Release 3 profile configuration

Wi-Fi Alliance Hotspot 2.0 Release 3 introduces new features that you can use to configure hotspot profiles.

The following six hotspot profile options are available for Release 3:

release	Hotspot 2.0 Release number (1, 2, 3, default = 2).
venue-url	Venue name.
oper-icon	Operator icon.
advice-of-charge	Advice of charge.
osu-provider-nai	Online sign up (OSU) provider network access identifier (NAI).
terms-and-conditions	Terms and conditions.

### To configure wireless controller hotspot 20 hs-profile related settings

```

config wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile
  edit "profile1"
    set release 3
    set venue-url "venue-ulr-config1"
    set oper-icon "icon-orange"
    set advice-of-charge "aoc1"
    set osu-provider-nai "osu_nai1"
    set terms-and-conditions "tc-1"
  next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-url
  edit "venue-ulr-config1"
    config value-list
      edit 1
        set number 1
        set value "https://venue-server.r2m-testbed.wi-fi.org/floorplans/index.html"
      next
    end
  next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 icon
  edit "icon-orange"
    config icon-list
      edit "icon_orange_zxx.png"
        set lang "zxx"
        set file "icon_orange_zxx.png"
        set width 128
        set height 61
      next
    end
  next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-advice-of-charge
  edit "aoc1"
    config aoc-list
      edit "list1"
        config plan-info
          edit "plan1"
            set lang "ENG"
            set currency "USD"
          next
        next
      next
    end
  next
end

```

```

        set info-file "time_plan1"
      next
    end
  next
end
next
end
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider-nai
edit "osu_nai1"
  config nai-list
  edit "nai1"
    set osu-nai "anonymous@hotspot.net"
  next
end
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-terms-and-conditions
edit "tc-1"
  set filename "tandc-id1-content.txt"
  set timestamp 13578042
  set url "https://tandc-server.r2m-testbed.wi-fi.org"
next
end

```

### To verify the hotspot profile

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlaac -c hsprof
```

```

HSPROF (003/005) vdom,name: root, profile1
venue url : venue-ubr-config1
operator icon : icon-orange
advice of charge : aoc1
osu provider nai : osu_nai1
terms and conditions : tc-1
wlan cnt : 2
  vap 001 : 0 ssid_wpa3_en
  vap 002 : 0 ssid_ent

```

### To enable OSEN as part of key management in a WPA2/WPA3 enterprise radius authentication SSID

```

config wireless-controller vap
edit "ssid_ent"
  set ssid "ssid_ent"
  set security wpa2-only-enterprise
  set auth radius
  set radius-server "wifi-radius"
  set schedule "always"
  set hotspot20-profile "profile1"
  set osen enable
next
end

```

### To verify the SSID options

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlaac -c wlan

WLAN (002/003) vdom,name: root, ssid_ent
  vlanid : 0 (auto vlan intf disabled)
  hotspot20-profile : profile1
  osen : 1
  ssid : ssid_ent radius_server : wifi-radius
```



# WiFi network with wired LAN configuration

This section includes the following topics:

- [How to combine a WiFi network and wired LAN with a software switch on page 204](#)
- [How to configure a FortiAP local bridge \(private cloud-managed AP\) on page 206](#)
- [How to increase the number of supported FortiAPs on page 209](#)
- [How to implement multi-processing for large-scale FortiAP management on page 211](#)

## How to combine a WiFi network and wired LAN with a software switch

A WiFi network can be combined with a wired LAN so that WiFi and wired clients are on the same subnet. This is a convenient configuration for users.

Software switches are only available if your FortiGate is in Interface mode.



Wireless Mesh features cannot be used in conjunction with this configuration because they enable the FortiAP Local Bridge option.

---

To create the WiFi network and wired LAN configuration, you need to:

- Configure the SSID so that traffic is tunneled to the WiFi controller.
- Configure a software switch interface on the FortiGate unit with the WiFi and internal network interface as members.
- Configure Captive Portal security for the software switch interface.

### To configure the SSID - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New**.
2. Complete the following fields:

<b>Interface name</b>	A name for the new WiFi interface.
<b>Traffic Mode</b>	Local bridge with FortiAP interface.
<b>SSID</b>	The SSID visible to users.
<b>Security Mode</b>	Configure security as you would for a regular WiFi network.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	A network access key for the SSID.

3. Click **OK**.
4. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**, select the FortiAP unit for editing.
5. Authorize the FortiAP unit.  
The FortiAP unit can carry regular SSIDs in addition to the Bridge SSID.

## To configure the SSID - CLI

This example creates a WiFi interface "homenet\_if" with SSID "homenet" using WPA-Personal security, passphrase "Fortinet1234".

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "homenet_if"
    set vdom "root"
    set ssid "homenet"
    set security wpa-personal
    set passphrase "Fortinet1234"
  end
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP22B3U11005354
    set admin enable
    set vaps "homenet_if"
  end
```

## To configure the FortiGate software switch - GUI

1. Go to **Network > Interfaces** and select **Create New > Interface**.
2. Complete the following fields:

<b>Interface Name</b>	A name for the new interface. For example, homenet_nw.
<b>Type</b>	Software Switch
<b>Physical Interface Members</b>	Add homenet_if and the internal network interface.
<b>Addressing mode</b>	Select Manual and enter an address, for example 172.16.96.32/255.255.255.0
<b>DHCP Server</b>	Enable and configure an address range for clients.
<b>Security Mode</b>	Select <b>Captive Portal</b> . Add the permitted <b>User Groups</b> .

3. Select **OK**.

## To configure the FortiGate software switch - CLI

```
config system interface
  edit homenet_nw
    set ip 172.16.96.32 255.255.255.0
    set type switch
    set security-mode captive-portal
    set security-groups "Guest-group"
  end
config system interface
  edit homenet_nw
    set member "homenet_if" "internal"
  end
```

## VLAN configuration

If your environment uses VLAN tagging, you assign the SSID to a specific VLAN in the CLI. See [Reserved VLAN IDs on page 29](#). For example, to assign the `homenet_if` interface to VLAN 100, enter:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "homenet_if"
    set vlanid 100
  end
```

## Additional configuration

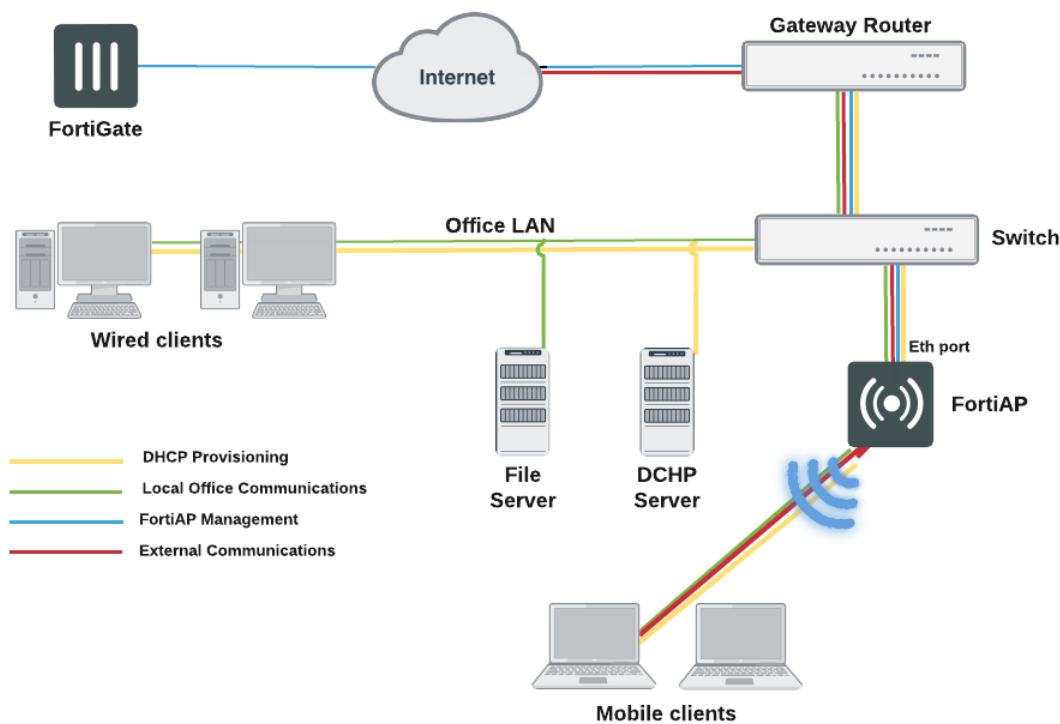
The configuration described above provides communication between WiFi and wired LAN users only. To provide access to other networks, create appropriate firewall policies between the software switch and other interfaces.

## How to configure a FortiAP local bridge (private cloud-managed AP)

A FortiAP unit can provide WiFi access to a LAN, even when the wireless controller is located remotely. This configuration is useful for the following situations:

- Installations where the WiFi controller is remote and most of the traffic is local or uses the local Internet gateway
- Wireless-PCI compliance with remote WiFi controller
- Telecommuting, where the FortiAP unit has the WiFi controller IP address pre-configured and broadcasts the office SSID in the user's home or hotel room. In this case, data is sent in the wireless tunnel across the Internet to the office and you should enable encryption using DTLS.

Remotely-managed FortiAP providing WiFi access to local network



On the remote FortiGate wireless controller, the WiFi SSID is created with the **Bridge with FortiAP Interface** option selected. In this mode, no IP addresses are configured. The WiFi and Ethernet interfaces on the FortiAP behave as a switch. WiFi client devices obtain IP addresses from the same DHCP server as wired devices on the LAN.



The local bridge feature cannot be used in conjunction with Wireless Mesh features.

**Block-Intra-SSID Traffic** is available in Bridge mode. This is useful in hotspot deployments managed by a central FortiGate, but would also be useful in cloud deployments. Previously, this was only supported in Tunnel mode.

To configure a FortiAP local bridge - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New > SSID**.
2. Complete the following fields:

Interface name	A name for the new WiFi interface.
Traffic Mode	Local bridge with FortiAP interface.
SSID	The SSID visible to users.
Security Mode	Configure security as you would for a regular WiFi network.
Pre-shared Key	A network access key for the SSID.

3. Click **OK**.
4. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and select the FortiAP unit for editing.
5. Authorize the FortiAP unit.  
The FortiAP unit can carry regular SSIDs in addition to the Bridge SSID.

### SSID configured for local bridge operation

New

Interface Name	<input type="text" value="branchbridge_if"/>
Alias	<input type="text"/>
Type	WiFi SSID ▼
Traffic Mode ⓘ	<input type="radio"/> Tunnel <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Bridge</b> <input type="radio"/> Mesh

WiFi Settings

SSID	<input type="text" value="LANbridge"/>
Security Mode	WPA2 Personal ▼
Pre-shared Key ⓘ	<input type="password" value="••••••••••"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

### To configure a FortiAP local bridge - CLI

This example creates a WiFi interface “branchbridge” with SSID “LANbridge” using WPA-Personal security, passphrase “Fortinet1234”.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "branchbridge"
    set vdom "root"
    set ssid "LANbridge"
    set local-bridging enable
    set security wpa-personal
    set passphrase "Fortinet1234"
  end
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP22B3U11005354
    set admin enable
    set vaps "branchbridge"
  end
```



- Disabling local-bridging forcefully disables local-standalone. Also, disabling either local-bridging or local-standalone forcefully disables intra-vap-privacy.
- Enabling intra-vap-privacy forcefully disables local-standalone.
- Enabling local-standalone forcefully enables local-bridging.

## Continued FortiAP operation when WiFi controller connection is down

The wireless controller, or the connection to it, might occasionally become unavailable. During such an outage, clients already associated with a bridge mode FortiAP unit continue to have access to the Wi-Fi and wired networks.

The FortiAP unit can continue to authenticate users if the SSID meets the following conditions:

- **Traffic mode** is set to **Bridge** with the FortiAP Interface.  
In this mode, the FortiAP unit does not send traffic back to the wireless controller.
- **Security mode** is set to one of the following modes:
  - Open
  - Captive Portal with external authentication portal
  - WPA/WPA2-Personal
  - WPA/WPA2-Enterprise
  - WPA3-Enterprise
  - WPA3-SAE
  - WPA3-SAE Transition
  - WPA3-OWE
- **Local standalone** mode is enabled.  
This allows new Wi-Fi client connections when the controller is down. This field is available only if the other conditions have been met. By default, this option is disabled.

The “LANbridge” SSID example would be configured like this in the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "branchbridge"
    set vdom "root"
    set ssid "LANbridge"
    set local-bridging enable
    set security wpa-personal
    set passphrase "Fortinet1234"
    set local-authentication enable
  end
```

## How to increase the number of supported FortiAPs

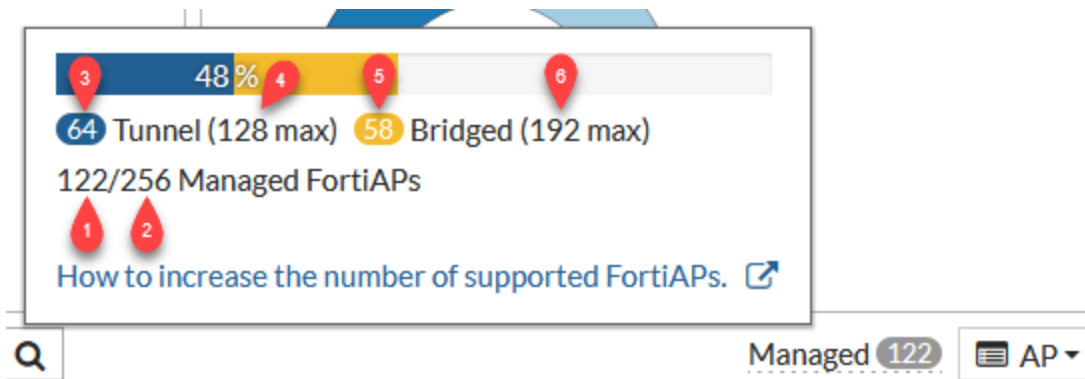
You can increase the number of FortiAP units supported by the FortiGate wireless controller if you configure the FortiAPs to run in local Bridge mode instead of in Tunnel mode.

For each FortiGate model, there are two maximum values that represent the number of FortiAP units that can be supported:

- The number of FortiAPs that can be supported while operating in Tunnel mode; and
- The number of FortiAPs that can be supported while operating in Bridged mode.

To see the maximum number of FortiAPs that can be supported, go to the Managed FortiAP page (**WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**) and look at the top right for **Managed**. The number by **Managed** represents the number of FortiAPs currently being managed.

Hold the pointer over the number to see the maximum number of FortiAPs that can be supported.



Label	Description
1	The total number of Tunnel and Bridged FortiAPs currently being managed.
2	The maximum number of Tunnel and Bridged FortiAPs that can be supported by this FortiGate. For more detailed information, consult the <a href="#">Maximum Values Table</a> .
3	The number of Tunnel FortiAPs currently being managed.
4	The maximum possible number of Tunnel FortiAPs that can be supported currently. This number may change if you add or remove Bridged FortiAPs, but has an upper limit.
5	The number of Bridged FortiAPs currently being managed.
6	The maximum possible number of Bridged FortiAPs that can be supported currently. This number changes if you add or remove Tunnel FortiAPs.

### To configure FortiAP units for Bridge mode operation via the GUI

1. Create at least one SSID with **Traffic Mode** set to **Local bridge with FortiAP's Interface**.
2. Create a custom AP profile that includes *only* local bridge SSIDs.
3. Configure the designated FortiAP unit to use the custom AP profile.  
The FortiAP unit automatically switches to Bridge mode.

### To configure FortiAP units for Bridge mode operation via the CLI

1. Create at least one SSID with **Traffic Mode** set to **Local bridge with FortiAP's Interface**.
2. Create a custom AP profile that includes *only* local bridge SSIDs.
3. Use the following CLI example to manually select the custom AP profile for the FortiAP unit:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FP221E3X16000017
    set wtp-profile 221E_bridge
  end
```

## How to implement multi-processing for large-scale FortiAP management

You can configure multiple processors for the wireless daemon (cw\_acd) to scale large numbers of FortiAP per FortiGate Controller.

The `acd-process-count` option allows you to specify the number of `cw_acd` processes to manage FortiAPs. For FortiGate managed APs, it splits the total number of FortiAPs into smaller groups where each `cw_acd` process manages a group. The `cw_acd` process won't be as overloaded, and if one `cw_acd` has an issue, it only affects that group of FortiAPs instead of all the FortiAPs managed by the FortiGate.

The maximum value you can specify in `acd-process-count` varies according to the `wireless-controller.wtp` in table size from different platforms.

wireless-controller.wtp	Maximum acd-process-count
8192	32
4096	16
512-1024	8
128-256	4
16-64	2

### To configure multiple cw\_acd processes

In this example, there are about 1300 FortiAPs managed by a FortiGate with 16 `cw_acd` processes to handle all the FortiAPs.

1. Set the `acd-process-count` to 0 in `wireless-controller global`:

```
config wireless-controller global
  set acd-process-count 16
end
```

2. Verify the number of FortiAPs managed per `cw_acd`:

```
# diagnose wireless wlac -c mpmt
acd main process pid : 321
acd child process count : 16
  idx=01 pid= 321 sl=N/A sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_mgr sh=

  idx=02 pid= 376 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_data sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_data sh=

  * idx=03 pid= 377 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt sh=
    ws_cnt=1305 1283(RUN) 86(cfg) 1189(oper)
  idx=04 pid= 401 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_1 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_1 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_1 ws_cnt=80 77(RUN) 4(cfg) 70(oper)
  idx=05 pid= 402 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_2 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_2 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_2 ws_cnt=78 77(RUN) 5(cfg) 72(oper)
  idx=06 pid= 403 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_3 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_3 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_3 ws_cnt=91 89(RUN) 6(cfg) 83(oper)
```



```

      idx=07 pid= 404 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_4 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_4 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_4 ws_cnt=93      92(RUN)  6(cfg)   84(oper)
      idx=08 pid= 405 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_5 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_5 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_5 ws_cnt=92      91(RUN)  7(cfg)   84(oper)
      idx=09 pid= 406 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_6 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_6 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_6 ws_cnt=92      91(RUN) 10(cfg)   81(oper)
      idx=10 pid= 407 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_7 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_7 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_7 ws_cnt=78      77(RUN)  4(cfg)   73(oper)
      idx=11 pid= 408 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_8 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_8 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_8 ws_cnt=76      74(RUN)  5(cfg)   69(oper)
      idx=12 pid= 409 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_9 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_9 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_9 ws_cnt=82      79(RUN)  9(cfg)   70(oper)
      idx=13 pid= 410 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_10 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_10 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_10 ws_cnt=76      74(RUN)  4(cfg)   70(oper)
      idx=14 pid= 411 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_11 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_11 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_11 ws_cnt=80      77(RUN)  6(cfg)   70(oper)
      idx=15 pid= 412 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_12 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_12 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_12 ws_cnt=78      78(RUN)  5(cfg)   72(oper)
      idx=16 pid= 413 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_13 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_13 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_13 ws_cnt=76      76(RUN)  5(cfg)   71(oper)
      idx=17 pid= 414 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_14 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_14 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_14 ws_cnt=78      78(RUN)  5(cfg)   73(oper)
      idx=18 pid= 415 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_15 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_15 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_15 ws_cnt=76      75(RUN)  1(cfg)   74(oper)
      idx=19 pid= 416 sl=/tmp/cwCwAcSocket_16 sm=/tmp/cwAcSock_mpmt_16 sh=/tmp/hasync_
to_cw_acd_unix_sock_16 ws_cnt=79      78(RUN)  4(cfg)   73(oper)
Curr Time: 683

```

Each cw\_acd process handles a small number of FortiAPs, about 90.

### 3. Verify the CPU used by cw\_acd:

```

# diagnose system top 5 30
Run Time: 0 days, 0 hours and 11 minutes
5U, 0N, 4S, 91I, 0WA, 0HI, 0SI, 0ST; 16063T, 8236F
      csfd      340      R      87.5      1.3      8
      cw_acd     377      S      12.9      6.5      6
      flpold     336      S       1.9      0.0      1
      cu_acd     325      S       1.4      0.1      0
      cw_acd     402      S       0.9      0.9      6
      cw_acd     401      S       0.9      0.9      2
      cw_acd     412      S       0.4      1.2      8
      cw_acd     404      S       0.4      1.0     10
      cw_acd     405      S       0.4      1.0      4
      cw_acd     403      S       0.4      1.0      2
      cw_acd     409      S       0.4      0.9      4
      cw_acd     408      S       0.4      0.9      6
      cw_acd     414      S       0.4      0.9      2
      cw_acd     413      S       0.4      0.9      8
      node      275      S       0.4      0.3      4
      miglogd    295      S       0.4      0.3     10
      cid       345      S       0.4      0.2      6
      miglogd    391      S       0.4      0.2      6
      miglogd    389      S       0.4      0.2      8
      forticron  282      S       0.4      0.1      6
      flcfgd     326      S       0.4      0.1      9
      fortilinkd 324      S       0.4      0.0      0

```

cw_acd	376	S	0.0	2.8	3
cw_acd	406	S	0.0	1.0	6
cw_acd	411	S	0.0	0.9	10
cw_acd	416	S	0.0	0.9	8
cw_acd	407	S	0.0	0.9	2
cw_acd	415	S	0.0	0.9	0
cw_acd	410	S	0.0	0.8	4
cmdbsvr	237	S	0.0	0.7	0

```
# get system performance status
```

```
CPU states: 5% user 3% system 0% nice 92% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU0 states: 6% user 4% system 0% nice 90% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU1 states: 0% user 5% system 0% nice 95% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU2 states: 2% user 2% system 0% nice 96% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU3 states: 0% user 2% system 0% nice 98% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU4 states: 1% user 6% system 0% nice 93% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU5 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU6 states: 37% user 2% system 0% nice 61% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU7 states: 1% user 0% system 0% nice 99% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU8 states: 9% user 13% system 0% nice 78% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU9 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU10 states: 1% user 2% system 0% nice 97% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU11 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
Memory: 16448692k total, 7867592k used (47.8%), 8208572k free (49.9%), 372528k freeable
(2.3%)
Average network usage: 1710 / 942 kbps in 1 minute, 18999 / 19647 kbps in 10 minutes,
15826 / 16285 kbps in 30 minutes
Maximal network usage: 2804 / 1473 kbps in 1 minute, 27949 / 27754 kbps in 10 minutes,
31749 / 32829 kbps in 30 minutes
Average sessions: 2864 sessions in 1 minute, 2262 sessions in 10 minutes, 1995 sessions
in 30 minutes
Maximal sessions: 2941 sessions in 1 minute, 2945 sessions in 10 minutes, 2945 sessions
in 30 minutes
Average session setup rate: 1 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 5 sessions per
second in last 10 minutes, 7 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
Maximal session setup rate: 20 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 214 sessions per
second in last 10 minutes, 278 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
Average NPU sessions: 48 sessions in last 1 minute, 45 sessions in last 10 minutes, 40
sessions in last 30 minutes
Maximal NPU sessions: 52 sessions in last 1 minute, 59 sessions in last 10 minutes, 94
sessions in last 30 minutes
Average nTurbo sessions: 0 sessions in last 1 minute, 0 sessions in last 10 minutes, 0
sessions in last 30 minutes
Maximal nTurbo sessions: 0 sessions in last 1 minute, 0 sessions in last 10 minutes, 0
sessions in last 30 minutes
Virus caught: 0 total in 1 minute
IPS attacks blocked: 0 total in 1 minute
Uptime: 0 days, 0 hours, 12 minutes
```

Each cw\_acd uses about 1% of the CPU.

# Remote WLAN FortiAPs

Remote WLAN FortiAP models enable you to provide a pre-configured WiFi access point to a remote or traveling employee. Once plugged in at home or in a hotel room, the FortiAP automatically discovers the enterprise FortiGate WiFi controller over the Internet and broadcasts the same wireless SSID used in the corporate office. Communication between the WiFi controller and the FortiAP is secure, eliminating the need for a VPN.

By default, all traffic from the remote FortiAP is sent to the FortiGate WiFi controller. If you want to use split tunneling, you can configure which traffic is routed to the FortiGate. Other general Internet traffic is routed unencrypted through the local gateway. Split tunneling avoids loading the FortiGate with unnecessary traffic and allows direct access to local private networks at the location of the FortiAP even if the connection to the WiFi controller goes down.

## Configuring the FortiGate for remote FortiAPs

This section assumes that you have already defined SSIDs and now want to make them available to remote FortiAPs.

1. Create FortiAP profiles for the Remote LAN FortiAP models.

If you were not already using Remote LAN FortiAP models, you will need to create FortiAP profiles for them. In the FortiAP profile, you specify the SSIDs that the FortiAP will broadcast. For more information, see [Creating a FortiAP profile on page 34](#).

2. If you want to configure split tunneling, you must do the following:
  - a. enable split tunneling in the FortiGate GUI
  - b. apply split tunneling to a FortiAP profile
  - c. configure split tunneling behavior in the FortiAP CLI
  - d. enable split tunneling in the SSID
3. Configure a FortiAP to connect to FortiGate
4. Preauthorize a FortiAP for automatic authorization.

## Enable split tunneling options

By default, split tunneling options are not visible in the FortiGate GUI. You can make these options visible using the following CLI command:

```
config system settings
  set gui-fortiap-split-tunneling enable
end
```

Once you enable split tunneling, you can apply it via the FortiAP profile.

## Apply split tunneling

### To apply split tunneling - FortiGate GUI

Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and edit your SSID. In the **WiFi Settings** section, enable **Split Tunneling**.

Go to **WiFi Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and edit the FortiAP Profile(s) that apply to the AP types used in the WiFi network. In the **Split Tunneling** section, enable **Include Local Subnet** and **Split Tunneling Subnet(s)**. You can enter a list of the destination IP address ranges.

- Depending on how you configure split tunneling behavior in the CLI (see [Configure split tunneling behavior on page 215](#)), you can decide if you want the listed IP addresses to be tunneled to the FortiGate, or if you want to avoid tunneling these IP addresses to the FortiGate.

## Configure split tunneling behavior

There are two methods the FortiAP can use to tunnel networks from the remote AP:

- Tunnel:** Define the subnets in the profile that you *want* to tunnel to the FortiGate. These are usually the IP subnets that contain internal corporate applications such as file shares.  
*Uncheck* the **Include Local Subnet** option in the FortiAP profile if you want the remote wireless client to be able to communicate with internal devices at their home/remote site.
- Local:** Define the subnets that you *do not* want to be tunneled back to the FortiGate. Use this method if you want all traffic to be inspected by the FortiGate, including traffic destined for the internet. This method is more secure but can add latency to the user's internet browsing.  
*Check* the **Include Local Subnet** option in the FortiAP profile if you want the remote wireless client to be able to communicate with internal devices at their home/remote site

From the FortiGate CLI, enter the following commands to change the split tunneling behavior in a FortiAP profile:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <profile_name>
    set split-tunneling-acl-path {tunnel | local}
  end
end
```

### To configure split tunneling addresses

In this example, split tunneling is configured on the example-ssid WiFi network. On FortiAP model 21D, traffic destined for the 192.168.x.x range will not be routed through the FortiGate WiFi controller. This private IP address range is typically used as a LAN by home routers.

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit example-ssid
    set split-tunneling enable
  end

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP21D-default
    set split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet enable
    config split-tunneling-acl
      edit 1
        set dest-ip 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0
      end
    end
  end
```

To enter multiple subnets, create a split-tunneling-acl entry for each one.

### To override the split tunneling settings on a FortiAP

If the FortiAP Profile split tunneling settings are not appropriate for a particular FortiAP, you can override the settings on that unit.

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit FAP321C3X14019926
    set override-split-tunnel enable
    set split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet enable
    config split-tunneling-acl
      edit 1
        set dest-ip 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
      end
    end
  end
```

## Enable split tunneling on SSIDs

Once you create your FortiAP profile, you need to enable split tunneling on the SSIDs you want to use on the remote APs.

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and edit the SSIDs the remote AP will use.
2. Enable **Split tunneling**.
3. Click **OK**.

## Configure a FortiAP unit to connect to FortiGate

Prior to providing a remote WLAN FortiAP unit to an employee, you need to preconfigure the FortiAP to connect to your FortiGate WiFi controller.

### To pre-configure a FortiAP - GUI

1. Plug the FortiAP you want to deploy into a port or VLAN that has DHCP configured.
  - If no DHCP server is available, the default IP information to log in to the AP is:  
**IP Address:** 192.168.1.2  
**Subnet Mask:** 255.255.255.0  
**DGW:** 192.168.1.1
2. Look for the assigned IP Address on the router or DHCP server.

If no DHCP server is available, use a cross-over cable to connect your Ethernet port directly to the LAN port on the AP.

**Note:** You might need a power adapter for the FortiAP if POE is not available.
3. From a web browser, access your FortiAP at `https://<FAP-IP>` where `<FAP-IP>` is the IP address of the FortiAP.
4. Log in with username `admin` and no password.
5. From the FortiAP page, click **Local Configuration**.
6. In the **AC Discovery Type** field, select how you want the FortiAP to discover the controller and complete any required fields:

For more information on discovery methods, refer to [Advanced WiFi controller discovery on page 170](#).

- **Auto:** Automatically cycle through all six of the discovery methods until it establishes an AC connection.
- **Static:** Provide up to three Static IP Addresses (most likely the public facing IP addresses for remote workers).
- **DHCP:** Use DHCP Option 138.
- **DNS:** Provide up to three FQDN entries that are resolvable by the FortiAP.
- **FortiAP Cloud:** Enter your FortiCloud username and password.

7. In the **AP Data Channel Security** field, select **IPsec Enabled**.

8. Click **OK** to save your changes.

### To pre-configure a FortiAP - CLI

1. Connect the FortiAP to the FortiGate unit.
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and wait for the FortiAP to be listed. Click **Refresh** periodically to see the latest information. Note the **Connected Via** IP address.
3. Right click the row of the FortiAP that you want to connect to and then select **> \_ Connect to CLI**.

The CLI Console window opens.

4. If the password prompt appears, then enter the required password. By default, no password is set.
5. Enter the following commands to set the FortiGate WiFi controller IP address. This IP address is the FortiGate Internet-facing IP address, in this example 172.20.120.142.

```
cfg -a AC_IPADDR_1=172.20.120.142
```

```
cfg -c
```

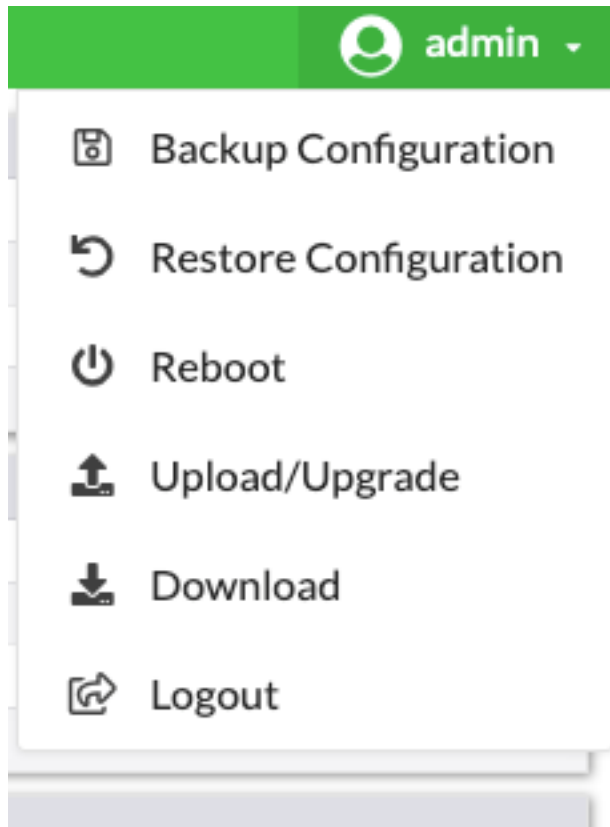
6. To log out of the FortiAP CLI, enter `exit`.

## Applying configurations to multiple FortiAPs

If you have multiple FortiAPs that you need to configure, you can save a backup configuration file and use the restore function to apply these configurations to other FortiAPs. In order for this method to work, the firmware version of all your FortiAPs must match.

### To apply configurations to multiple FortiAPs

1. From your FortiAP page, in the top right corner, click to expand the **admin** menu.



2. Click **Backup Configuration** to save a configuration file.
3. Log in to the FortiAP page that you want to apply to configuration to.
4. Click to expand the **admin** menu.
5. Click **Restore Configuration** and select the configuration file you created.

### Preauthorize a FortiAP unit for automatic authorization

By preauthorizing FortiAP units, you facilitate their automatic authorization on the network. Also, you can assign each unit a unique name, such as the employee name, for easier tracking.

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and create a new entry.
2. Enter the **Serial Number** of the FortiAP unit and give it a **Name**.
3. Select the appropriate **FortiAP Profile**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 for each FortiAP.

# Features for high-density deployments

High-density environments such as auditoriums, classrooms, and meeting rooms present a challenge to WiFi providers. When a large number of mobile devices try to connect to a WiFi network, difficulties arise because of the limited number of radio channels and interference between devices.

FortiOS and FortiAP devices provide several tools to mitigate the difficulties when deploying in high-density environments.

- Upgrading the firmware for multiple FortiAPs
- Controlling the power save feature
- Configuring the broadcast packet suppression
- Converting multicast streams to unicast
- Ignoring weak or distant clients
- Turning off the 802.11b protocol
- Configuring data rates
- Enabling the automatic TX power control
- Enabling the frequency band load-balancing
- Enabling the AP load balancing
- Setting the Application Control feature
- Managing the FortiAP group and assigning a dynamic VLAN
- Sharing tunnel SSIDs within a single managed FortiAP
- Enabling the manual quarantine of devices on FortiAP (tunnel mode)
- Locating a FortiAP with LED blinking
- Uploading a FortiAP image on the wireless controller
- Configuring control message off-loading
- Enabling Dynamic Radio Mode Assignment (DRMA)
- Setting the Application Control feature
- RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) support on page 231

## Upgrading the firmware for multiple FortiAPs

Administrators can upgrade the firmware for multiple FortiAPs; they don't need to upgrade each AP individually.

From **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**, you can select a FortiAP Group and right-click to select **Upgrade**. This will upgrade all the APs in that group.

## Controlling the power save feature

Occasionally, voice calls can become disrupted. One way to alleviate this issue is by controlling the power save feature, or to disable it altogether.

Manually configure packet transmit optimization settings by entering the following command:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit <name>
config <radio-1> | <radio-2>
set transmit-optimize {disable | power-save | aggr-limit | retry-limit | sendbar}
```



Transmit optimization options	Description
disable	Disable transmit optimization.
power-save	Mark a client as power save mode if excessive transmit retries happen.
aggr-limit	Set aggregation limit to a lower value when data rate is low.
retry-limit	Set software retry limit to a lower value when data rate is low.
send-bar	Do not send BAR frame too often.

## 11n radio powersave optimization

The following `powersave-optimize` parameters (under `config radio`) are used for 11n radios to optimize system performance for specific situations.

- **tim:** Set traffic indication map (TIM) bit for client in power save mode. TIM bit mask indicates to any sleeping listening stations if the AP has any buffered frames present. If enabled, the AP will always indicate to the connected client that there is a packet waiting in the AP, so it will help to prevent the client from entering a sleep state.
- **ac-vo:** Use Access Category (AC) Voice (VO) priority to send packets in the power save queue. AC VO is one of the highest classes/priority levels used to ensure quality of service (QoS). If enabled, when a client returns from a sleep state, the AP will send its buffered packet using a higher priority queue, instead of the normal priority queue.
- **no-obss-scan:** Do not put Overlapping Basic Service Set (OBSS), or high-noise (i.e. non-802.11), scan IE into a Beacon or Probe Response frame.
- **no-11b-rate:** Do not send frame using 11b data rate.
- **client-rate-follow:** Adapt transmitting PHY rate with receiving PHY rate from client. If enabled, the AP will integrate the current client's transmission PHY rate into its rate adaptation algorithm for transmitting.

## Configuring the broadcast packet suppression

You can use broadcast packet suppression to reduce the traffic on your WiFi networks. In addition, some broadcast packets are unnecessary or even potentially detrimental to the network and should be suppressed. To configure broadcast suppression for each virtual access point, enter the following commands:

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit <name>
set broadcast-suppression {dhcp-up | dhcp-down | dhcp-starvation | arp-known | arp-unknown | arp-reply | arp-poison | arp-proxy | netbios-ns | netbios-ds | ipv6 | all-other-mc | all-other-bc}
end
```

Broadcast suppression options	Description
dhcp-up	Suppress DHCP discovery and request packets broadcast by WiFi clients. Forward DHCP packets to the Ethernet uplink only. Prevent malicious WiFi clients from acting as DHCP servers. Default setting.

Broadcast suppression options	Description
<code>dhcp-down</code>	Suppress DHCP packets broadcast by the Ethernet downlink to WiFi clients. Prevent malicious WiFi clients from acting as DHCP servers.
<code>dhcp-starvation</code>	Suppress DHCP starvation attacks from malicious WiFi clients. Prevent malicious WiFi clients from depleting the DHCP address pool.
<code>arp-known</code>	Suppress ARP request packets broadcast to known WiFi clients. Instead, forward ARP packets as unicast packets to the known clients. Default setting.
<code>arp-unknown</code>	Suppress ARP request packets broadcast to unknown WiFi clients.
<code>arp-reply</code>	Suppress ARP reply packets broadcast by WiFi clients. Instead, forward the ARP packets as unicast packets to the clients with target MAC addresses.
<code>arp-poison</code>	Suppress ARP poison attacks from malicious WiFi clients. Prevent malicious WiFi clients from spoofing ARP packets.
<code>arp-proxy</code>	Suppress ARP request packets broadcast by the Ethernet downlink to known WiFi clients. Instead, send ARP reply packets to the Ethernet uplink, as a proxy for WiFi clients.  The <code>arp-known</code> option must be set for <code>arp-proxy</code> to work.
<code>netbios-ns</code>	Suppress NetBIOS name services packets with UDP port 137.
<code>netbios-ds</code>	Suppress NetBIOS datagram services packets with UDP port 138.
<code>ipv6</code>	Suppress IPv6 broadcast packets.
<code>all-other-mc</code>	Suppress multicast packets not covered by any of the specific options.
<code>all-other-bc</code>	Suppress broadcast packets not covered by any of the specific options.

The default configuration enables both the `dhcp-up` and `arp-known` options. The following example leaves the default settings in place and also configures a virtual access point to suppress:

- unnecessary DHCP down link broadcast packets
- broadcast ARP requests for unknown WiFi clients
- other broadcast packets not specifically identified

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit <name>
    set broadcast-suppression dhcp-up arp-known dhcp-down arp-unknown all-other-bc
  end
```

## Converting multicast streams to unicast

FortiOS provides a multicast enhancement option (disabled by default) that converts multicast streams to unicast and improves performance in WiFi networks. Multicast data, such as streaming audio or video, is sent at a low data rate in WiFi networks. A unicast stream is sent to each client at high data rate that makes more efficient use of air time. To enable multicast-to-unicast conversion, enter the following commands:

```
config wireless-controller vap
```

```
edit <vap_name>
    set multicast-enhance enable
end
```

## Ignoring weak or distant clients

Clients beyond the intended coverage area can have some impact on your high-density network. Your APs will respond to these clients' probe signals, consuming valuable air time. You can configure your WiFi network to ignore weak signals that most likely come from beyond the intended coverage area. The settings are available in the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap
    edit <vap_name>
        set probe-resp-suppression enable
        set probe-resp-threshold <level_int>
    end
```

**vap\_name** is the SSID name.

**probe-resp-threshold** is the signal strength in dBm below which the client is ignored. The range is -95 to -20dBm. The default level is -80dBm.

## Turning off the 802.11b protocol

By disabling support for the obsolete 802.11b protocol, you can reduce the air time that data frames occupy. These signals will now be sent at a minimum of 6 Mbps, instead of 1 Mbps. You can set this for each radio in the FortiAP profile, using the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit <name_string>
        config radio-1
            set powersave-optimize no-11b-rate
        end
    end
```

## Configuring data rates

Each of the 802.11 protocols supports several data rates. By disabling the lowest rates, air time is conserved, allowing the channel to serve more users. You can set rate control on the VAP level based on the number of spatial streams. You can configure data rates on up to 8 spatial streams under the VHT (802.11ac) and HE (802.11ax) standards.

The 802.11n and ac protocols are specified by the Modulation and Coding Scheme (MCS) Index and the number of spatial streams. Enabling MCS data rate with MCS index 9 will automatically enable data rate with MCS index 8.

Data rate commands	Example
<code>set rates-11ac-mcs-map</code>	For example, mcs5/1 is converted to 7 to represent VHT-MCS 0-7 for n spatial streams:

Data rate commands	Example
<p>Comma separated list of max supported VHT MCS for spatial streams 1 through 8, max supported mcs option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- spatial streams not supported.</li> <li>7 support for VHT-MCS 0-7 for n spatial streams.</li> <li>8 support for VHT-MCS 0-8 for n spatial streams.</li> <li>9 support for VHT-MCS 0-9 for n spatial streams.</li> <li>11 support for VHT-MCS 0-11 for n spatial streams.</li> </ul>	<pre>set rates-11ac-mcs-map "7"</pre>
<p>Comma separated list of max supported HE MCS for spatial streams 1 through 8, max supported mcs option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- spatial streams not supported.</li> <li>7 support for HE-MCS 0-7 for n spatial streams.</li> <li>9 support for HE-MCS 0-9 for n spatial streams.</li> <li>11 support for HE-MCS 0-11 for n spatial streams.</li> </ul>	<p>For example, mcs8/2 is converted to 9 to represent HE-MCS 0-9 for n spatial streams:</p> <pre>set rates-11ax-mcs-map "9"</pre>

### To set data rates in VAP

The following example configuration on a 4x4 AP shows how to set data rates for four streams where stream 5-8 are not supported. The numbers used in this example are separated by commas that correspond to MCS values in the 802.11ax and 802.11ac WiFi standards.

#### 1. Set data rates in the wireless controller VAP.

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "new_rate_test"
set ssid "newratetest"
set security wpa-personal
set passphrase ENC *****
set rates-11ac-mcs-map "7,8,9,8"
set rates-11ax-mcs-map "7,9,11,7"
next
end
```

#### 2. Apply the SSID to the wtp-profile.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "431F_rate"
config platform
set type 431F
set ddscan enable
end
```

```
set handoff-sta-thresh 55
set allowaccess https ssh snmp
config radio-1
    set band 802.11ax,n,g-only
    set vap-all manual
    set vaps "new_rate_test"
end
config radio-2
    set band 802.11ax-5G
    set vap-all manual
    set vaps "new_rate_test"
    set channel "108"
end
config radio-3
    set mode monitor
end
next
end
```

## Enabling the automatic TX power control

High-density deployments usually cover a small area that has many clients. Maximum AP signal power is usually not required. Reducing the power reduces interference between APs. Fortinet recommends that you use FortiAP automatic power control which can be set from the FortiAP profile.

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and edit the profile for your AP model.
2. For each radio, set **Transmit power mode** to **Auto** and set the minimum and maximum range for **Transmit power** levels.

The default range of 10 to 17 dBm is recommended.

## Enabling the frequency band load-balancing

In a high-density environment, it is important to make the best use of the two WiFi bands, 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz. The 5 GHz band has more non-overlapping channels and receives less interference from non-WiFi devices, but not all devices support it. Clients that are capable of 5 GHz operation should be encouraged to use 5 GHz rather than the 2.4 GHz band.

To load-balance the WiFi bands, you enable Frequency Handoff in the FortiAP profile. In the FortiGate GUI, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and edit the relevant profile to set Client Load Balancing to **Frequency Handoff**. Or, you can use the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit FAP221C-default
        set frequency-handoff enable
    end
```

The FortiGate WiFi controller continuously scans all clients in the area and records their signal strength (RSSI) on each band. When Frequency Handoff is enabled, the AP does not reply to clients on the 2.4 GHz band that have sufficient signal strength on the 5 GHz band. These clients can associate only on the 5 GHz band. Devices that support only 2.4 GHz receive replies and associate with the AP on the 2.4 GHz band.

## Setting the handoff RSSI threshold

The FortiAP applies load balancing to a client only if the client has a sufficient signal level on 5GHz. The minimum signal strength threshold is set in the FortiAP profile, but is accessible only through the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP221C-default
    set handoff-rssi 25
  end
```

`handoff-rssi` has a range of 20 to 30. RSSI is a relative measure; the higher the number, the stronger the signal.

## Enabling the AP load balancing

The performance of an AP degrades if it attempts to serve too many clients. In high-density environments, multiple access points are deployed with some overlap in their coverage areas. The WiFi controller can manage the association of new clients with APs to prevent overloading.

To load-balance between APs, enable AP Handoff in the FortiAP profile.

In the FortiGate GUI, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and edit the relevant profile to set Client Load Balancing to **AP Handoff**.

Or, you can use the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP221C-default
    set ap-handoff enable
  end
```

When an AP exceeds the threshold (the default is 30 clients), the overloaded AP does not reply to a new client that has a sufficient signal at another AP.

## Setting the AP load balance threshold

The thresholds for AP handoff are set in the FortiAP profile, but is accessible only through the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP221C-default
    set handoff-sta-thresh 30
    set handoff-rssi 25
  end
```

`handoff-sta-thresh` sets the number of clients at which AP load balancing begins. It has a range of 5 to 35.

`handoff-rssi` sets the minimum signal strength that a new client must have at an alternate AP for the overloaded AP to ignore the client. It has a range of 20 to 30. RSSI is a relative measure. The higher the number, the stronger the signal.

## Setting the Application Control feature

To prevent particular application types from consuming too much bandwidth, you can use the FortiOS Application Control feature.

1. Go to **Security Profiles > Application Control**. You can use the default profile or create a new one.
2. Click the category, select **Traffic Shaping** and then select the priority for the category.  
Repeat for each category to be controlled.
3. Select **Apply**.
4. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and edit your Firewall policy.
5. In the **Security Profiles** section, enable **Application Control** and select the security profile that you edited.
6. Click **OK**.

## Managing the FortiAP group and assigning a dynamic VLAN

You can create FortiAP groups to manage multiple APs at once. Grouping an AP enables you to apply specific profile settings and assign VLANs to all the APs in that group, simplifying the administrative workload. Each AP can belong to one group only.

To create a FortiAP group, navigate to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and click **Create New > Managed AP Group**.

In addition, VLANs can be assigned dynamically based on FortiAP groups. Dynamic VLAN assignment allows the same SSID to be deployed to many APs, avoiding the need to produce multiple SSIDs.

1. Navigate to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** to define an SSID.
2. Enable **VLAN Pooling** and select **Managed AP Group** to assign a VLAN ID to a specified group.

You can also choose other methods of assigning VLAN IDs:

- **Round Robin**: Assigns the next VLAN ID to each device as it is detected.
  - **Hash**: Always assigns the same VLAN ID to a specific device.
3. Under VLAN pooling, click **Create New** to enter the VLAN ID you want to assign and the AP group you want to apply the ID to.
  4. Click **OK** to save.

## Sharing tunnel SSIDs within a single managed FortiAP

This feature enables you to move a tunnel mode virtual AP (VAP) into a VDOM, similar to an interface/VLAN in VDOMs. FortiAP is registered into the root VDOM.

Within a customer VDOM, customer VAPs can be created or added. In the root VDOM, the customer VAP can be added to the registered FortiAP. Any necessary firewall rules and interfaces can be configured between the two VDOMs.

### Syntax

```
config wireless-controller global
  set wtp-share {enable | disable}
```

end

## Enabling the manual quarantine of devices on FortiAP (tunnel mode)



You can only quarantine an SSID that is in Tunnel Mode.

Quarantined MAC addresses are blocked on the connected FortiAP from the network and the LAN. When a tunnel VAP is created, a sub-interface named **wqtn** is automatically created under tunnel interface. This sub-interface is added under a software switch. When a host is put into quarantine VLAN, it will get its IP from the quarantine VLAN's DHCP server, and become part of the quarantined network.

### To enable quarantine - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select the SSID.
2. Enable **Quarantine Host**.
3. Click **OK**.

### To quarantine a wireless client- GUI

1. You can quarantine a client from multiple locations:
  - Go to **Dashboard > WiFi > Clients by FortiAP**.
  - Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WiFi Clients**.
2. Select the wireless client and then click **Quarantine**.

### To enable quarantine - CLI:

1. Under global quarantine settings, enable quarantine:
 

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit <name>
    set quarantine {enable | disable}
  next
end
```
2. Under virtual access point (VAP) settings, enable quarantine:
 

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit wifi-vap
    set ssid "Fortinet-psk"
    set security wpa2-only-personal
    set passphrase *****
    set quarantine enable
  next
end
```
3. Quarantine a wireless client. The example client has the MAC address b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72:
 

```
config user quarantine
  config targets
    edit "DESKTOP-Surface"
```



```
        config macs
            edit b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72
                set description "Surface"
            next
        end
    next
end
end
```

This feature consolidates previous CLI syntax for quarantining a host, so that the host does not need to be configured in multiple places (FortiAP and FortiSwitch). Host endpoints can be entered in a single place and the host will be quarantined throughout the access layer devices on the Fortinet Security Fabric.

### Syntax - Software Switch, DHCP, and User Quarantine

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "wqt.root"
        set vdom "root"
        set member "wqtn.26.AV-Qtn"
    next
end

config system dhcp server
    edit <id>
        set interface "AV-Qtn"
        config ip-range
            edit <id>
                set start-ip 10.111.0.2
                set end-ip 10.111.0.254
            next
        ...
    next

config user quarantine
    set quarantine {enable | disable}
end
```

To list stations in quarantine, use the following diagnose command:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c sta-qtn
```

## Locating a FortiAP with LED blinking

If you have an environment that contains numerous APs it can be difficult to locate a specific AP that you need to monitor. To help you locate specific APs, you can configure the AP lights to blink, making it easier to find.

### To start or stop LED blinking of a managed FortiAP, using the GUI:

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Right-click in the row of the device you want to control.
3. In the dialog box, scroll down to **LED Blink** and select **Start** or **Stop**.

The following models support LED blink control through the GUI, operating on FortiAP software 6.0.1, or later:

- FortiAP-112D, 221C, 223C, 224D, 320C, 321C
- FortiAP-S/W2

**To start or stop LED blinking of a managed FortiAP, using the CLI:**

```
execute wireless-controller led-blink <wtp-id> {on | on 10 | off}
```

The following models support LED blink control through the CLI, operating on FortiAP software 5.6.2, or later:

- FortiAP-112D, 221C, 223C, 224D, 320C, 321C
- FortiAP-S/W2

## Uploading a FortiAP image on the wireless controller

Using the CLI to upgrade the FortiAP image is the preferred method especially for large deployments. Use the following CLI command to upload the desired FortiAP image on the wireless controller:

```
execute wireless-controller upload-wtp-image
```

After entering the command, reboot the FortiAP devices. This feature allows the administrator to configure all FortiAP devices to download the image from the controller at join time.

### Syntax

```
config wireless-controller global
  set image-download {enable | disable}
end
```

To fine-tune this process, in order to deploy FortiAP image upgrades to a subset of devices for pilot testing, use the following command:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit <name>
    set image-download {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

## Configuring control message off-loading

Users can configure control message off-loading to optimize performance. This is especially useful in environments where the AP count is from 300 to 350 (with a device count between 1500 and 3000), where existing users are disconnected and unable to reauthenticate due to high CPU usage. This feature includes aeroscout enhancements.

### Syntax

```
config wireless-controller global
```

```

    set control-message-offload {evp-frame | areoscout-tag | ap-list | sta-list | sta-cap-
        list | stats | aeroscout-mu}
end

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit <name>
        set control-message-offload {enable | disable}
        config lbs
            set ekahau-blink-mode {enable | disable}
            set aeroscout {enable | disable}
            set aeroscout-server-ip <address>
            set aeroscout-server-port <UDP listening port>
            set aeroscout-mu {enable | disable}
        end
    end
end

```

## Enabling Dynamic Radio Mode Assignment (DRMA)

In deployments with a high AP density, there can be redundant coverage and strong radio interference. Dynamic Radio Mode Assignment (DRMA) allows FortiAP devices to calculate the Network Coverage Factor (NCF) based on radio interference and reassign the AP mode.

When DRMA is enabled in the WTP profile or on the specific AP, the APs run in automatic mode. The AC assigns the radio mode to the APs based on the DRMA NCF value that is calculated at each configured interval.

The NCF value is calculated based on overlapping coverage in a radio coverage area. If a radio is determined to be redundant based on the configured NCF threshold, then it switches from AP mode to monitor mode. When the NCF is next calculated, if the value is below the threshold then the radio switches back to AP mode.

### To configure the DRMA interval

```

config wireless-controller timers
    set drma-interval <integer>
end

```

drma-interval	Dynamic radio mode assignment (DRMA) schedule interval, in minutes (1 - 1440, default = 60).
---------------	--

### To configure DRMA in a WTP profile

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit <profile>
        config <2.4Ghz radio>
            set drma enable
            set drma-sensitivity {low | medium | high}
        end
    next
end

```

DRMA is disabled by default. The sensitivity options are:

low	Consider a radio as redundant when its NCF is 100% (default).
medium	Consider a radio as redundant when its NCF is 95%.
high	Consider a radio as redundant when its NCF is 90%.

### To manually configure DRMA on a specific AP device

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit <id>
    config <2.4Ghz radio>
      set drma-manual-mode {ap | monitor | ncf | ncf-peek}
    end
  next
end
```

Manual mode options include:

ap	Set the radio to AP mode.
monitor	Set the radio to monitor mode.
ncf	Select and set the radio mode based on the NCF score (default).
ncf-peek	Select the radio mode based on the NCF score, but do not apply it.

## RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) support

The CoA feature enables the FortiGate to receive a client disconnect message from the RADIUS server. This is used to disconnect clients when their time, credit or bandwidth had been used up. Enable this on the RADIUS server using the CLI:

```
config user radius
  edit <name>
    set radius-coa enable
  end
```

# Wireless network protection

This section includes the following topics:

- [Wireless Intrusion Detection System on page 232](#)
- [WiFi data channel encryption on page 234](#)
- [Protected Management Frames and Opportunistic Key Caching support on page 235](#)
- [Bluetooth Low Energy scan on page 235](#)
- [Preventing local bridge traffic from reaching the LAN on page 236](#)
- [FortiAP-S and FortiAP-U bridge mode security profiles on page 237](#)
- [DHCP snooping and option-82 data insertion on page 238](#)
- [DHCP address enforcement on page 239](#)
- [Disabling console port access on page 239](#)
- [Configuring 802.1X supplicant on LAN on page 240](#)
- [Suppressing phishing SSID on page 243](#)

## Wireless Intrusion Detection System

The FortiGate Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS) monitors wireless traffic for a wide range of security threats by detecting and reporting on possible intrusion attempts. When an attack is detected the FortiGate unit records a log message.

You can create a WIDS profile to enable these types of intrusion detection:

- **Asleep Attack**—ASLEAP is a tool used to perform attacks against LEAP authentication.
- **Association Frame Flooding**—A Denial of Service attack using a large number of association requests. The default detection threshold is 30 requests in 10 seconds.
- **Authentication Frame Flooding**—A Denial of Service attack using a large number of association requests. The default detection threshold is 30 requests in 10 seconds.
- **Broadcasting De-authentication**—This is a type of Denial of Service attack. A flood of spoofed de-authentication frames forces wireless clients to de-authenticate, then re-authenticate with their AP.
- **EAPOL Packet Flooding**—Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL) packets are used in WPA and WPA2 authentication. Flooding the AP with these packets can be a denial of service attack. Several types of EAPOL packets are detected: EAPOL-FAIL, EAPOL-LOGOFF, EAPOL-START, EAPOL-SUCC.
- **Invalid MAC OUI**—Some attackers use randomly-generated MAC addresses. The first three bytes of the MAC address are the Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI), administered by IEEE. Invalid OUIs are logged.
- **Long Duration Attack**—To share radio bandwidth, WiFi devices reserve channels for brief periods of time. Excessively long reservation periods can be used as a denial of service attack. You can set a threshold between 1000 and 32 767 microseconds. The default is 8200.
- **Null SSID Probe Response**—When a wireless client sends out a probe request, the attacker sends a response with a null SSID. This causes many wireless cards and devices to stop responding.
- **Spoofed De-authentication**—Spoofed de-authentication frames are a denial of service attack. They cause all clients to disconnect from the AP.

- **Weak WEP IV Detection**—A primary means of cracking WEP keys is by capturing 802.11 frames over an extended period of time and searching for patterns of WEP initialization vectors (IVs) that are known to be weak. WIDS detects known weak WEP IVs in on-air traffic.
- **Wireless Bridge**—WiFi frames with both the fromDS and ToDS fields set indicate a wireless bridge. This will also detect a wireless bridge that you intentionally configured in your network.

You can enable WIDS by enabling and selecting a WIDS Profile on a designated radio from a FortiAP profile.

### To create a WIDS Profile - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WIDS Profiles**.
2. Select a profile to edit or select **Create New**.
3. Under **Intrusion Detection Settings**, enable the intrusion types you want protect against.
4. When you are finished, click **OK**.

Once you create a WIDS profile, you can enable WIDS Profile on a specified radio under a FortiAP profile.

### To create a WIDS Profile - CLI

```
config wireless-controller wids-profile
  edit "example-wids-profile"
    set ap-scan enable
    ...
  next
end
```

### To apply a WIDS Profile to a FortiAP - CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "example-FAP-profile"
    config platform
      set type <FAP-model-number>
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    set ap-country US
    config radio-1
      set band 802.11n
      set wids-profile "example-wids-profile"
      set vap-all disable
    end
    config radio-2
      set band 802.11ac
      set vap-all disable
    end
  next
end
```

## Rogue AP detection

The WIDS profile includes settings for detection of unauthorized (rogue) access points in your wireless network. For more information, see [Monitoring rogue APs on page 245](#).

## WIDS client de-authentication rate for DoS attacks

As part of mitigating a Denial of Service (DoS) attack, the FortiGate sends de-authentication packets to unknown clients. In an aggressive attack, this de-authentication activity can prevent the processing of packets from valid clients. A WIDS Profile option in the CLI limits the de-authentication rate.

```
config wireless-controller wids-profile
  edit default
    set deauth-unknown-src-thresh <1-65535>
  end
```

The value set is a measure of the number of de-authorizations per second. 0 means no limit. The default is 10.

## WiFi data channel encryption

Optionally, you can apply DTLS encryption to the data channel between the wireless controller and FortiAP units to enhance security.

There are data channel encryption settings on both the FortiGate unit and the FortiAP units. At both ends, you can enable Clear Text, DTLS encryption, or both. The settings must agree or the FortiAP unit will not be able to join the WiFi network. By default, both Clear Text and DTLS-encrypted communication are enabled on the FortiAP unit, allowing the FortiGate setting to determine whether data channel encryption is used. If the FortiGate unit also enables both Clear Text and DTLS, Clear Text is used.

Data channel encryption settings are located in the FortiAP profile. By default, only Clear Text is supported.



Data channel encryption is software-based and can affect performance. Verify that the system meets your performance requirements with encryption enabled.

---

## Configuring encryption on a FortiGate unit

You can use the CLI to configure data channel encryption.

### To enable encryption

In the CLI, the `wireless wtp-profile` command contains a new field, `dtls-policy`, with options `clear-text` and `dtls-enabled`. To enable encryption in profile1 for example, enter:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit profile1
    set dtls-policy dtls-enabled
  end
```

## Configuring encryption on a FortiAP unit

The FortiAP unit has its own settings for data channel encryption.

**To enable CAPWAP encryption - FortiAP GUI**

1. On the **System Information** page, in **WTP Configuration > AC Data Channel Security**, select one of:
  - Clear Text
  - DTLS Enabled
  - Clear Text or DTLS Enabled (default)
2. Select **Apply**.

**To enable encryption - FortiAP CLI**

You can set the data channel encryption using the `AP_DATA_CHAN_SEC` variable: 'clear', or 'ipsec', or 'dtls'.

For example, to set security to DTLS and then save the setting, enter:

```
cfg -a AP_DATA_CHAN_SEC=dtls
cfg -c
```

## Protected Management Frames and Opportunistic Key Caching support

Protected Management Frames (PMF) protect some types of management frames like deauthorization, disassociation and action frames. This feature, now mandatory on WiFi certified 802.11ac devices, prevents attackers from sending plain deauthorization/disassociation frames to disrupt or tear down a connection/association. PMF is a Wi-Fi Alliance specification based on IEEE 802.11w.

To facilitate faster client roaming, you can enable Opportunistic Key Caching (OKC) on your WiFi network. When a client associates with an AP, its PMK identifier is sent to all other APs on the network. This eliminates the need for an already-authenticated client to repeat the full EAP exchange process when it roams to another AP on the same network.

Use of PMF and OKC on an SSID is configurable only in the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit <vap_name>
    set pmf {disable | enable | optional}
    set pmf-assoc-comeback-timeout <integer>
    set pmf-sa-query-retry-timeout <integer>
    set okc {disable | enable}
  next
end
```

When `pmf` is set to `optional`, it is considered enabled, but will allow clients that do not use PMF. When `pmf` is set to `enable`, PMF is required by all clients.

## Bluetooth Low Energy scan

The FortiGate can configure FortiAP Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) scan, incorporating Google's BLE beacon profile known as Eddystone, used to identify groups of devices and individual devices. To see which FortiAP models support BLE scanning, refer to the [FortiAP Data Sheets](#).

Use the following syntax to configure BLE profiles and BLE report intervals, and assign BLE profiles to WTP profiles.



### Configure BLE profiles - CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller ble-profile
  edit <name>
    set comment <comment>
    set advertising {ibeacon | eddystone-uid | eddystone-url}
    set ibeacon-uuid <uuid>
    set major-id <0 - 65535> - (default = 1000)
    set minor-id <0 - 65535> - (default = 1000)
    set eddystone-namespace <10-byte namespace>
    set eddystone-instance <device id>
    set eddystone-url <url>
    set txpower <0 - 12> - (default = 0)
    set beacon-interval <40 - 3500> - (default = 100)
    set ble-scanning {enable | disable} - (default = disable)
  next
end
```

Note that `txpower` determines the transmit power level on a scale of 0-12:

<b>0:</b> -21 dBm	<b>1:</b> -18 dBm	<b>2:</b> -15 dBm	<b>3:</b> -12 dBm	<b>4:</b> -9 dBm
<b>5:</b> -6 dBm	<b>6:</b> -3 dBm	<b>7:</b> 0 dBm	<b>8:</b> 1 dBm	<b>9:</b> 2 dBm
<b>10:</b> 3 dBm	<b>11:</b> 4 dBm	<b>12:</b> 5 dBm		

### Configure BLE report intervals - CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set ble-scan-report-intv - (default = 30 sec)
end
```

### Assign BLE profiles to WTP profiles - CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <name>
    set ble-profile <name>
  next
end
```

## Preventing local bridge traffic from reaching the LAN

The following command can be enabled so that when a client connects to a VAP, and its traffic is not tunneled to the controller, the admin can control whether the client can access the local network.

Note that this entry is only available when `local-standalone-nat` is set to enable.

#### Syntax:

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit <name>
    set local-lan {allow | deny}
```

```
next
end
```

## FortiAP-S and FortiAP-U bridge mode security profiles

If a bridge mode SSID is configured for a managed FortiAP-S or FortiAP-U, you can add security profiles to the wireless controller configuration that allows you to apply the following security profile features to the traffic over the bridge SSID:

- AntiVirus
- Scan Botnets
- Intrusion Prevention
- Application Control
- Web Filter

### Configure security profiles - GUI

1. Go to **System > Feature Visibility** to enable the Security Features you want to apply to your SSID, and then click **Apply**.

You can enable the AntiVirus, Application Control, Intrusion Prevention, and Web Filter features.

2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select the bridge mode SSID assigned to the FortiAP Profile that you want to configure.

3. In the selected SSID, enable **Security Profiles** option.

4. Enable the security profiles you want to apply to the SSID. You can choose from **AntiVirus**, **Web Filter**, **Application Control**, and **Intrusion Prevention**.

You can either use or edit an existing default profile, or click **Create** to make a new one. To see what each default profile does, hover your mouse over the profile for a brief description.

5. In the **Scan Botnets** field, select if you want to **Block** or **Monitor** botnets.

Botnet scanning is enabled by default. To disable this feature, select **Disable**.

6. Enable or disable **Logging**.

7. Click **OK** to save your SSID changes.

Once you save your changes, you can check to the SSID page to see which security profiles are attached to an SSID in the Security Profiles column.

### Configure security profiles - CLI

You can configure security profiles on managed FortiAP-S and FortiAP-U under `config wireless-controller vap`, after `local-bridging` and `utm-status` are set to enable.

To view all available profiles that you can assign, type "?". For example, "`set ips-sensor ?`".

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "utm_ssdl"
    set ssid "utm_ssdl"
    set local-bridging enable
    set utm-status enable
    set ips-sensor "wifi-default"
    set application-list "wifi-default"
    set antivirus-profile "wifi-default"
    set webfilter-profile "wifi-default"
```

```
set scan-botnet-connections monitor
next
end
```

### Debug configurations

To debug `wireless-controller` configurations related to security profiles, use the following diagnose command:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac_hlp
```

## DHCP snooping and option-82 data insertion

Commands are available to enable or disable (by default) DHCP option-82 data insertion for wireless access points. DHCP snooping is used to prevent rogue DHCP servers from offering IP addresses to DHCP clients. This feature adds the Circuit ID and Remote ID sub-option onto the DHCP packets, which helps the user identify which FortiAP makes the request and for which SSID it requests.

### Syntax

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit wifi
set dhcp-option82-insertion {enable | disable}
set dhcp-option82-circuit-id-insertion {style-1 | style-2 | Style-3 | disable}
set dhcp-option82-remote-id-insertion {style-1 | disable}
next
end
```

The `circuit-id` option includes information specific to the circuit the request came from. This option is an identifier that identifies the FortiAP.

The `remote-id` option includes information on the remote host end of the circuit. This option usually contains information that identifies the station.

Options	Description
Circuit-ID style-1	An ASCII string composed of AP-MAC;SSID;SSID-TYPE
Circuit-ID style-2	An ASCII string composed of AP-MAC
Circuit-ID Style-3	An ASCII string composed of NETWORK-TYPE:WTPPROF-NAME:VLAN:SSID:AP-MODEL:AP-HOSTNAME:AP-MAC
Remote-ID Style-1	An ASCII string composed of the Station-MAC



This feature is only supported in Bridge mode, Tunnel mode, and Mesh SSIDs.

## DHCP address enforcement

DHCP address enforcement ensures that clients who connect must complete the DHCP process to obtain an IP address. Otherwise they are disconnected from the SSID. This prevents access from users using static addresses which may conflict with the DHCP address scheme, or users that fail to obtain DHCP IP assignment.

### To configure DHCP address enforcement

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "test-tunnel"
    set ssid "test-tunnel"
    set passphrase *****
    set schedule "always"
    set dhcp-address-enforcement enable
  next
end
```



By default, `dhcp-address-enforcement` is set to disabled.

---

## Disabling console port access

If your FortiAP is located in an easily accessible location, you can disable serial console port access to prevent intruders from physically accessing the FortiAP. By default, console login is enabled in WTP profiles.

### To disable console login

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <profile>
    set console-login disable
  next
end
```



When the console access is changed, all managed FortiAPs using the profile are rebooted.

---

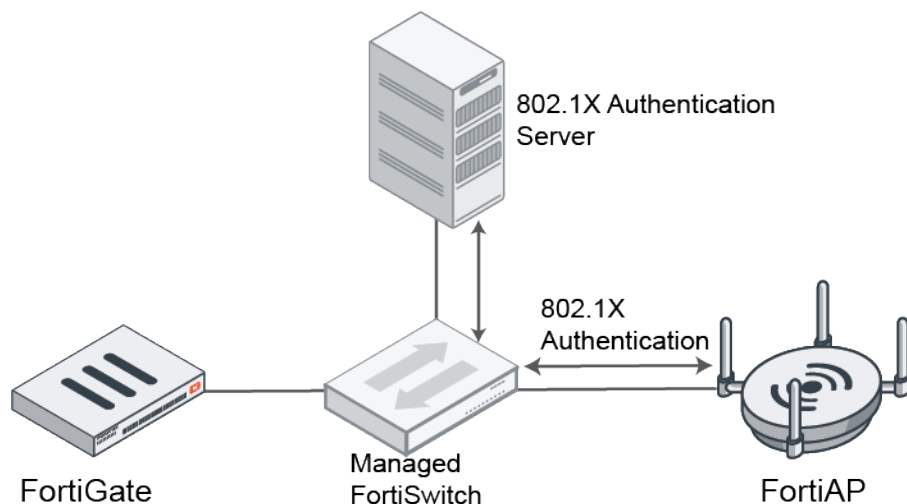
You can confirm console login is disabled by logging into the FortiAP with the SSH connection.

```
FortiAP-433F # wcfg | grep console-login
console-login : disabled
```

## Configuring 802.1X supplicant on LAN

When the FortiAP is connected to a switch port with 802.1x authentication enabled, the FortiAP can be configured to act as a 802.1x supplicant to authenticate against the server using EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS or EAP-PEAP.

When the port is configured for 802.1x authentication, the switch does not allow any traffic other than 802.1x traffic to pass through the port until the device connected to the port authenticates successfully. Once the authentication is successful, FortiAP packets can pass through the switch port and join the FortiGate.



### To enable 802.1X authentication - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and select the profile you want to enable 802.1X authentication on.
2. Enable **802.1X authentication** and select the authentication method:
  - All
  - EAP-FAST
  - EAP-TLS
  - EAP-PEAP

**Edit FortiAP Profile**

Name	431F		
Comments	Write a comment... 0/255		
Platform	FAP431F		
Indoor / Outdoor	Default (Indoor) Override		
Country / Region	Canada		
AP login password	Set Leave Unchanged		
Administrative access	<input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS	<input type="checkbox"/> SSH	<input type="checkbox"/> SNMP
Client load balancing	<input type="checkbox"/> Frequency Handoff	<input type="checkbox"/> AP Handoff	
802.1X authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Type	All EAP-FAST EAP-TLS <b>EAP-PEAP</b>		
Username	tester		
Password	••••••••		

**Split Tunneling**

Include Local Subnet ☐

Split Tunneling Subnet(s) ☐

**OK** **Cancel**

3. Enter a **Username** and **Password** for authentication.
4. Click **OK** to save.

### To enable 802.1X authentication on a FortiGate managed FortiAP - CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "431F"
config platform
set type 431F
set ddscan enable
end
set handoff-sta-thresh 55
set ap-country CA
config radio-1
set band 802.11ax,n,g-only
end
config radio-2
set band 802.11ax-5G
end
config radio-3
set mode monitor
end
set wan-port-auth 802.1x
```

```

set wan-port-auth-username "tester"
set wan-port-auth-password ENC *****
set wan-port-auth-methods EAP-PEAP
next
end

```



The default setting for wan-port-auth is "none" and the default setting for wan-port-auth-methods is "all"

### To enable 802.1X authentication on a FortiAP not managed by FortiGate - CLI

```

FortiAP-431F # cfg -a WAN_1X_ENABLE=1
cfg -a WAN_1X_USERID=tester
cfg -a WAN_1X_PASSWD=12345678
cfg -a WAN_1X_METHOD=3

```

WAN_1X_ENABLE	Enable or Disable WAN port 802.1x supplicant: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0: Disabled</li> <li>• 1: Enabled</li> </ul> The default setting is 0.
WAN_1X_USERID	WAN port 802.1x supplicant user.
WAN_1X_PASSWD	WAN port 802.1x supplicant password.
WAN_1X_METHOD	Select an EAP method for the WAN port 802.1x supplicant: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0: EAP-ALL</li> <li>• 1: EAP-FAST</li> <li>• 2: EAP-TLS</li> <li>• 3: EAP-PEAP</li> </ul> The default setting is 0.

### To upload certificates via the FortiAP CLI:

```

cw_diag -c wan1x [<get-ca-cert|get-client-cert|get-private-key> <tftp server IP> <file name>]
FortiAP-431F # cw_diag -c wan1x get-ca-cert 172.16.200.100 ca.cert.pem
Get "ca.cert.pem" from tftp server OK.

```

### To verify a FortiAP is successfully authenticated from 802.1x radius

```

FortiAP-431F # cw_diag -c wan1x
WAN port 802.1x supplicant:
EAP methods : EAP-PEAP
Username : tester
PasswordENC : *****
CA CERT : users
Client CERT : default
Private Key : default
Port Status : Authorized

```

## Suppressing phishing SSID

You can enable FortiAPs to log and suppress phishing SSIDs. Phishing SSIDs are defined as:

- An SSID defined on FortiGate that is broadcast from an uncontrolled AP.
- A pre-defined pattern for an offending SSID pattern. For example, you can define any SSID that contains your company name to be a phishing SSID.

### To configure phishing SSID functions

```
config wireless-controller setting
    set phishing-ssid-detect enable|disable
    set fake-ssid-action log|suppress
    config offending-ssid
        edit 1
            set ssid-pattern "OFFENDING*"
            set action log|suppress
        next
    end
end
```

<code>set phishing-ssid-detect enable disable</code>	Enable or disable the phishing SSID detection function. The default is <code>enable</code> .
<code>set fake-ssid-action log suppress</code>	Specify the FortiGate action after detecting a fake SSID. The default is <code>log</code> and can be set to either one or both.
<code>set ssid-pattern "OFFENDING*"</code>	Specify the criteria to match an offending SSID. This example shows all SSID names with a leading string <code>OFFENDING</code> (not case-sensitive).
<code>set action log suppress</code>	Specify the FortiGate action after detecting the offending SSID pattern entry. The default setting is <code>log</code> and can be set to either one or both.

### Log examples

#### WiFi event log sample for fake SSID detection

The following is a sample of the log that is generated when a fake SSID is first detected:

```
1: date=2019-03-01 time=14:53:23 logid="0104043567" type="event" subtype="wireless"
    level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1551480803 logdesc="Fake AP detected" ssid="CORP_
WIFI_ACCESS" bssid="08:5b:0e:18:1b:d0" aptype=0 rate=130 radioband="802.11n-5G"
channel=149 action="fake-ap-detected" manuf="Fortinet, Inc." security="WPA2 Personal"
encryption="AES" signal=-41 noise=-95 live=173397 age=0 onwire="no"
detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A" apscan="N/A" sndetected="FP321C3X15001615"
radioiddetected=1 stacount=0 snclosest="FP321C3X15001615" radioidclosest=1 apstatus=0
msg="Detected Fake AP CORP_WIFI_ACCESS 08:5b:0e:18:1b:d0 chan 149 live 173397 age 0"
```

The following is a sample of the log that is periodically generated when a fake SSID is continuously detected:

```
1: date=2019-03-01 time=14:58:53 logid="0104043568" type="event" subtype="wireless"
    level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1551481133 logdesc="Fake AP on air" ssid="CORP_
WIFI_ACCESS" bssid="08:5b:0e:18:1b:d0" aptype=0 rate=130 radioband="802.11n-5G"
channel=149 action="fake-ap-on-air" manuf="Fortinet, Inc." security="WPA2 Personal"
encryption="AES" signal=-41 noise=-95 live=173728 age=330 onwire="no"
detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A" apscan="N/A" sndetected="N/A" radioiddetected=0
```



```
stacount=0 snclosest="FP321C3X15001615" radioidclosest=1 apstatus=0 msg="Fake AP On-
air CORP_WIFI_ACCESS 08:5b:0e:18:1b:d0 chan 149 live 173728 age 330"
```

## WiFi event log sample for fake SSID suppression

The following is a sample of the log that is generated when a fake SSID is suppressed:

```
1: date=2019-03-01 time=14:53:23 logid="0104043569" type="event" subtype="wireless"
  level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1551480803 logdesc="Rogue AP suppressed"
  ssid="CORP_WIFI_ACCESS" bssid="08:5b:0e:18:1b:d0" aptype=0 rate=130
  radioband="802.11n-5G" channel=149 action="rogue-ap-suppressed" manuf="Fortinet, Inc."
  security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" signal=-41 noise=-95 live=173397 age=0
  onwire="no" detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A" apscan="N/A" sndetected="N/A"
  radioiddetected=0 stacount=0 snclosest="FP321C3X15001615" radioidclosest=1 apstatus=0
  msg="AP CORP_WIFI_ACCESS 08:5b:0e:18:1b:d0 chan 149 live 173397 age 0"
```

## WiFi event log sample for offending SSID detection

The following a sample of the log that is generated when an offending SSID is first detected:

```
1: date=2019-03-01 time=14:53:33 logid="0104043619" type="event" subtype="wireless"
  level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1551480811 logdesc="Offending AP detected"
  ssid="OFFENDING_SSID" bssid="1a:5b:0e:b5:f3:bf" aptype=0 rate=130 radioband="802.11n-
  5G" channel=153 action="offending-ap-detected" manuf="Fortinet, Inc." security="WPA2
  Personal" encryption="AES" signal=-41 noise=-95 live=173406 age=8 onwire="no"
  detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A" apscan="N/A" sndetected="FP321C3X15001615"
  radioiddetected=1 stacount=0 snclosest="FP321C3X15001615" radioidclosest=1 apstatus=0
  msg="Detected Offending AP OFFENDING_SSID 1a:5b:0e:b5:f3:bf chan 153 live 173406 age
  8"
```

The following is a sample of a log that is periodically generated when an offending SSID is continuously detected:

```
1: date=2019-03-01 time=14:55:54 logid="0104043620" type="event" subtype="wireless"
  level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1551480952 logdesc="Offending AP on air"
  ssid="OFFENDING_SSID_TEST" bssid="9a:5b:0e:18:1b:d0" aptype=0 rate=130
  radioband="802.11n-5G" channel=149 action="offending-ap-on-air" manuf="N/A"
  security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" signal=-41 noise=-95 live=173548 age=150
  onwire="no" detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A" apscan="N/A" sndetected="N/A"
  radioiddetected=0 stacount=0 snclosest="FP321C3X15001615" radioidclosest=1 apstatus=0
  msg="Offending AP On-air OFFENDING_SSID_TEST 9a:5b:0e:18:1b:d0 chan 149 live 173548
  age 150"
```

## WiFi event log sample for offending SSID suppression

The following is a sample of the log that is generated when an offending SSID is suppressed:

```
1: date=2019-03-01 time=14:53:33 logid="0104043569" type="event" subtype="wireless"
  level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1551480811 logdesc="Rogue AP suppressed"
  ssid="OFFENDING_SSID" bssid="1a:5b:0e:b5:f3:bf" aptype=0 rate=130 radioband="802.11n-
  5G" channel=153 action="rogue-ap-suppressed" manuf="Fortinet, Inc." security="WPA2
  Personal" encryption="AES" signal=-41 noise=-95 live=173406 age=8 onwire="no"
  detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A" apscan="N/A" sndetected="N/A" radioiddetected=0
  stacount=0 snclosest="FP321C3X15001615" radioidclosest=1 apstatus=0 msg="AP OFFENDING_
  SSID 1a:5b:0e:b5:f3:bf chan 153 live 173406 age 8"
```

# Wireless network monitoring

This section includes topics related to monitoring your wireless network.

- [Monitoring wireless health and clients on page 245](#)
- [Monitoring rogue APs on page 245](#)
- [Suppressing rogue APs on page 251](#)
- [Monitoring wireless clients on page 252](#)
- [Monitoring application usage for clients connected to bridge mode SSIDs on page 260](#)
- [Monitoring FortiAP with SNMP on page 262](#)
- [Monitoring FortiAP temperatures on page 266](#)
- [Enabling spectrum analysis on page 266](#)
- [Disable dedicated scanning on FortiAP F-Series profiles on page 272](#)

## Monitoring wireless health and clients

You can see an overview of your FortiGate or FortiWiFi unit by navigating to **Dashboard > WiFi**. The WiFi dashboard provides a comprehensive view of the health of your network's wireless infrastructure.

The following widgets are displayed on the dashboard:

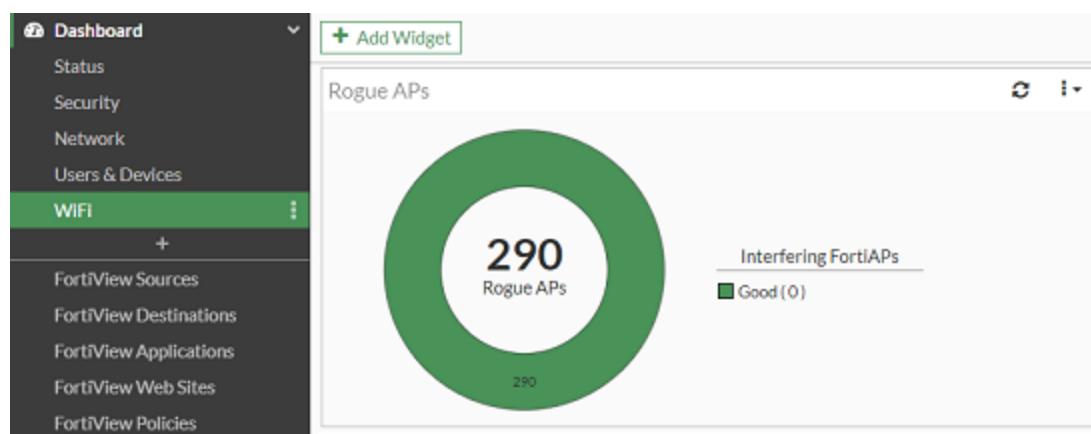
Dashboard widget	Description
<b>Channel Utilization</b>	Monitor FortiAPs per radio channel utilization.
<b>Clients By FortiAP</b>	Monitor the number of clients per FortiAP.
<b>FortiAP Status</b>	Monitor FortiAP status.
<b>Historical Clients</b>	Real-time number of WiFi clients over the selected time frame.
<b>Interfering APs</b>	Monitor FortiAPs that are reporting interfering APs.
<b>Login Failures</b>	Monitor WiFi login failures.
<b>Rogue APs</b>	Monitor rogue APs.
<b>Signal Strength</b>	Monitor the signal strength of WiFi clients.

To add a new widget, click **+ Add Widget** and select from a list of predefined widget categories.

## Monitoring rogue APs

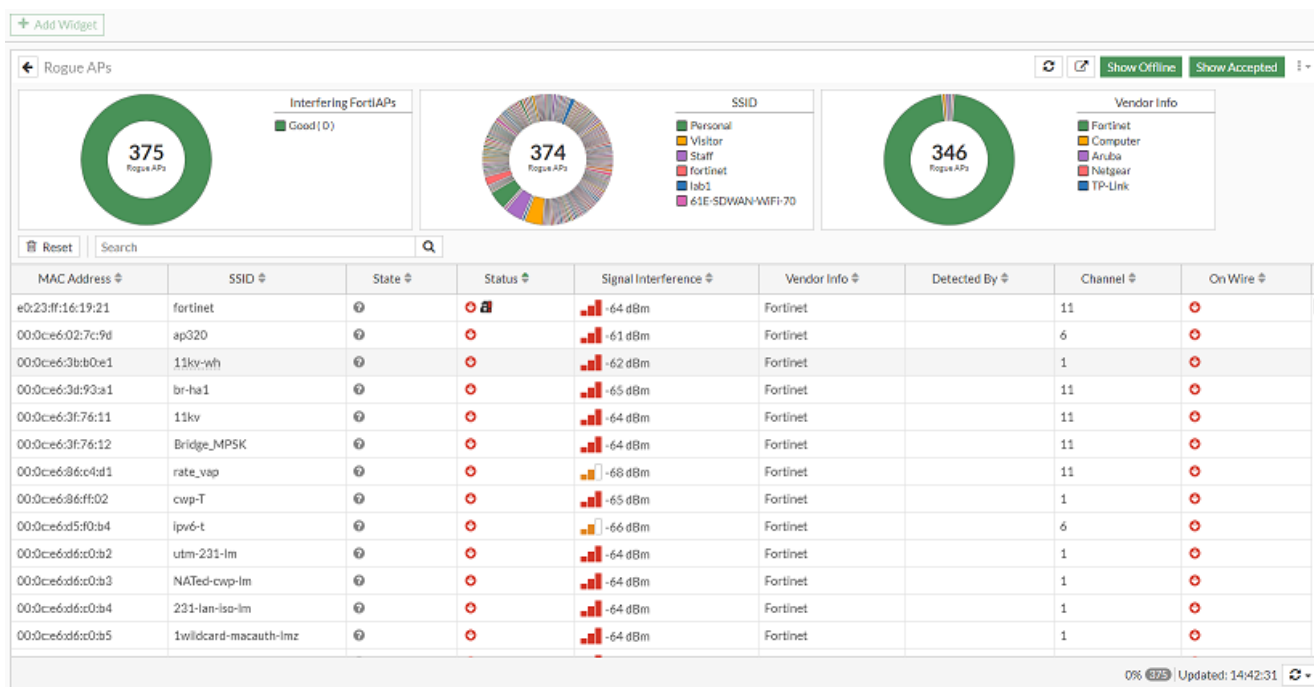
The access point radio equipment can scan for other available access points, either as a dedicated monitor or in idle periods during AP operation.

To see all the rogue APs detected by your managed FortiAP or FortiWiFi unit, go to **Dashboard > WiFi > Rogue APs**.



The Rogue AP widget shows three charts containing rogue AP statistic information in different categories.

- The Interfering FortiAPs chart shows the amount of rogue APs detected by each managed FortiAP unit or FortiWiFi local radio.
- The SSID chart shows the amount of SSID names detected as rogue APs.
- The Vendor Info chart shows the vendor information of the detected rogue APs.



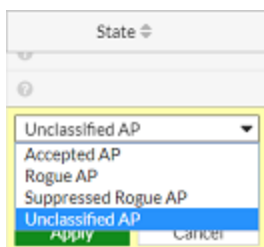
All the rogue APs are listed in a table, where you can mark each one as either Accepted or Rogue access points. You can click the **Show Offline** or **Show Accepted** button to toggle views for seeing offline rogue APs and accepted rogue APs.

Column Name	Description
MAC Address	The MAC address of the Wireless interface.

Column Name	Description
<b>SSID</b>	The wireless service set identifier (SSID) or network name for the wireless interface.
<b>State</b>	<p>✔ Accepted AP — Use this status for APs that are an authorized part of your network or are neighboring APs that are not a security threat. To see accepted APs in the list, select <b>Show Accepted</b>.</p> <p>🔒 Rogue AP — Use this status for unauthorized APs that the <b>On-wire</b> status indicates are attached to your wired networks.</p> <p>🚫 Suppressed Rogue AP — Use this status to suppress unauthorized APs.</p> <p>❓ Unclassified — This is the initial status of a discovered AP. You can change an AP back to unclassified if you have mistakenly marked it as Rogue or Accepted.</p>
<b>Online Status</b>	<p>📶 Active AP</p> <p>📴 Inactive AP</p> <p>📶 Active ad-hoc WiFi device</p> <p>📴 Inactive ad-hoc WiFi device</p>
<b>Signal Interference</b>	The relative signal strength of the AP. Hover over the symbol to view the signal-to-noise ratio.
<b>Vendor Info</b>	The name of the vendor.
<b>Detected By</b>	The name or serial number of the AP unit that detected the signal.
<b>Channel</b>	The wireless radio channel that the access point uses.
<b>On-wire</b>	A green up-arrow indicates a suspected rogue, based on the on-wire detection technique. A red down-arrow indicates AP is not a suspected rogue.
<b>Security Type</b>	The type of security currently being used.
<b>First Seen</b>	How long ago this AP was first detected.
<b>Last Seen</b>	How long ago this AP was last detected.
<b>Rate</b>	Data rate in bps.

## Changing a rogue AP state

1. In the table of rogue APs, select the AP you want and hover over the **State** column until an **Edit** icon appears.
2. Click the **Edit** icon and select a state from the drop-down list.



3. Click **Apply**.

You can use this to suppress rogue APs, see [Suppressing rogue APs on page 251](#).

## On-wire rogue AP detection technique

Other APs that are available in the same area as your own APs are not necessarily rogues. A neighboring AP that has no connection to your network might cause interference, but it is not a security threat. A rogue AP is an unauthorized AP connected to your wired network. This can enable unauthorized access. When rogue AP detection is enabled, the **On-wire** column in the **Rogue APs** widget shows a green up-arrow on detected rogues.

Rogue AP monitoring of WiFi client traffic builds a table of WiFi clients and the Access Points that they are communicating through. The FortiGate unit also builds a table of MAC addresses that it sees on the LAN. The FortiGate unit's on-wire correlation engine constantly compares the MAC addresses seen on the LAN to the MAC addresses seen on the WiFi network.

There are two methods of Rogue AP on-wire detection operating simultaneously: Exact MAC address match and MAC adjacency.

### Exact MAC address match

If the same MAC address is seen on the LAN and on the WiFi network, this means that the wireless client is connected to the LAN. If the AP that the client is using is not authorized in the FortiGate unit configuration, that AP is deemed an 'on-wire' rogue. This scheme works for non-NAT rogue APs.

### MAC adjacency

If an access point is also a router, it applies NAT to WiFi packets. This can make rogue detection more difficult. However, an AP's WiFi interface MAC address is usually in the same range as its wired MAC address. So, the MAC adjacency rogue detection method matches LAN and WiFi network MAC addresses that are within a defined numerical distance of each other. By default, the MAC adjacency value is 7. If the AP for these matching MAC addresses is not authorized in the FortiGate unit configuration, that AP is deemed an 'on-wire' rogue.

## Limitations

On-wire rogue detection has some limitations. There must be at least one WiFi client connected to the suspect AP and continuously sending traffic. If the suspect AP is a router, its WiFi MAC address must be very similar to its Ethernet port MAC address.

## Logging

Information about detected rogue APs is logged and uploaded to your FortiAnalyzer unit, if you have one. By default, rogue APs generate an alert level log, unknown APs generate a warning level log. This log information can help you with PCI-DSS compliance requirements.

## Rogue AP scanning as a background activity

Each WiFi radio can perform monitoring of radio channels in its operating band while acting as an AP. It does this by briefly switching from AP to monitoring mode. By default, a scan period starts every 300 seconds. Each second a different channel is monitored for 20ms until all channels have been checked.

During heavy AP traffic, it is possible for Spectrum Analysis background scanning to cause lost packets when the radio switches to monitoring. To reduce the probability of lost packets, you can set the CLI `ap-bgscan-idle` field to delay the switch to monitoring until the AP has been idle for a specified period. This means that heavy AP traffic may slow background scanning.

The following CLI example configures default background rogue scanning operation except that it sets `ap-bgscan-idle` to require 100ms of AP inactivity before scanning the next channel.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit ourprofile
    config radio-1
      set wids-profile ourwidsprofile
      set spectrum-analysis enable
    end
  end
config wireless-controller wids-profile
  edit ourwidsprofile
    set ap-scan enable
    set rogue-scan enable
    set ap-bgscan-period 300
    set ap-bgscan-intv 1
    set ap-bgscan-duration 20
    set ap-bgscan-idle 100
  end
```

## Configuring rogue scanning

All APs using the same FortiAP Profile share the same rogue scanning settings, unless override is configured.

### To enable rogue AP scanning with on-wire detection - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WIDS Profiles**.
2. Select an existing WIDS Profile and edit it, or select **Create New**.
3. Select a **Sensor mode**, you can choose either **Foreign Channels Only** or **Foreign and Home Channels**.  
On-wire detection is automatically enabled when you select both a sensor mode and enable rogue AP detection.
4. Select **Enable rogue AP detection**.
5. Optionally, enable **Auto Suppress Rogue APs in Foreground Scan**.
6. Click **OK**.

You can then apply the WIDS profile to a FortiAP profile.

### To enable the rogue AP scanning feature in a custom AP profile - CLI

1. Create a WIDS profile:
 

```
config wireless-controller wids-profile
  edit "example-wids-profile"
    set ap-scan enable
```

```
        set rogue-scan enable
    end
2. Select the WIDS profile for the managed FortiAP:
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "example-FAP-profile"
    config platform
        set type <FAP-model-number>
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    set ap-country US
    config radio-1
        set band 802.11n
        set wids-profile "example-wids-profile"
        set vap-all disable
    end
    config radio-2
        set band 802.11ac
        set vap-all disable
    end
end
next
end
```

## Exempting an AP from rogue scanning

By default, if Rogue AP Detection is enabled, it is enabled on all managed FortiAP units. Optionally, you can exempt an AP from scanning. You should be careful about doing this if your organization must perform scanning to meet PCI-DSS requirements.

### To exempt an AP from rogue scanning

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WIDS Profiles**.
2. Create a new WIDS profile and disable **Rogue AP detection**.
3. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and edit the profile you wish to exempt from rogue scanning.
4. Assign the WIDS profile created in step 2.

## MAC adjacency

You can adjust the maximum WiFi to Ethernet MAC difference used when determining whether a suspect AP is a rogue.

### To adjust MAC adjacency

For example, to change the adjacency to 8, enter

```
config wireless-controller global
    set rogue-scan-mac-adjacency 8
end
```

## Suppressing rogue APs

In addition to monitoring rogue APs, you can actively prevent your users from connecting to them. When suppression is activated against an AP, the FortiGate WiFi controller sends deauthentication messages to the rogue AP's clients, posing as the rogue AP, and also sends deauthentication messages to the rogue AP, posing as its clients. This is done using the monitoring radio.



Before enabling this feature, verify that operation of Rogue Suppression is compliant with the applicable laws and regulations of your region.

---

To enable rogue AP suppression, you must enable monitoring of rogue APs with the on-wire detection technique (see [Configuring rogue scanning on page 249](#)). The monitoring radio must be in the Dedicated Monitor mode.

### To activate AP suppression against a rogue AP

1. Go to **Dashboard > WiFi > Rogue APs**.
2. In the table of rogue APs, select the AP you want to suppress and hover your mouse over the **State** column.
3. Click the **Edit** icon and select **Suppressed Rogue AP**.
4. Click **Apply**.

### To deactivate AP suppression

1. Go to **Dashboard > WiFi > Rogue APs**.
2. In the table of rogue APs, select the AP you want to suppress and hover your mouse over the **State** column.
3. Click the **Edit** icon and select another state.
4. Click **Apply**.



You can change the state of multiple APs by selecting multiple rows.

---

### To activate AP suppression against a rogue AP - CLI

```
config wireless-controller ap-status
edit 1
set bssid 90:6c:ac:da:a7:f1
set ssid "example-SSID"
set status suppressed
next
end
```



## Monitoring wireless clients

You can view detailed information about the health of individual WiFi connections from **WiFi and Switch Controller > WiFi Clients**. You can also Quarantine or Disassociate a wireless client from there.

### To view connected clients on a FortiGate or FortiWiFi unit

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WiFi Clients**.

The following information is displayed by default on both the FortiGate and FortiWiFi units:

Column headers	Description
<b>Association Time</b>	How long the client has been connected to this access point.
<b>Bandwidth Tx/Rx</b>	Client received and transmitted bandwidth, in Kbps.
<b>Channel</b>	WiFi radio channel in use.
<b>Device</b>	The name of the device.
<b>FortiAP</b>	The serial number of the FortiAP unit to which the client connected.
<b>IP</b>	The IP address assigned to the wireless client.
<b>MAC Address</b>	The MAC address of the device. <b>Note:</b> This column is available on the FortiGate only.
<b>Signal Strength</b>	The current signal strength and health.
<b>Signal Strength / Noise</b>	The signal-to-noise ratio in decibels calculated from signal strength and noise level.
<b>SSID</b>	The SSID that the client is connected to.
<b>User</b>	The user name associated with the device.

You can hover over the columns and click the Settings icon to add more columns to the table:

- Authentication
- Band
- Bandwidth RX
- Bandwidth Tx
- Device OS
- Encryption
- FortiAP IP
- FortiAP Radio
- Group
- Host Information
- Idle Time
- IPv6 Global Unicast Address
- IPv6 Unique Local Address
- Manufacturer
- MIMO

- Noise
- Pre-shared Key
- Rate Rx
- Rate Tx
- Security FabricVLAN ID

You can also click each row and drill down for a summary about the applications, destinations, policies, and logs on each client. From the summary page, you can also choose to Quarantine or Disassociate the host.

### To quarantine the host

You can block a specific host for your network by quarantining it.

1. From the WiFi Clients page, double-click the client you want to quarantine.  
The client summary page loads.
2. Click **Quarantine** to open the Quarantine Host dialog.
3. Click **OK** to quarantine the selected wireless client, and close the dialog.

### To disassociate a host

You can remove a specific host from your network by disassociating it.

1. From the WiFi Clients page, double-click the client you want to disassociate.  
The client summary page loads.
2. Click **Disassociate**.  
The Confirm dialog opens.
3. Click **OK** to disassociate the selected wireless client, and close the dialog.

## Understanding client health

From the summary page, the Health section displays the overall health for the wireless connection. The overall health of the connection is:

- **Good** if the value range for all three conditions are Good
- **Fair** or **Poor** if one of the three conditions is Fair or Poor.

Condition	Value Range
<b>Signal Strength</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b> &gt; -56dBm</li> <li>• -56dBm &gt; <b>Fair</b> &gt; -75dBm</li> <li>• <b>Poor</b> &lt; -75dBm</li> </ul>
<b>Signal Strength/Noise</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b> &gt; 39dBm</li> <li>• 20dBm &lt; <b>Fair</b> &lt; 39dBm</li> <li>• <b>Poor</b> &lt; 20dBm</li> </ul>
<b>Band</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b> = 5G band</li> <li>• <b>Fair</b> = 2.4G band</li> </ul>

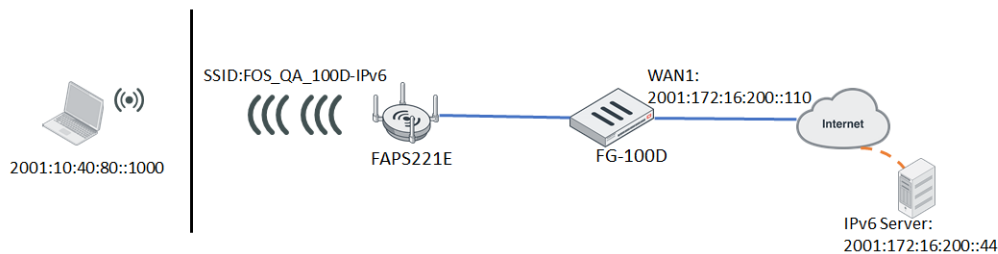
## Monitoring wireless clients over IPv6 traffic

Wireless client IPv6 traffic is supported from both tunnel and local bridge mode SSID in FortiOS. To configure and monitor wireless clients on IPv6:

- [Tunnel mode SSID IPv6 traffic on page 254](#)
- [Local bridge mode SSID IPv6 traffic on page 256](#)
- [CLI commands for IPv6 rules on page 259](#)

### Tunnel mode SSID IPv6 traffic

In the following example, FortiAP S221E is managed by FortiGate 100D and broadcasts tunnel mode SSID:FOS\_QA\_100D-IPv6.



**To configure a WiFi client accessing IPv6 tunnel mode traffic:**

1. In FortiOS, create a tunnel mode VAP:

```

config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi4"
    set ssid "FOS_QA_100D-IPv6"
    set passphrase *****
    set schedule "always"
  next
end

```

2. Create an IPv6 address for the VAP with DHCP enabled:

```

config system interface
  edit "wifi4"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 10.40.80.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping https http
    set type vap-switch
    set alias "vdom1:"
    set device-identification enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 36
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address 2001:10:40:80::1/64
    set ip6-allowaccess ping https http
    set ip6-send-adv enable
    set ip6-manage-flag enable
  end
end

```

```

        set ip6-other-flag enable
    end
next
end

config system dhcp6 server
    edit 1
        set subnet 2001:10:40:80::/64
        set interface "wifi4"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 2001:10:40:80::1000
                set end-ip 2001:10:40:80::1100
            next
        end
    next
end

```

### 3. Create an IPv6 policy from the VAP to WAN1:

```

config firewall policy6
    edit 1
        set name "ipv6"
        set srcintf "wifi4"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end

```

### 4. Verify the IPv6 address in the station list:

#### a. In the FortiGate CLI:

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online
vf=4 wtp=3 rId=1 wlan=wifi4 vlan_id=0 ip=10.40.80.2 ip6=2001:10:40:80::1000
mac=b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72 vci=MSFT 5.0 host=DESKTOP-DO33HQP user= group= signal=-29
noise=-93 idle=1 bw=48 use=5 chan=6 radio_type=11N security=wpa2_only_personal
mpsk=default encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
ip6=fe80::c5c5:6c09:8021:d2d0,88, *2001:10:40:80::1000,8,

```

#### b. In the FortiAP CLI:

```

FortiAP-S221E # sta
wlan00 (FOS_QA_100D-IPv6) client count 1
    MAC:b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72 ip:10.40.80.2 ip_proto:dhcp ip_age:84 host:DESKTOP-DO33HQP
    vci:MSFT 5.0
    ip6:fe80::c5c5:6c09:8021:d2d0 ip6_proto:arp ip6_age:2 ip6_
rx:101
    ip6:2001:10:40:80::1000 ip6_proto:dhcp ip6_age:82 ip6_rx:20
    vlanid:0 Auth:Yes channel:6 rate:130Mbps rssi:65dB idle:0s
    Rx bytes:256951 Tx bytes:53947 Rx rate:130Mbps Tx rate:130Mbps Rx last:0s Tx
last:0s
    AssocID:1 Mode: Normal Flags:f PauseCnt:0

```

```

KEY type=aes_ccm pad=0 keyix=65535 keylen=16 flags=3(xmit recv) RSC=0 TSC=0
e7 6f 05 ce 06 e1 4a 9b 3a d4 4f 43 1f 57 bb 49
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
KEY type=aes_ccm pad=0 keyix=1 keylen=16 flags=83(xmit recv dflt) RSC=0 TSC=0
01 47 6f 21 9b ac 73 4b 7c ae 07 66 7e 5a c6 7e
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
FortiAP-S221E #

FortiAP-S221E # usta

WTP daemon STA info:

1/1 b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72 00:00:00:00:00:00 vId=0 type=w1---sta, vap=wlan00,FOS_
QA_100D-IPv6(0) mpsk=default ip=10.40.80.2/1 host=DESKTOP-DO33HQP vci=MSFT 5.0
os=Windows

ip6=fe80::c5c5:6c09:8021:d2d0/2 rx=101
ip6=2001:10:40:80::1000/1 rx=21
replycount=0000000000000002

```

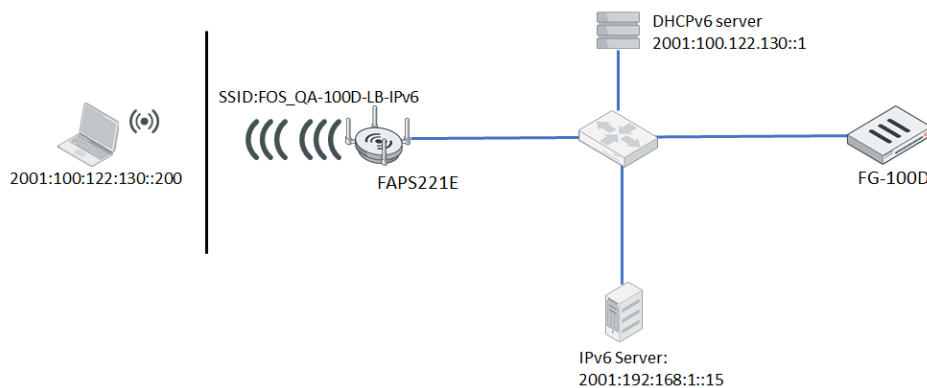
Total STAs: 1

- c. In the FortiOS GUI, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WiFi Clients**. The address is displayed in the **IPv6 Global Unicast Address** and **IPv6 Unique Local Address** columns.

IP	MAC Address	User	Device	SSID	Channel	IPv6 Global Unicast Address	IPv6 Unique Local Address	FortiAP
10.40.80.2	B4-AE-2B-CB-D1-72	DESKTOP-DO33HQP	FOS_QA_100D-IPv6	FOS_QA_100D-IPv6	6	2001:10:40:80:1000	fe80:c5c5:6c09:8021:d2d0	PS221ETF19000000

## Local bridge mode SSID IPv6 traffic

In the following example, FortiAP S221E is managed by FortiGate 100D through a local NATed switch and broadcasts local bridge mode SSID:FOS\_QA\_100D-LB-IPv6.



**To configure a WiFi client accessing IPv6 local bridge mode traffic:****1. In FortiOS, create a local bridge mode VAP:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "test1"
    set ssid "FOS_QA-100D-LB-IPv6"
    set passphrase *****
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

**2. Create an IPv6 DHCP server for the local NATed switch (FortiWiFi 60E is used in this example):**

```
config system interface
  edit "internal6"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 2.2.3.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping https http fabric
    set type physical
    set snmp-index 18
    config ipv6
      set ip6-address 2001:100:122:130::1/64
      set ip6-allowaccess ping https http fabric
      set ip6-send-adv enable
      set ip6-manage-flag enable
      set ip6-other-flag enable
    end
  next
end

config system dhcp6 server
  edit 1
    set subnet 2001:100:122:130::/64
    set interface "internal6"
    config ip-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 2001:100:122:130::200
        set end-ip 2001:100:122:130::300
      next
    end
  next
end
```

**3. Create an IPv6 policy for the local NATed switch:**

```
config firewall policy6
  edit 2
    set name "ipv6"
    set uuid 56368fc6-3268-51ea-a791-91a6ab82a109
    set srcintf "internal6"
    set dstintf "internal7"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
```

```

        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end

```

#### 4. Verify the IPv6 address in the station list:

##### a. In the FortiGate CLI:

```

# diagnose wireless-controller wlacl -d sta online
  vf=4 wtp=3 rId=2 wlan=test1 vlan_id=0 ip=2.2.3.3 ip6=2001:100:122:130::200
mac=f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 vci= host=iPhoneX user= group= signal=-41 noise=-105 idle=18
bw=0 use=5 chan=36 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk=default
encrypt=aes cp_authed=no online=yes mimo=2
      ip6=fe80::82a:9eba:69c5:5454,13, *2001:100:122:130::200,2,

```

##### b. In the FortiAP CLI:

```

FortiAP-S221E # sta
wlan10 (FOS_QA-100D-LB-IPv6) client count 1
  MAC:f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 ip:2.2.3.3 ip_proto:dhcp ip_age:8 host:iPhoneX vci:
      ip6:fe80::82a:9eba:69c5:5454 ip6_proto:arp ip6_age:1 ip6_
rx:12
      ip6:2001:100:122:130::200 ip6_proto:dhcp ip6_age:8 ip6_rx:2
vlanid:0 Auth:Yes channel:36 rate:173Mbps rssi:64dB idle:0s
Rx bytes:26654 Tx bytes:27949 Rx rate:78Mbps Tx rate:173Mbps Rx last:0s Tx
last:0s
AssocID:1 Mode: Normal Flags:1000000b PauseCnt:0
KEY type=aes_ccm pad=0 keyix=65535 keylen=16 flags=3(xmit recv) RSC=0 TSC=0
  83 25 7e 72 d2 b1 d2 ef 30 9f 6e 9f 50 e5 6f 5a
  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
KEY type=aes_ccm pad=0 keyix=1 keylen=16 flags=83(xmit recv dflt) RSC=0 TSC=0
  1f 25 64 3e 02 4d e2 f1 2c b0 5e 03 ed 99 a4 47
  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
  00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
FortiAP-S221E #

FortiAP-S221E # usta

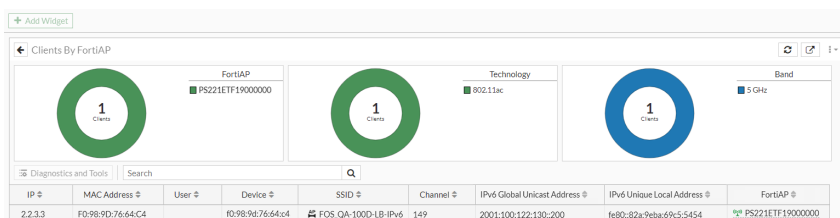
WTP daemon STA info:

  1/1 f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 00:00:00:00:00:00 vId=0 type=wl----sta, vap=wlan10,FOS_
QA-100D-LB-IPv6(0) mpsk=default ip=2.2.3.3/1 host=iPhoneX vci= os=iOS
      ip6=fe80::82a:9eba:69c5:5454/2 rx=12
      ip6=2001:100:122:130::200/1 rx=2
      replycount=0000000000000002

```

```
Total STAs: 1
```

##### c. In the FortiOS GUI, go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > WiFi Clients**. The address is displayed in the **IPv6**

**Global Unicast Address and IPv6 Unique Local Address columns.****CLI commands for IPv6 rules**

The following IPv6 rules can be used in VAP configurations:

Command	Description
drop-icmp6ra	Drop ICMPv6 router advertisement (RA) packets that originate from wireless clients.
drop-icmp6rs	Drop ICMPv6 router solicitation (RS) packets to be sent to wireless clients.
drop-llmnr6	Drop Link-Local Multicast Name Resolution (LLMNR) packets.
drop-icmp6mld2	Drop ICMPv6 Multicast Listener report V2 (MLD2) packets.
drop-dhcp6s	Drop DHCPv6 server generated packets that originate from wireless clients.
drop-dhcp6c	Drop DHCPv6 client generated packets to be sent to wireless clients.
ndp-proxy	Enable IPv6 NDP proxy; send back NA on behalf of the client and drop the NS.
drop-ns-dad	Drop ICMPv6 NS DAD when target address is not found in the NDP proxy cache.
drop-ns-nondad	Drop ICMPv6 NS non-DAD when target address is not found in the NDP proxy cache.

**To configure IPv6 rules on a VAP in FortiOS:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "wifi4"
    set ssid "FOS_QA_100D-IPv6"
    set passphrase *****
    set schedule "always"
    set ipv6-rules drop-icmp6ra drop-icmp6rs drop-llmnr6 drop-icmp6mld2 drop-dhcp6s
drop-dhcp6c ndp-proxy drop-ns-dad drop-ns-nondad
  next
end
```

The IPv6 rules settings can be pushed to a FortiAP when the VAP is broadcast.

**To view the pushed settings on the FortiAP:**

```
FortiAP-S221E # iwpriv wlan00 get_bmcs6
wlan00 get_bmcs6:991 (0x3df)
00000001 icmp6-ra : yes
00000002 icmp6-rs : yes
```



```

00000004 dhcp6-server      : yes
00000008 dhcp6-client      : yes
00000010 llmnr             : yes
00000040 icmp6-mld2        : yes
00000080 ndp-proxy         : yes
00000100 ns-dad            : yes
00000200 ns-nondad          : yes

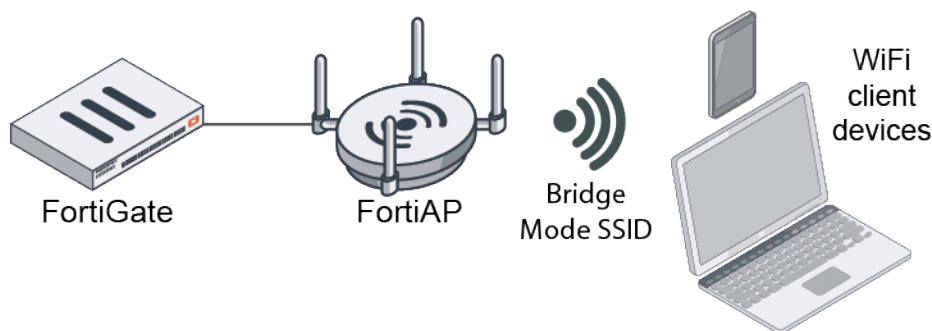
```

## Monitoring application usage for clients connected to bridge mode SSIDs



FortiAPs must be running firmware version 7.2.0 and later. WiFi clients must be connected to a bridge mode SSID.

You can monitor the application usage data for clients that are connected on bridge mode IDs by using the CLI command "diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta online". FortiGate receives the wireless client application information from FortiAPs and analyzes the traffic information on each application.



The following CLI commands can be configured under `config wireless-controller vap`:

- `set application-detection enable | disable`: Enable or disable the reporting of wireless client application information for the bridge mode SSID that it is configured for. Application reporting is disabled by default.
- `set application-report-intv <seconds>`: Configure the time interval for the FortiAP to collect and report the application traffic information to the FortiGate. The default interval is 120 seconds.

### To enable application-detection in VAP

```

config wireless-controller vap
  edit "vap-ndpi"
    set ssid "SSID_NDPI"
    set passphrase ENC
    set local-bridging enable
    set schedule "always"
    set application-detection-engine enable
    set application-report-intv 60
  next
end

```

**To check the application detection attribute from FortiAP**

```

FortiAP-231F # vcfg
-----VAP Configuration      1-----
Radio Id  1 WLAN Id  0 SSID_NDPI ADMIN_UP(INTF_UP) init_done 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 unknown (-1)
          vlanid=0, intf=wlan10, vap=0x3db5702c, bssid=e0:23:ff:d7:74:b0
          llax high-efficiency=enabled target-wake-time=enabled
          bss-color-partial=enabled
          mesh backhaul=disabled
          local_auth=disabled standalone=disabled nat_mode=disabled
          local_bridging=enabled split_tunnel=disabled
          intra_ssid_priv=disabled
          mcast_enhance=disabled igmp_snooping=disabled
          mac_auth=disabled fail_through_mode=disabled sta_info=1/0
          mac=local, tunnel=8023, cap=8ce0, qos=disabled
          prob_resp_suppress=disabled
          rx sop=disabled
          sticky client remove=disabled
          mu mimo=enabled          ldpc_config=rxtx
          dhcp_option43_insertion=enabled          dhcp_option82_insertion=disabled
          dhcp_enforcement=disabled
          access_control_list=disabled
          bc_suppression=dhcp dhcp-ucast arp
          auth=WPA2, PSK, AES WPA keyIdx=1, keyLen=16, keyStatus=1, gTsc=000000000000
          key=f4cf7fd6 32dbced5 6d9fb25c 8894ad9b
          pmf=disable
          okc=disabled, dynamic_vlan=disabled, extern_roaming=disabled
          voice_ent(802.11kv)=disabled, fast_bss_trans(802.11r)=disabled mbo=disabled
          port_macauth=disable
          airfairness weight: 20%
          schedules=SMTWTFS 00:00->00:00,
          ratelimit(Kbps): ul=0 dl=0 ul_user=0 dl_user=0 burst=disabled
          primary wag:
          secondary wag:
          application detection engine: enabled, report-interval=60, configured
-----Total      1 VAP Configurations-----

```

**To check the application detection information from FortiAP**

```
FortiAP-231F # cw_diag -d ndpi sta
```

```
Station 00:c0:ca:87:07:50 flow stats list:
```

AID	TX total	TX new	RX total	RX new	Application/Protocol Name
0	992 B	0 B	3.821 KB	0 B	ukn
7	2.056 KB	0 B	1.888 KB	0 B	twitter
12	342 B	0 B	62 B	0 B	icloud
28	68.553 KB	7.416 KB	11.400 KB	3.879 KB	youtube
139	6.281 KB	0 B	1.841 KB	0 B	yahoo
609	4.847 KB	0 B	1.734 KB	0 B	new-relic
632	20.167 KB	0 B	4.310 KB	0 B	google-services
664	6.080 KB	0 B	13.842 KB	0 B	microsoft-services
728	18.324 KB	0 B	12.785 KB	0 B	amazon-services
765	2.031 MB	0 B	345.697 KB	0 B	service_amazon

768	70.786 KB	70.497 KB	7.094 KB	7.031 KB	service_google
786	3.927 KB	0 B	1.992 KB	0 B	service_microsoft
866	5.842 KB	0 B	2.656 KB	0 B	spotxchange
889	359 B	0 B	63 B	0 B	goodreads
1032	480 B	480 B	58 B	58 B	imdb
1090	23.201 KB	0 B	7.608 KB	0 B	adobeanalytics
1141	7.160 KB	0 B	2.030 KB	0 B	casale
1218	5.226 KB	0 B	2.002 KB	0 B	rubiconproject
1397	5.411 KB	5.411 KB	1.938 KB	1.938 KB	exelate
1788	25.110 KB	25.110 KB	6.503 KB	6.503 KB	bing
1838	12.417 KB	12.417 KB	2.830 KB	2.830 KB	delicious
1861	6.106 KB	6.106 KB	2.008 KB	2.008 KB	pubmatic
1968	753 B	0 B	406 B	0 B	http
1974	11.720 KB	11.375 KB	1.826 KB	1.757 KB	dns
1979	475.727 KB	0 B	66.211 KB	0 B	ssl
2012	357 B	0 B	0 B	0 B	dhcp
2182	1.033 MB	0 B	152.760 KB	0 B	quic

### To check the application detection information from FortiGate

```
FortiGate-201E # diag wire wlacl -d sta online
vf=0 wtp=3 rId=2 wlan=vap-ndpi vlan_id=0 ip=10.132.132.11 ip6=fe80::90bf:3f23:991:c8d4
mac=00:c0:ca:87:07:50 vci=MSFT 5.0 host=DESKTOP-CJ6F7M2 user= group= signal=-42 noise=-95
idle=0 bw=4158 use=6 chan=36 radio_type=11AC security=wpa2_only_personal mpsk= encrypt=aes
cp_authed=no l3r=1,0 0.0.0.0:0 -- 0.0.0.0:0 0,0 online=yes mimo=2
ip6=*fe80::90bf:3f23:991:c8d4,57,
Id 0 App:ukn
Tx:992 Rx:2466 Age:9
Id 28 App:youtube
Tx:60614 Rx:7460 Age:9
Id 609 App:new-relic
Tx:4847 Rx:1734 Age:9
Id 632 App:google-services
Tx:8521 Rx:2404 Age:9
Id 765 App:service_amazon
Tx:4057 Rx:18035 Age:9
Id 1979 App:ssl
Tx:474313 Rx:64787 Age:9
Id 2182 App:quic
Tx:1028073 Rx:138326 Age:9
Id 1090 App:adobeanalytics
Tx:23201 Rx:7608 Age:9
Id 1141 App:casale
Tx:7160 Rx:2030 Age:9
Id 1218 App:rubiconproject
Tx:5226 Rx:2002 Age:9
```

## Monitoring FortiAP with SNMP

You can enable SNMP directly on FortiAP by implementing a SNMPD daemon/subagent on the FortiAP side.

**To configure SNMP operation settings per VDOM**

```
config wireless-controller snmp
  set engine-id "fap-fortinet"
  set contact-info "fosqa@fortinet.com"
  set trap-high-cpu-threshold 80
  set trap-high-mem-threshold 80
  config community
    edit 1
      set name "fap-comm-1"
      set status enable
      set query-v1-status enable
      set query-v2c-status enable
      set trap-v1-status enable
      set trap-v2c-status enable
    next
  end
  config user
    edit "fap"
      set status enable
      set queries enable
      set trap-status enable
      set security-level no-auth-no-priv
    next
  end
end
```

**To allow SNMP access in FortiAP profiles or per FortiAP device**

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP423E-default
    append allowaccess snmp
  next
end
```

**To disallow SNMP access in FortiAP profiles or per FortiAP device**

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP423E-default
    unselect allowaccess snmp
  next
end
```

## FortiAP SNMP implementation



Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) queries and trap messages based on wireless-controller SNMP settings configured on FortiGate is supported on the following:

- FortiAP-S and FortiAP-W2 version 6.2.0 and later.
- FortiAP 6.4.3 and later.
- FortiAP-U 6.0.4 and later.

All SNMP versions (v1, v2, and v3) are supported.

---

The local standalone mode does not support FortiAP direct SNMP.

The SNMP manager requires the following management information base (MIB) files:

- FortiAP MIB
- Fortinet Core MIB

## Downloading the FortiAP MIB and Fortinet Core MIB files

To download the FortiAP SNMP MIB and Fortinet Core MIB files, perform the following steps:

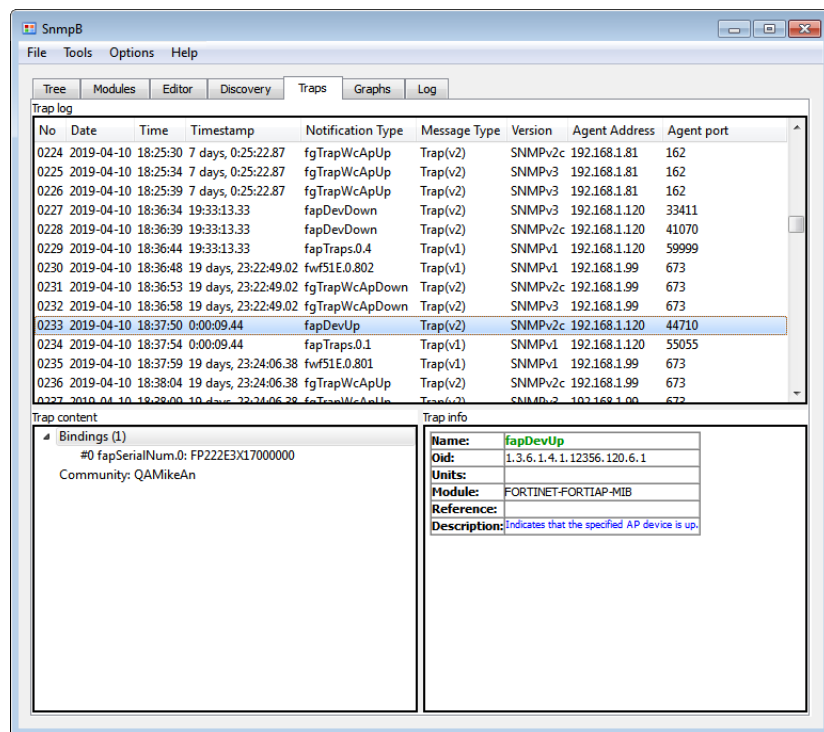
1. Go to the [Fortinet Support](#) website.
2. Log in to your account. If you do not have an account, create one and then log in.
3. From the top banner, select **Support > Firmware Download**.
4. From **Select Product** drop-down, select **FortiAP-S** or **FortiAP-W2**, as applicable.
5. Click the **Download** tab.
6. Locate the v6.00 folder (or later) and then the 6.2 (or later) folder to match the firmware release running on your FortiAP-S or FortiAP-W2 device.
7. Navigate through the folders to find and then download the FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB-buildxxxx.mib file.
8. From the **Select Product** drop-down, select **FortiGate**.
9. Click the **Download** tab.
10. Locate the v6.00 folder (or later) and then 6.2 (or later) folder to match the firmware release running on your FortiGate device.
11. Navigate through the folders to find and then download the FORTINET-CORE-MIB-buildxxxx.mib file.
12. Load the MIB files into your SNMP manager.

## FortiAP SNMP trap messages

FortiAP-S and FortiAP-W2 can send the following trap messages to an SNMP manager or trap receiver:

Trap message	Description
fapDevUp	The specified FortiAP device is up.
fapCpuOverload	The CPU usage of the specified FortiAP has exceeded the configured threshold.
fapMemOverload	The memory usage of the specified FortiAP has exceeded the configured threshold.
fapDevDown	The specified FortiAP device is down.
fapAcConnected	FortiAP has connected to the specified AP controller (AC).

The following screenshot shows an SNMP trap receiver (SnmpB) that has received one `fapDevUp` trap message from a FortiAP unit (serial number: FP222E3X17000000).



## FortiAP SNMP queries

From your SNMP manager, you can use the SNMP GET and SNMP WALK commands to query FortiAP for status information, variables values, SSID configuration, radio configuration, and so on. You can also use the SNMP SET command to configure local FortiAP variables.

Here is an example of polling FortiAP data using the `snmpwalk` command from a Linux OS computer:

```
$ snmpwalk -v2c -c public 10.0.28.2 .1

SNMPv2-MIB::sysDescr.0 = STRING: FortiAP-S223E

SNMPv2-MIB::sysObjectID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapHostName

DISMAN-EXPRESSION-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (27486) 0:04:34.86

SNMPv2-MIB::sysContact.0 = STRING: user@example.com

SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiAP-S223E

SNMPv2-MIB::sysLocation.0 = STRING: N/A

IF-MIB::ifNumber.0 = INTEGER: 25

...

FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapVersion.0 = STRING: PS223E-v6.2-build0229

FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapSerialNum.0 = STRING: PS223E3X170000001

FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapHostName.0 = STRING: FortiAP-S223E
```

```
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapRegionCode.0 = STRING: E
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapBaseMacAddr.0 = STRING: 70:4c:a5:43:7b:8
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapBiosVer.0 = STRING: 04000002
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapBiosDataVer.0 = INTEGER: 3
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapSysPartNum.0 = STRING: 20155-03
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapWtpWanMode.0 = INTEGER: wanOnly(0)
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapWtpApAddrMode.0 = INTEGER: dhcp(0)
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapWtpApIpAddr.0 = STRING: "192.168.1.2"
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapWtpApIpNetmask.0 = STRING: "255.255.255.0"
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapWtpApIpGateway.0 = STRING: "192.168.1.1"
FORTINET-FORTIAP-MIB::fapWtpApMode.0 = INTEGER: thinAp(0)
...
```

## Monitoring FortiAP temperatures

You can obtain the operating temperature of FortiAP models have built-in temperature sensors.

### To obtain the temperature value of a FortiAP - FortiGate

```
# get wireless-controller wtp-status <serial number> | grep Temp
Temperature in Celsius: 1 (52)
```

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c wtp <serial number> | grep Temp
Temperature in Celsius: 3 (55,57,54)
```

### To obtain the temperature value of a FortiAP - FortiAP

```
# cw_diag -c temperature
Temperature in Celsius: 3 (52,52,52)
```

## Enabling spectrum analysis

Spectrum analysis is visible in the FortiOS GUI through the **Managed FortiAPs** page for select FortiAP models. Spectrum analysis can also be performed in the FortiOS CLI.

To start or stop the spectrum analysis:

```
execute wireless-controller spectral-scan <wtp-id> <radio-id> <on | off> <duration>
<channel> <report-interval>
```

To verify the results:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c rf-sa <wtp-id> <radio-id> <channel>
```

```
get wireless-controller spectral-info <wtp-id> <radio-id>
```

### To view spectrum analysis in the FortiOS GUI

1. Change the radio mode:
  - a. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and double-click the FortiAP to edit the profile.
  - b. In the **Radio 1** and **Radio 2** sections for **Mode**, select **Dedicated Monitor**.

The screenshot shows the FortiAP Profile configuration page. It has sections for Radio 1, Radio 2, System Log, Location Based Services, FortiPresence, Ekahau blink, AeroScout, and Locate WiFi clients when not connected. The Mode for both Radio 1 and Radio 2 is set to 'Dedicated Monitor'.

Radio 1
Mode: Disabled   Access Point   <b>Dedicated Monitor</b>
WIDS profile: <input type="checkbox"/>

Radio 2
Mode: Disabled   Access Point   <b>Dedicated Monitor</b>
WIDS profile: <input type="checkbox"/>

System Log

Syslog profile: ☐

Location Based Services

FortiPresence

Mode: **Disable** | Foreign Channels Only | Foreign and Home Channels

☐ Ekahau blink

☐ AeroScout

Locate WiFi clients when not connected: ☐

OK Cancel

- c. Click **OK**.
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
3. In the table, hover over the AP so the context menu appears and click **Diagnostics and Tools**.  
The summary pane appears.
4. Click **Spectrum Analysis**.
5. Select a band frequency to view the analysis for: **Signal Interference**, **Signal Interference Spectrogram**, **Duty Cycle**, **Duty Cycle Spectrogram**, and **Detected Interference** (list).  
Analysis for 2.4 GHz:



Performance Clients Interfering SSIDs WiFi Map Logs CLI Access **Spectrum Analysis** VLAN Probe



Band **2.4 GHz** 5 GHz

Radio **Radio 1**

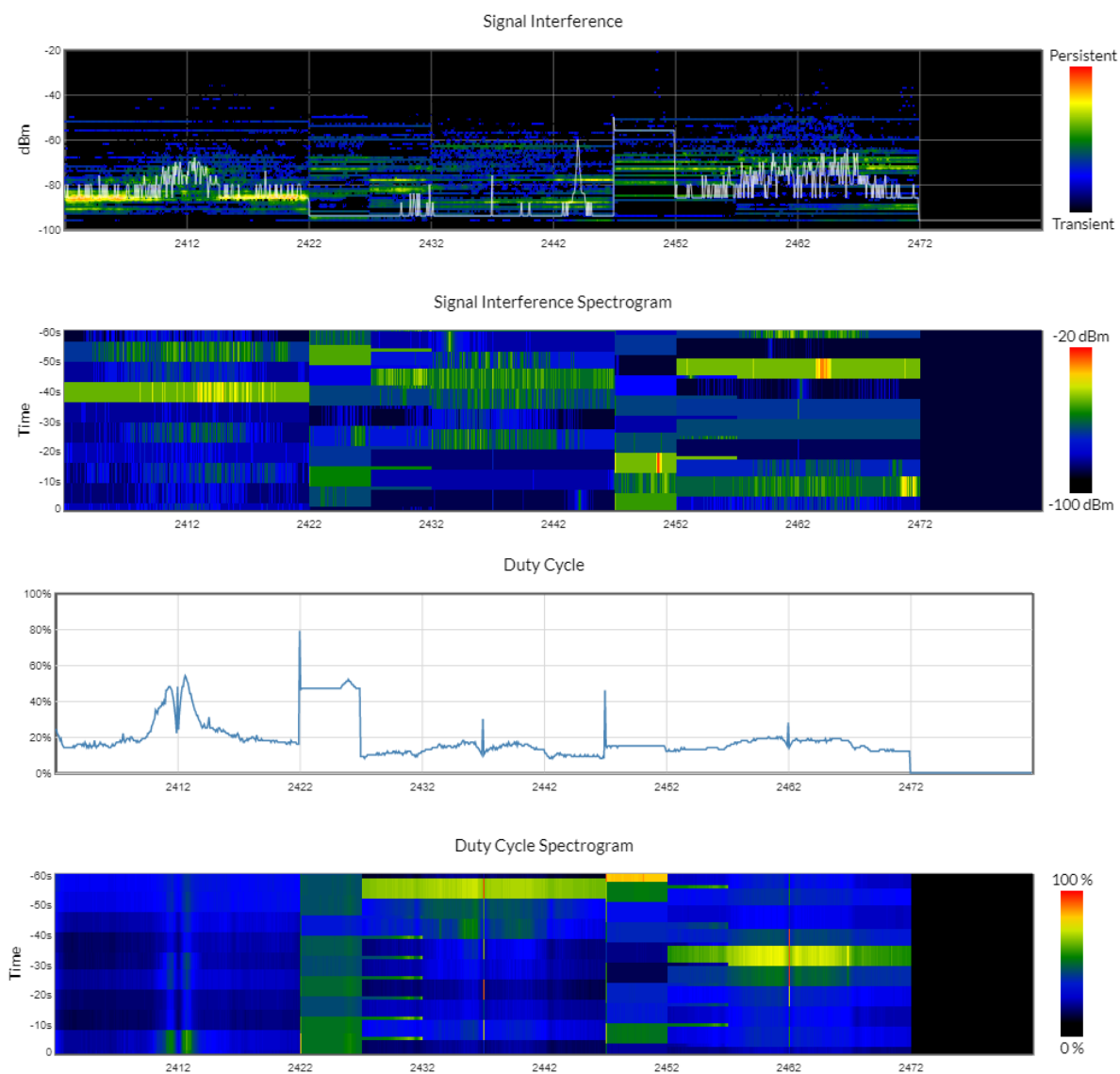
Channels **1-13**

⚠ Some or all of the channels in this range will not be scanned due to AP region.

X-Axis **MHz** Channels

Stop Restart

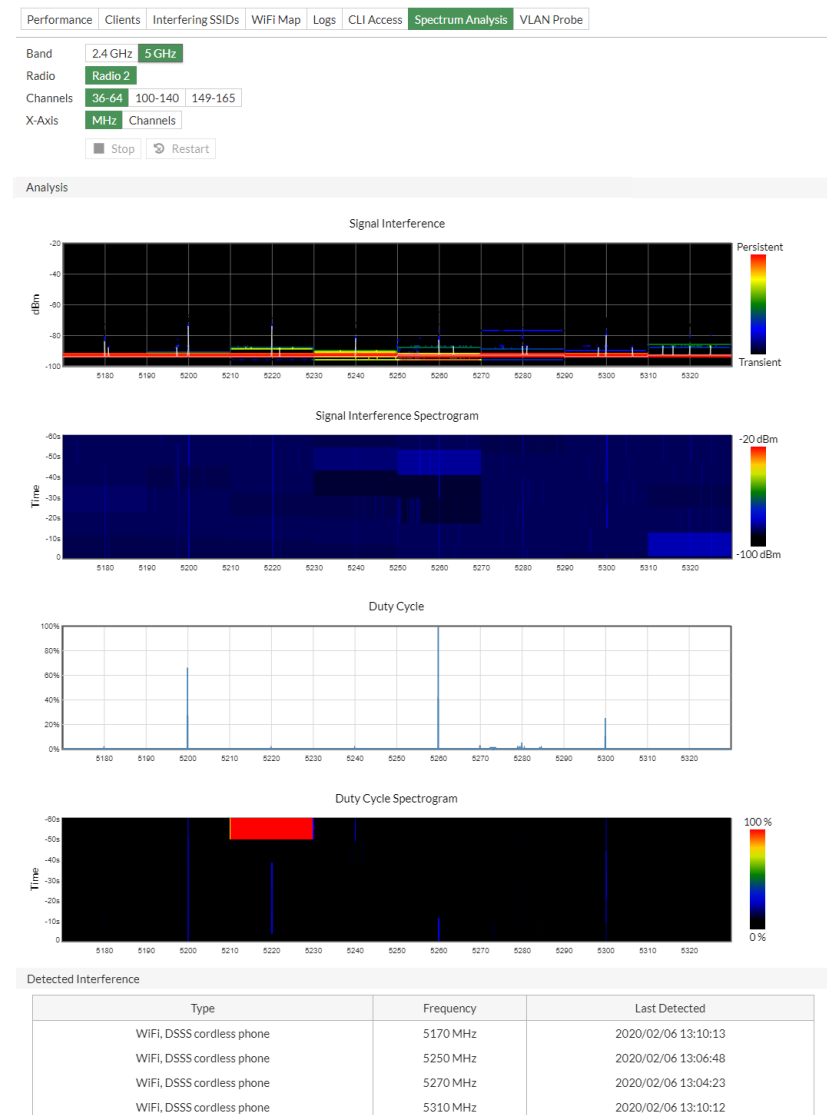
#### Analysis



#### Detected Interference

Type	Frequency	Last Detected
WiFi, DSSS cordless phone	2402 MHz	2020/02/06 13:00:29
Bluetooth, FHSS cordless phone	2402 MHz	2020/02/06 12:53:43
Bluetooth, FHSS cordless phone	2412 MHz	2020/02/06 13:00:30
WiFi, DSSS cordless phone	2412 MHz	2020/02/06 13:00:30
WiFi, DSSS cordless phone	2427 MHz	2020/02/06 13:00:25
Bluetooth, FHSS cordless phone	2427 MHz	2020/02/06 12:57:26
Microwave	2437 MHz	2020/02/06 13:00:09

## Analysis for 5 GHz:

6. Click **Close**.

## To change the radio mode in the FortiOS CLI:

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "421E"
    config platform
        set type 421E
    end
    config radio-1
        set mode monitor
    end
    config radio-2
        set mode monitor
    end
next
end

```

**To view spectrum analysis for radio 1 in the FortiOS CLI:****1. Start the spectrum analysis on channel 1:**

```
# execute wireless-controller spectral-scan FP421ETF19000000 1 on 30 1 1000
```

**2. View the analysis results:**

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c rf-sa FP421ETF19000000 1 1
-----RF Spectrum Data 1-----
rId: 1 Age: 24 gen 27 rssi: 11 nf: -96 bw: 1 Freq: 2412 Chan: 1 Cnt bin 256
Interf: 0 (idx,duty_max,duty,pwr_max,pwr)
  0 45 14 -67 -89 1 45 14 -60 -89 2 44 14 -63 -89 3
44 13 -57 -83 - 5 43 12 -67 -89 6 43 11 -67 -89 7
  4 44 13 -61 -89 9 42 10 -67 -89 10 41 10 -67 -83 - 11
42 11 -67 -89 13 42 10 -67 -89 14 41 10 -67 -83 - 15
  8 42 10 -67 -89 17 41 10 -67 -89 18 41 10 -67 -89 19
41 10 -67 -89 21 41 10 -67 -89 22 41 10 -67 -89 23
 12 41 10 -67 -89 16 41 10 -61 -89 20 41 10 -67 -89
41 10 -67 -89 42 10 -67 -79 -
```

```
# get wireless-controller spectral-info FP421ETF19000000 1
=====
Spectrum info for band freq [2402, 2482] chan [1,13]: (idx,age,gen,duty_max,duty,pwr_max,pwr)
2402 0 1 7 19 19 -21 -83 - 1 1 7 18
 18 -33 -83 - 2 1 7 18 18 -35 -83 - 3 1 7 17
  2 -39 -83 - 4 1 7 17 17 -43 -83 - 5 1 7 16
 17 -47 -83 - 6 1 7 15 15 -33 -83 - 7 1 7 15
 16 -45 -83 - 8 1 7 14 14 -59 -83 - 9 1 7 14
  6 -53 -83 - 10 1 7 14 14 -59 -83 - 11 1 7 14
 15 -59 -83 -
```

**3. Stop the spectrum analysis on radio 1:**

```
# execute wireless-controller spectral-scan FP421ETF19000000 1 off
```

**4. Verify the analysis has stopped:**

```
# get wireless-controller spectral-info FP421ETF19000000 1
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [2402, 2482] chan [1,13]
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [5170, 5330] chan [36,64]
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [5490, 5710] chan [100,140]
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [5735, 5835] chan [149,165]
FortiGate-80E-POE # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c rf-sa FP421ETF19000000 1 1
-----Total 0 RF Spectrum Datas-----
```

**To view spectrum analysis for radio 2 in the FortiOS CLI:****1. Start the spectrum analysis on all channels:**

```
# execute wireless-controller spectral-scan FP421ETF19000000 2 on
```

**2. View the analysis results:**

```
# get wireless-controller spectral-info FP421ETF19000000 2
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [2402, 2482] chan [1,13]
=====
Spectrum info for band freq [5170, 5330] chan [36,64]: (idx,age,gen,duty_max,duty,pwr_
max,pwr)
5170      0      24      9      0      0      -92      -94      1      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      2      24      9      0      0      -92      -94      3      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      4      24      9      0      0      -92      -94      5      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      6      24      9      0      0      -92      -94      7      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      8      24      9      0      0      -92      -94      9      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      10     24      9      0      0      -92      -94     11      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      12     24      9      0      0      -92      -94     13      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
0      14     24      9      0      0      -92      -94     15      24      9      0
0      -92      -94
```

**3. Check the spectrum analysis results on specific channels:**

```
# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c rf-sa FP421ETF19000000 2 36
-----RF Spectrum Data 1-----
rId: 2 Age: 6 gen 7 rssi: 2 nf: -96 bw: 1 Freq: 5180 Chan: 36 Cnt bin 256
Interf: 0 (idx,duty_max,duty,pwr_max,pwr)
0 0 0 -92 -94 1 0 0 -92 -94 2 0 0 -92 -94 3
0 0 -92 -94
4 0 0 -92 -94 5 0 0 -92 -94 6 0 0 -92 -94 7
0 0 -92 -94
8 0 0 -92 -94 9 0 0 -92 -94 10 0 0 -92 -94 11
0 0 -92 -94
12 0 0 -92 -94 13 0 0 -92 -94 14 0 0 -92 -94 15
0 0 -92 -94
16 0 0 -92 -94 17 0 0 -92 -94 18 0 0 -92 -94 19
0 0 -92 -94
20 0 0 -92 -94 21 0 0 -92 -94 22 0 0 -92 -94 23
0 0 -92 -94
24 0 0 -92 -94 25 0 0 -92 -94 26 0 0 -92 -94 27
0 0 -92 -94
28 0 0 -92 -94 29 0 0 -92 -94 30 0 0 -92 -94 31
0 0 -92 -94

# diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c rf-sa FP421ETF19000000 2 165
-----RF Spectrum Data 1-----
rId: 2 Age: 22 gen 6 rssi: 11 nf: -96 bw: 1 Freq: 5825 Chan: 165 Cnt bin 256
Interf: 0 (idx,duty_max,duty,pwr_max,pwr)
```

0	0	0	-90	-90	1	0	0	-90	-90	2	0	0	-90	-90	3
0	0	-90	-90												
4	0	0	-90	-90	5	0	0	-90	-90	6	0	0	-90	-90	7
0	0	-90	-90												
8	0	0	-90	-90	9	0	0	-90	-90	10	0	0	-90	-90	11
0	0	-90	-90												
12	0	0	-90	-90	13	0	0	-90	-90	14	0	0	-90	-90	15
0	0	-90	-90												
16	0	0	-90	-90	17	0	0	-90	-90	18	0	0	-90	-90	19
0	0	-90	-90												
20	0	0	-90	-90	21	0	0	-90	-90	22	0	0	-90	-90	23
0	0	-90	-90												
24	0	0	-90	-90	25	0	0	-90	-90	26	0	0	-90	-90	27
0	0	-90	-90												
28	0	0	-90	-90	29	0	0	-90	-90	30	0	0	-90	-90	31
0	0	-90	-90												

#### 4. Stop the spectrum analysis on radio 2:

```
# execute wireless-controller spectral-scan FP421ETF19000000 2 off
```

#### 5. Verify the analysis has stopped:

```
# get wireless-controller spectral-info FP421ETF19000000 2
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [2402, 2482] chan [1,13]
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [5170, 5330] chan [36,64]
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [5490, 5710] chan [100,140]
=====
No spectrum info is found for band freq [5735, 5835] chan [149,165]
```

## Disable dedicated scanning on FortiAP F-Series profiles

The FortiAP F-series product family supports two radios while a third radio performs dedicated scans at all times. However, due to wireless chipset limitations on the third radio, some of the data packets cannot be scanned which may impact the detection capabilities for FPS and other related solutions. You can disable dedicated scan which will allow background scanning using WIDS profile to be enabled on Radios 1 and 2.

### To disable dedicated scanning and enable background scanning - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and select the FortiAP F-series profile you want to disable dedicated scanning for.
2. Disable **Dedicated scan**.

Edit FortiAP Profile

Name
433F

Comments
0/255

Platform
FAP433F

Dedicated scan
☐

Indoor / Outdoor
Default (Indoor)
Override

Country / Region
Use default (United States)

AP login password
Set
Leave Unchanged

Administrative access
☐ HTTPS
☐ SSH
☐ SNMP

Client load balancing
☐ Frequency Handoff
☐ AP Handoff

802.1X authentication
☐

Radio 1

Mode
Disabled
Access Point
Dedicated Monitor

WIDS profile
☒
default-wids-apscan-enabled

Radio resource provision
☐

Band
2.4 GHz
802.11ax/n/g

Channel width
20MHz

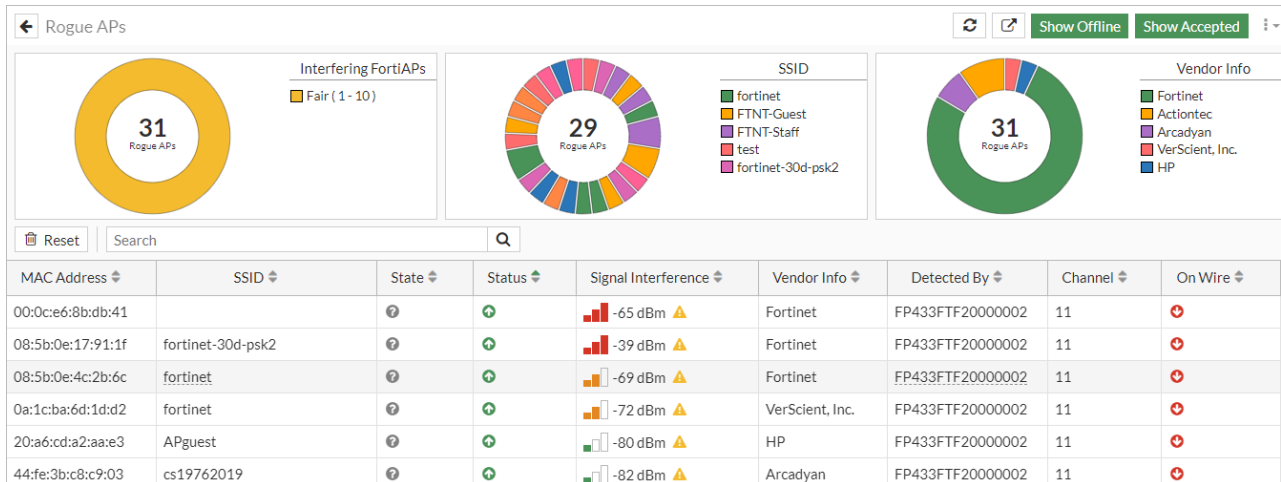
Short guard interval
☐

Channels
☐ 1
☐ 6
☐ 11

OK
Cancel

After you disable **Dedicated scan**, the **WIDS profile** option becomes available under Radio 1 and Radio 2 configuration.

- Set the **Mode** of the Radio to **Access Point**.
- Enable **WIDS profile** and select a WIDS profile to perform background scanning.
- Go to **Dashboard > WiFi > Rogue APs** to verify that the Rogue AP list is on the same channel as the Radio you configured.



## To disable dedicated scanning and enable background scanning - CLI



When you create a new FortiAP F-series profile, dedicated scanning is automatically enabled.

### 1. Disable dedicated scanning and assign a WIDS profile:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit 433F
config platform
set type 433F
set ddscan disable
end
set handoff-sta-thresh 55
config radio-1
set band 802.11ax,n,g-only
set wids-profile "default-wids-apsan-enabled"
end
config radio-2
set band 802.11ax-5G
set wids-profile "default-wids-apsan-enabled"
end
config radio-3
set mode disabled
end
next
end
```

### 2. Configure the WIDS profile to enable background scan:

```
config wireless-controller wids-profile
edit "default-wids-apsan-enabled"
set ap-scan enable
set ap-bgscan-period 60
set ap-bgscan-intv 1
set ap-bgscan-duration 20
set ap-bgscan-idle 0
```

```

    next
end

```

### 3. Assign the wtp-profile to a managed FortiAP:

```

config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP433FTF20000002"
    set uuid e3beadf4-6fdf-51ec-d2ed-cd489ee341cb
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "433F"
    config radio-1
    end
    config radio-2
    end
  next
end

```

### 4. Check managed FortiAP Channel and background scan status:

```

FortiGate-80E-POE # diag wire wlac -c wtp FP433FTF20000002
-----WTP      1-----
WTP vd                : root
  vfid                : 0
  id                  : FP433FTF20000002
  ...
Radio 1               : AP
  ...
  bgscan oper        : enabled
    bgscan period    : oper 60 cfg 60
    bgscan intv      : 1
    bgscan dur       : 20
    bgscan idle      : 0
    bgscan rptintv   : 30
  ...
Radio 2               : AP
  ...
  bgscan oper        : enabled
    bgscan period    : oper 60 cfg 60
    bgscan intv      : 1
    bgscan dur       : 20
    bgscan idle      : 0
    bgscan rptintv   : 30
  ...
-----Total      1 WTPs-----

```

### 5. Check the Rogue AP list on FortiGate:

```

FortiGate-80E-POE # diag wire wlac -c ap-rogue
CMWP AP: vf          bssid ssid          ch rate sec
signal noise age     sta mac          wtp cnt    ici   bw sgi band
-----
UNNN AP: 0          08:5b:0e:17:91:1f fortinet-30d-... 11 130   WPA2 Personal -
39 -95    8          00:00:00:00:00:00      1 /1    56->0   20 0  11NGHT20
N
39 -95    8          FP433FTF20000002 fortinet-30d-... 11 130   WPA2 Personal -
UNNN AP: 0          08:5b:0e:4c:2b:6c fortinet      11 130   WPA2 Personal -
67 -95   18          00:00:00:00:00:00      1 /1    28->0   20 0  11NGHT20

```



```
N          FP433FTF20000002 fortinet      11  130  WPA2 Personal  -
67 -95     18      10.43.1.18:25246-0  1
...
C - Configured (G:accept, B:rogue, S:suppress, U:unconfigured)
M - AC managed (V:vdom, C:AC, N:unmanaged)
W - On wire    (Y:yes, N:no)
P - Phishing   (F:fake, O:offending, N:no)
Total Rogue-AP:34 Rogue-AP-WTP(displayed):34 Rogue-AP-WTP(total):34
Total Entries: 34
```

# Wireless network examples

This section includes the following topics:

- [Basic wireless network example on page 277](#)
- [Wireless network example with FortiSwitch on page 282](#)
- [Complex wireless network example on page 285](#)
- [FortiGate WiFi controller 1+1 fast failover example on page 295](#)
- [CAPWAP hitless failover using FGCP on page 297](#)

## Basic wireless network example

This example uses automatic configuration to set up a basic wireless network with locally stored FortiOS user groups. Note that authentication with local groups only supports PEAP, not EAP-TLS.

To configure this wireless network, perform the following tasks:

- [Configuring authentication for wireless users on page 277](#)
- [Configuring the SSID on page 278](#)
- [Adding the SSID to the FortiAP Profile on page 279](#)
- [Configuring security policies on page 279](#)
- [Connecting the FortiAP units on page 280](#)

## Configuring authentication for wireless users

You need to configure user accounts and add the users to a user group. This example shows only one account, but multiple accounts can be added as user group members.

### To configure a WiFi user - GUI

1. Go to **User & Authentication > User Definition** and select **Create New**.
2. Select **Local User** and then click **Next**.
3. Enter a **User Name** and **Password** and then click **Next**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Make sure that **Enable** is selected and then click **Create**.

### To configure the WiFi user group - GUI

1. Go to **User & Device > User Groups** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and then select **OK**:

<b>Name</b>	wlan_users
-------------	------------

<b>Type</b>	<b>Firewall</b>
<b>Members</b>	Add users.

### To configure a WiFi user and the WiFi user group - CLI

```
config user user
  edit "user01"
    set type password
    set passwd "asdf12ghjk"
  end
config user group
  edit "wlan_users"
    set member "user01"
  end
```

## Configuring the SSID

First, establish the SSID (network interface) for the network. This is independent of the number of physical access points that will be deployed. The network assigns IP addresses using DHCP.

### To configure the SSID - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New > SSID**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Interface Name</b>	example_wifi_if
<b>Traffic Mode</b>	Tunnel to Wireless Controller
<b>IP/Network Mask</b>	10.10.110.1/24
<b>Administrative Access</b>	Ping (to assist with testing)
<b>DHCP Server</b>	Enable
<b>Address Range</b>	10.10.110.2 - 10.10.110.199
<b>Netmask</b>	255.255.255.0
<b>Default Gateway</b>	Same As Interface IP
<b>DNS Server</b>	Same as System DNS
<b>SSID</b>	example_wifi
<b>Security Mode</b>	WPA2 Enterprise
<b>Authentication</b>	Local, select <b>wlan_users</b> user group.
Leave other settings at their default values.	

### To configure the SSID - CLI

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit example_wifi_if
```

```
        set ssid "example_wifi"
        set broadcast-ssid enable
        set security wpa-enterprise
        set auth usergroup
        set usergroup wlan_users
        set schedule always
    end
config system interface
    edit example_wifi_if
        set ip 10.10.110.1 255.255.255.0
    end
config system dhcp server
    edit 0
        set default-gateway 10.10.110.1
        set dns-service default
        set interface "example_wifi_if"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set end-ip 10.10.110.199
                set start-ip 10.10.110.2
            end
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
    end
end
```

## Adding the SSID to the FortiAP Profile

The radio portion of the FortiAP configuration is contained in the FortiAP Profile. By default, there is a profile for each platform (FortiAP model). You can create additional profiles if needed. The SSID needs to be specified in the profile.

### To add the SSID to the FortiAP Profile - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and edit the profile for your model of FortiAP unit.
2. In **Radio 1** and **Radio 2**, add example\_wifi in **SSID**.
3. Select **OK**.

## Configuring security policies

A security policy is needed to enable WiFi users to access the Internet on port1. First you create firewall address for the WiFi network, then you create the example\_wifi to port1 policy.

### To create a firewall address for WiFi users - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses**.
2. Select **Create New > Address**, enter the following information and select **OK**.

<b>Name</b>	wlan_user_net
<b>Type</b>	IP/Netmask
<b>Subnet / IP Range</b>	10.10.110.0/24
<b>Interface</b>	example_wifi_if

Show in Address List

Enabled

**To create a firewall address for WiFi users - CLI**

```
config firewall address
  edit "wlan_user_net"
    set associated-interface "example_wifi_if"
    set subnet 10.10.110.0 255.255.255.0
  end
```

**To create a security policy for WiFi users - GUI**

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Incoming Interface</b>	example_wifi_if
<b>Source Address</b>	wlan_user_net
<b>Outgoing Interface</b>	port1
<b>Destination Address</b>	All
<b>Schedule</b>	always
<b>Service</b>	ALL
<b>Action</b>	ACCEPT
<b>NAT</b>	ON. Select <b>Use Destination Interface Address</b> (default).
Leave other settings at their default values.	

**To create a firewall policy for WiFi users - CLI**

```
config firewall policy
  edit 0
    set srcintf "example_wifi"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set srcaddr "wlan_user_net"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set schedule always
    set service ALL
    set action accept
    set nat enable
  end
```

## Connecting the FortiAP units

You need to connect each FortiAP unit to the FortiGate unit, wait for it to be recognized, and then assign it to the AP Profile. But first, you must configure the interface to which the FortiAP units connect and the DHCP server that assigns their IP addresses.

In this example, the FortiAP units connect to port3 and are controlled through IP addresses on the 10.10.70.0/24 network.

### To configure the interface for the AP unit - GUI

1. Go to **Network > Interfaces**, and edit the interface to which the AP unit connects (in this example, port3).
2. In **Addressing mode**, select **Manual**.
3. In **IP/Network Mask**, enter an IP address and netmask for the interface (in this example, 10.10.70.1/255.255.255.0).
4. In the Administrative Access section, go to **IPv4** and select the **Security Fabric Connection** checkbox.
5. When FortiAP units are connected to the interface on FortiGate (directly or through a switch), you can go to the Edit Interface section and set the **Role** to **LAN**.

Selecting the LAN role loads the DHCP Server toggle. If you enable **DHCP Server**, the GUI can automatically set the DHCP IP range based on the interface IP address.

6. Click **OK**.

### To configure the interface for the AP unit - CLI

```
config system interface
  edit "port3"
    set mode static
    set ip 10.10.70.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess fabric
  next
end
```

### To configure the DHCP server for AP units - CLI

```
config system dhcp server
  edit 3
    set interface "port3"
    config exclude-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 10.10.70.1
        set end-ip 10.10.70.1
      next
    end
    config ip-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 10.10.70.2
        set end-ip 10.10.70.254
      next
    end
    set default-gateway 10.10.70.1
    set netmask 255.255.255.0
    set vci-match enable
    set vci-string "FortiAP"
  next
end
```

### To connect a FortiAP unit - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Connect the FortiAP unit to port 3.
3. Periodically select **Refresh** while waiting for the FortiAP unit to be listed.  
Recognition of the FortiAP unit can take up to two minutes.  
If FortiAP units are connected but cannot be recognized, try disabling VCI-Match in the DHCP server settings.
4. When the FortiAP unit is listed, select the entry to edit it.  
The **Edit Managed Access Point** window opens.
5. In **State**, select **Authorize**.
6. In **FortiAP Profile**, select the default profile for the FortiAP model.
7. Select **OK**.
8. Repeat Steps 2 through 7 for each FortiAP unit.

### To connect a FortiAP unit - CLI

1. Connect the FortiAP unit to port 3.
2. Enter

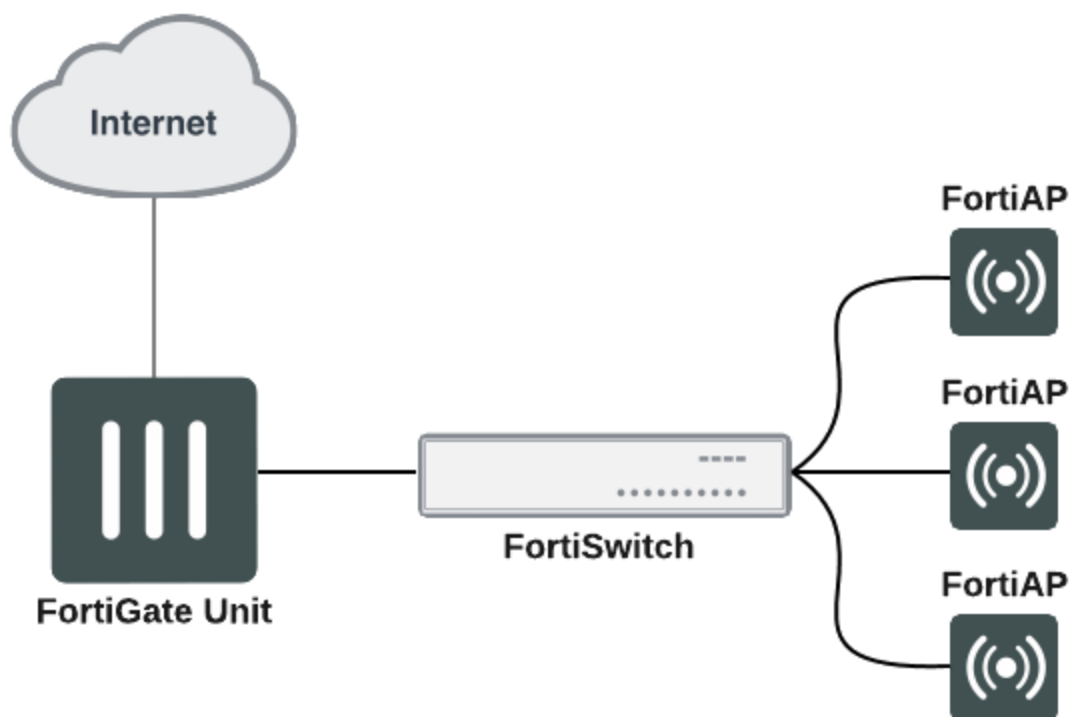
```
config wireless-controller wtp
```
3. Wait 30 seconds, then enter `get`.
4. Retry the `get` command every 15 seconds or so until the unit is listed, like this:

```
== [ FAP22B3U10600118 ]
wtp-id: FAP22B3U10600118
```
5. Edit the discovered FortiAP unit like this:

```
edit FAP22B3U10600118
set admin enable
end
```
6. Repeat Steps 2 through 5 for each FortiAP unit.

## Wireless network example with FortiSwitch

This example uses automatic configuration to set up a basic network using a FortiGate <-> FortiSwitch <-> FortiAP topology.



To configure this network, perform the following tasks:

1. [Configure FortiLink on your FortiGate unit.](#)
2. [Physically connect your FortiSwitch to the FortiGate.](#)
3. [Configure a wireless VLAN for your APs.](#)
4. [Connect your FortiAPs to the FortiSwitch and authorize your FortiAPs from the FortiGate.](#)

## Configuring FortiLink

FortiLink is a management protocol that enables FortiGates to manage any FortiSwitches connected to the FortiGate. Before connecting the FortiSwitch to the FortiGate unit, ensure the switch controller feature is enabled on the FortiGate. Once the feature is enabled, you can configure the FortiLink interface by assigning FortiGate interfaces as the designated FortiLink port.

### Enable the switch controller feature

1. Go to **System > Feature Visibility**.
2. From the Core Features list, enable the **Switch Controller** toggle.
3. Click **Apply**.

The WiFi & Switch Controller menu option now shows in the FortiGate navigation menu.



### Configure the FortiLink interface

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiLink Interface**.
2. In the **Interface members** field, click + and select the interface(s) you want to designate as FortiLink interface members.  
**Note:** If you do not see any interfaces listed in the Select Entries pane, it means there are no available unused or unreferenced physical interfaces and you must free up an interface from other configurations.
3. Configure the IP/Network Mask for your network.
4. Click **Apply**.

For more detailed instructions, refer to the FortiSwitch [Managed Switch](#) guide.

## Connecting the FortiSwitch

Some FortiSwitch models provide designated ports for the FortiLink connection, check the hardware manual to see which port is the designated FortiLink port.

### Connect the FortiSwitch

1. Connect the FortiSwitch to the FortiGate unit via the FortiLink interface you assigned earlier.
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch** and locate your switch.  
**Note:** It may take a few minutes for the switch to show up.
3. Once the FortiSwitch shows up, right-click the switch and select **Authorize**.

## Configuring a wireless VLAN

Once the FortiSwitch is connected to the FortiGate and authorized, you can use a default VLAN or create a FortiSwitch VLAN to place your FortiAPs in. A new VLAN sub-interface is created under the FortiLink interface, and it will manage the IP address assignment of your FortiAPs.

### Create a FortiSwitch VLAN

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiSwitch VLANs** and click **Create New**.
2. Configure the following fields:
  - **Interface Name:** Create a name for the VLAN.
  - **VLAN ID:** Enter a number (1-4094).
  - **Role:** Select LAN.
3. Select the Manual Address mode and input an IP/Netmask.
4. Under Administrative Access, enable **Security Fabric Connection** and any other access options you want.
5. Enable **DHCP Server**. Edit the default address range if needed.
6. When you finished, click **OK**.

For more detailed instructions on creating a FortiSwitch VLAN, refer to the FortiSwitch [Managed Switch](#) guide.

Once you create a FortiSwitch VLAN, assign the VLAN to the FortiSwitch ports you want to connect a FortiAP to.

### Assign a VLAN to a FortiSwitch port

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports** and locate the port you want to connect a FortiAP to.
2. Click to select the port and click the edit icon in the Native VLAN column to change the VLAN.  
The Select Entries menu loads.
3. From the Select Entries menu, select the FortiSwitch VLAN you created and click **Apply**.

## Connecting the FortiAP units

After you apply the FortiAP VLAN to a FortiSwitch port, you can connect a FortiAP unit to that FortiSwitch Port. Wait a few minutes for the FortiAP to be recognized, and then authorize the FortiAP.

### Connect a FortiAP unit

1. Connect the FortiAP to the FortiSwitch port you've assigned the FortiAP VLAN.
2. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs** and wait for the FortiAP unit to be listed.  
**Note:** Recognition of the FortiAP unit can take up to two minutes, you can periodically click the **Refresh** button.
3. When the FortiAP unit is listed, right-click and select **Authorize** to authorize the unit.  
The FortiAP can now be managed by FortiGate through a FortiSwitch.

Once the FortiAP is connected and authorized by the FortiGate, you can configure SSIDs and attach profiles to allow wireless access to the AP. For instructions on setting up your wireless network, see [Wireless network configuration tasks on page 30](#).

## Complex wireless network example

This example creates multiple networks and uses custom AP profiles.

### Scenario example

In this example, Example Co. provides two wireless networks, one for its employees and the other for customers or other guests of its business. Guest users have access only to the Internet, not to the company's private network. The equipment for these WiFi networks consists of FortiAP units controlled by a FortiGate unit.

The employee network operates in 802.11n mode on both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands. Client IP addresses are in the 10.10.120.0/24 subnet, with 10.10.120.1 the IP address of the WAP. The guest network also operates in 802.11n mode, but only on the 2.4 GHz band. Client IP addresses are on the 10.10.115.0/24 subnet, with 10.10.115.1 the IP address of the WAP.

On the FortiAP units, the 802.11n mode also supports 802.11g and 802.11b clients on the 2.4 GHz band and 802.11a clients on the 5 GHz band.

The guest network WAP broadcasts its SSID, the employee network WAP does not.

The employee network uses WPA-Enterprise authentication through a FortiGate user group. The guest network features a captive portal. When a guest first tries to connect to the Internet, a login page requests logon credentials. Guests use numbered guest accounts authenticated by RADIUS. The captive portal for the guests includes a disclaimer page.

In this example, the FortiAP units connect to port 3 and are assigned addresses on the 192.168.8.0/24 subnet.

## Configuration example

To configure these wireless networks, perform the following tasks:

- [Configuring authentication for employee wireless users on page 286](#)
- [Configuring authentication for guest wireless users on page 287](#)
- [Configuring the SSIDs on page 288](#)
- [Configuring the FortiAP profile on page 290](#)
- [Configuring firewall policies on page 291](#)
- [Connecting the FortiAP units on page 293](#)

## Configuring authentication for employee wireless users

Employees have user accounts on the FortiGate unit. This example shows creation of one user account, but you can create multiple accounts and add them as members to the user group.

### To configure a WiFi user - GUI

1. Go to **User & Authentication > User Definition** and select **Create New**.
2. Select **Local User** and then click **Next**.
3. Enter a **User Name** and **Password** and then click **Next**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Make sure that **Enable** is selected and then click **Create**.

### To configure the user group for employee access - GUI

1. Go to **User & Device > User Groups** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and then select **OK**:

<b>Name</b>	employee-group
<b>Type</b>	Firewall
<b>Members</b>	Add users.

### To configure a WiFi user and the user group for employee access - CLI

```
config user user
  edit "user01"
    set type password
    set passwd "asdf12ghjk"
  end
config user group
  edit "employee-group"
    set member "user01"
  end
```

The user authentication setup will be complete when you select the employee-group in the SSID configuration.

## Configuring authentication for guest wireless users

Guests are assigned temporary user accounts created on a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server stores each user's group name in the Fortinet-Group-Name attribute. Wireless users are in the group named "wireless".

The FortiGate unit must be configured to access the RADIUS server.

### To configure the FortiGate unit to access the guest RADIUS server - GUI

1. Go to **User & Authentication > RADIUS Servers** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and select OK:

<b>Name</b>	guestRADIUS
<b>Primary Server IP/Name</b>	10.11.102.100
<b>Primary Server Secret</b>	grikfwpfdg
<b>Secondary Server IP/Name</b>	Optional
<b>Secondary Server Secret</b>	Optional
<b>Authentication Scheme</b>	Use default, unless server requires otherwise.
Leave other settings at their default values.	

### To configure the FortiGate unit to access the guest RADIUS server - CLI

```
config user radius
edit guestRADIUS
set auth-type auto
set server 10.11.102.100
set secret grikfwpfdg
end
```

### To configure the user group for guest access - GUI

1. Go to **User & Device > User Groups** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and then select **OK**:

<b>Name</b>	guest-group
<b>Type</b>	Firewall
<b>Members</b>	Leave empty.

3. Select **Create new**.
4. Enter:

<b>Remote Server</b>	Select <b>guestRADIUS</b> .
<b>Groups</b>	Select <b>wireless</b> .

5. Select **OK**.

### To configure the user group for guest access - CLI

```
config user group
  edit "guest-group"
    set member "guestRADIUS"
  config match
    edit 0
      set server-name "guestRADIUS"
      set group-name "wireless"
    end
  end
end
```

The user authentication setup will be complete when you select the guest-group user group in the SSID configuration.

## Configuring the SSIDs

First, establish the SSIDs (network interfaces) for the employee and guest networks. This is independent of the number of physical access points that will be deployed. Both networks assign IP addresses using DHCP.

### To configure the employee SSID - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New > SSID**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Interface Name</b>	example_inc
<b>Traffic Mode</b>	Tunnel to Wireless Controller
<b>IP/Netmask</b>	10.10.120.1/24
<b>Administrative Access</b>	Ping (to assist with testing)
<b>Enable DHCP</b>	Enable
<b>Address Range</b>	10.10.120.2 - 10.10.120.199
<b>Netmask</b>	255.255.255.0
<b>Default Gateway</b>	Same As Interface IP
<b>DNS Server</b>	Same as System DNS
<b>SSID</b>	example_inc
<b>Security Mode</b>	WPA/WPA2-Enterprise
<b>Authentication</b>	Select <b>Local</b> , then select <b>employee-group</b> .
Leave other settings at their default values.	

### To configure the employee SSID - CLI

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit example_inc
    set ssid "example_inc"
    set security wpa-enterprise
    set auth usergroup
    set usergroup employee-group
```

```

        set schedule always
    end
    config system interface
        edit example_inc
            set ip 10.10.120.1 255.255.255.0
        end
    config system dhcp server
        edit 0
            set default-gateway 10.10.120.1
            set dns-service default
            set interface example_inc
            config ip-range
                edit 1
                    set end-ip 10.10.120.199
                    set start-ip 10.10.120.2
                end
            set lease-time 7200
            set netmask 255.255.255.0
        end
    end
end

```

### To configure the example\_guest SSID - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Name</b>	example_guest
<b>IP/Netmask</b>	10.10.115.1/24
<b>Administrative Access</b>	Ping (to assist with testing)
<b>Enable DHCP</b>	Enable
<b>Address Range</b>	10.10.115.2 - 10.10.115.50
<b>Netmask</b>	255.255.255.0
<b>Default Gateway</b>	Same as Interface IP
<b>DNS Server</b>	Same as System DNS
<b>SSID</b>	example_guest
<b>Security Mode</b>	Captive Portal
<b>Portal Type</b>	Authentication
<b>Authentication Portal</b>	Local
<b>User Groups</b>	Select <b>guest-group</b> .
Leave other settings at their default values.	

### To configure the example\_guest SSID - CLI

```

config wireless-controller vap
    edit example_guest
        set ssid "example_guest"
        set security captive-portal
    end
end

```

```
        set selected-usergroups guest-group
        set schedule always
    end
config system interface
    edit example_guest
        set ip 10.10.115.1 255.255.255.0
    end
config system dhcp server
    edit 0
        set default-gateway 10.10.115.1
        set dns-service default
        set interface "example_guest"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set end-ip 10.10.115.50
                set start-ip 10.10.115.2
            end
        set lease-time 7200
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
    end
end
```

## Configuring the FortiAP profile

The FortiAP Profile defines the radio settings for the networks. The profile provides access to both Radio 1 (2.4 GHz) and Radio 2 (5 GHz) for the employee virtual AP, but provides access only to Radio 1 for the guest virtual AP.

### To configure the FortiAP Profile - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Name</b>	example_AP
<b>Platform</b>	FAP221E
<b>Radio 1</b>	
<b>Mode</b>	Access Point
<b>Band</b>	802.11n
<b>Channel plan</b>	Select <b>Three Channels</b> .
<b>Transmit power mode</b>	Select <b>Percent</b> .
<b>Transmit power</b>	Set the bar to <b>100%</b> .
<b>SSID</b>	Select <b>Manual</b> and select <b>example_inc</b> and <b>example_guest</b> .
<b>Radio 2</b>	
<b>Mode</b>	Access Point
<b>Band</b>	802.11n_5G
<b>Channel</b>	Select <b>All</b> .

<b>Transmit power mode</b>	Select <b>Percent</b> .
<b>Transmit power</b>	Set the bar to <b>100%</b> .
<b>SSID</b>	Select <b>Manual</b> and select <b>example_inc</b> .

### To configure the AP Profile - CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "example_AP"
config platform
set type 221E
end
config radio-1
set ap-bgscan enable
set band 802.11n
set channel "1" "6" "11"
set vaps "example_inc" "example_guest"
end
config radio-2
set ap-bgscan enable
set band 802.11n-5G
set channel "36" "40" "44" "48" "149" "153" "157" "161" "165"
set vaps "example_inc"
end
```

## Configuring firewall policies

Identity-based firewall policies are needed to enable the WLAN users to access the Internet on Port1. First you create firewall addresses for employee and guest users, then you create the firewall policies.

### To create firewall addresses for employee and guest WiFi users

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Addresses**.
2. Select **Create New**, enter the following information and select **OK**.

<b>Address Name</b>	employee-wifi-net
<b>Type</b>	Subnet / IP Range
<b>Subnet / IP Range</b>	10.10.120.0/24
<b>Interface</b>	example_inc

3. Select **Create New**, enter the following information and select **OK**.

<b>Address Name</b>	guest-wifi-net
<b>Type</b>	Subnet / IP Range
<b>Subnet / IP Range</b>	10.10.115.0/24
<b>Interface</b>	example_guest



### To create firewall policies for employee WiFi users - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Incoming Interface</b>	example_inc
<b>Source Address</b>	employee-wifi-net
<b>Outgoing Interface</b>	port1
<b>Destination Address</b>	all
<b>Schedule</b>	always
<b>Service</b>	ALL
<b>Action</b>	ACCEPT
<b>NAT</b>	Enable NAT

3. Optionally, select security profile for wireless users.
4. Select **OK**.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4 but select Internal as the Destination Interface/Zone to provide access to the ExampleCo private network.

### To create firewall policies for employee WiFi users - CLI

```
config firewall policy
edit 0
    set srcintf "employee_inc"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set srcaddr "employee-wifi-net"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
    set nat enable
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
next
edit 0
    set srcintf "employee_inc"
    set dstintf "internal"
    set srcaddr "employee-wifi-net"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
    set nat enable
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
end
```

### To create a firewall policy for guest WiFi users - GUI

1. Go to **Policy & Objects > Firewall Policy** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information and select **OK**:

<b>Incoming Interface</b>	example_guest
<b>Source Address</b>	guest-wifi-net
<b>Outgoing Interface</b>	port1
<b>Destination Address</b>	all
<b>Schedule</b>	always
<b>Service</b>	ALL
<b>Action</b>	ACCEPT
<b>NAT</b>	Enable NAT

3. Optionally, select **UTM** and set up UTM features for wireless users.
4. Select **OK**.

### To create a firewall policy for guest WiFi users - CLI

```
config firewall policy
edit 0
    set srcintf "example_guest"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set srcaddr "guest-wifi-net"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
    set nat enable
end
```

## Connecting the FortiAP units

You need to connect each FortiAP unit to the FortiGate unit, wait for it to be recognized, and then assign it to the AP Profile. But first, you must configure the interface to which the FortiAP units connect and the DHCP server that assigns their IP addresses.

In this example, the FortiAP units connect to port 3 and are controlled through IP addresses on the 10.10.70.0/24 network.

### To configure the interface for the AP unit - GUI

1. Go to **Network > Interfaces**, and edit the interface to which the AP unit connects (in this example, port3).
2. In **Addressing mode**, select **Manual**.
3. In **IP/Network Mask**, enter an IP address and netmask for the interface (in this example, 10.10.70.1/255.255.255.0).
4. In the Administrative Access section, go to **IPv4** and select the **Security Fabric Connection** checkbox.

5. When FortiAP units are connected to the interface on FortiGate (directly or through a switch), you can go to the Edit Interface section and set the **Role** to **LAN**.  
Selecting the LAN role loads the DHCP Server toggle. If you enable **DHCP Server**, the GUI can automatically set the DHCP IP range based on the interface IP address.
6. Click **OK**.

### To configure the interface for the AP unit - CLI

```
config system interface
  edit "port3"
    set mode static
    set ip 10.10.70.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess fabric
  next
end
```

### To configure the DHCP server for AP units - CLI

```
config system dhcp server
  edit 3
    set interface "port3"
    config ip-range
      edit 1
        set start-ip 10.10.70.2
        set end-ip 10.10.70.254
      next
    end
    set default-gateway 10.10.70.1
    set netmask 255.255.255.0
    set vci-match enable
    set vci-string "FortiAP"
  next
end
```

The optional `vci-match` and `vci-string` fields ensure that the DHCP server will provide IP addresses only to FortiAP units.

### To connect a FortiAP unit - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**.
2. Connect the FortiAP unit to port 3.
3. Periodically select **Refresh** while waiting for the FortiAP unit to be listed.  
Recognition of the FortiAP unit can take up to two minutes.  
If there is persistent difficulty recognizing FortiAP units, try disabling VCI-Match in the DHCP server settings.
4. When the FortiAP unit is listed, select the entry to edit it.  
The **Edit Managed Access Point** window opens.
5. In **State**, select **Authorize**.
6. In the **AP Profile**, select **[Change]** and then select the **example\_AP** profile.
7. Select **OK**.
8. Repeat Steps 2 through 7 for each FortiAP unit.

### To connect a FortiAP unit - CLI

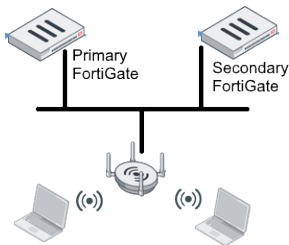
1. Connect the FortiAP unit to port 3.
2. Enter:  
`config wireless-controller wtp`
3. Wait 30 seconds, then enter `get`.
4. Retry the `get` command every 15 seconds or so until the unit is listed, like this:  

```
== [ FAP22B3U10600118 ]
wtp-id: FAP22B3U10600118
```
5. Edit the discovered FortiAP unit like this:  

```
edit FAP22B3U10600118
  set admin enable
  set wtp-profile example_AP
end
```
6. Repeat Steps 2 through 5 for each FortiAP unit.

## FortiGate WiFi controller 1+1 fast failover example

This example uses a simple network topology to set up 1+1 fast failover between FortiGate WiFi controllers. The primary and secondary FortiGates must be routed into subnets and NAT must not be done on the traffic. The FortiAP must be able to reach both the primary and secondary FortiGates.



The following takes place in the event of a failover:

1. The primary FortiGate syncs the wireless configuration to the secondary FortiGate.
2. If the primary FortiGate fails, the secondary FortiGate takes over management of the FortiAP. The client can still connect with the SSID from the FortiAP and pass traffic.
3. When the primary FortiGate is back online, it returns to managing the FortiAP.

In the following CLI example, the primary FortiGate has an IP address of 10.43.1.80, and the secondary FortiGate has an IP address of 10.43.1.62.

### To configure the primary FortiGate

```
config wireless-controller inter-controller
  set inter-controller mode 1+1
  set inter-controller key 123456
  config inter-controller-peer
    edit 1
      set peer-ip 10.43.1.62
      set peer-priority secondary
    next
```

```
end
```

### To configure the secondary FortiGate

```
config wireless-controller inter-controller
  set inter-controller mode 1+1
  set inter-controller key 123456
  set inter-controller-pri secondary
  config inter-controller-peer
    edit 1
      set peer-ip 10.43.1.80
    next
  end
```

### To run diagnose commands

1. On the primary FortiGate, run the `diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
WC fast failover info
cfg iter: 1 (age=17995, size=220729, fp=0x5477e28)
dhcpd_db iter: 123 (age=132, size=1163, fp=0x5435930)
dhcpd_ipmac iter: 123 (age=132, size=2860, fp=0x587d848)
mode: 1+1-ffo
pri: primary
key csum: 0x9c99
max: 10
wait: 10
peer cnt: 1
FWF60E4Q16027198: 10.43.1.62:5245 secondary UP (age=0)
```

2. On the secondary FortiGate, run the `diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
WC fast failover info
mode: 1+1-ffo
status: monitoring
pri: secondary
key csum: 0x43e
max: 10
wait: 10
peer cnt: 1
FG22E1T919900557: 10.43.1.80:5246 primary UP (age=0)
  dfile 0 iter 1 (age=133, size=1564731/1564731)
  dfile 1 iter 1 (age=163, size=0/0)
  dfile 2 iter 1 (age=163, size=0/0)
```



You cannot use FortiGate Clustering Protocol and Wireless 1+1 fast failover together. They are two different HA features and cannot be combined.

---

## CAPWAP hitless failover using FGCP



CAPWAP hitless failover with FGCP is only available on FortiAP AX platforms and F Series models when FortiGates are running in Active-Passive mode.

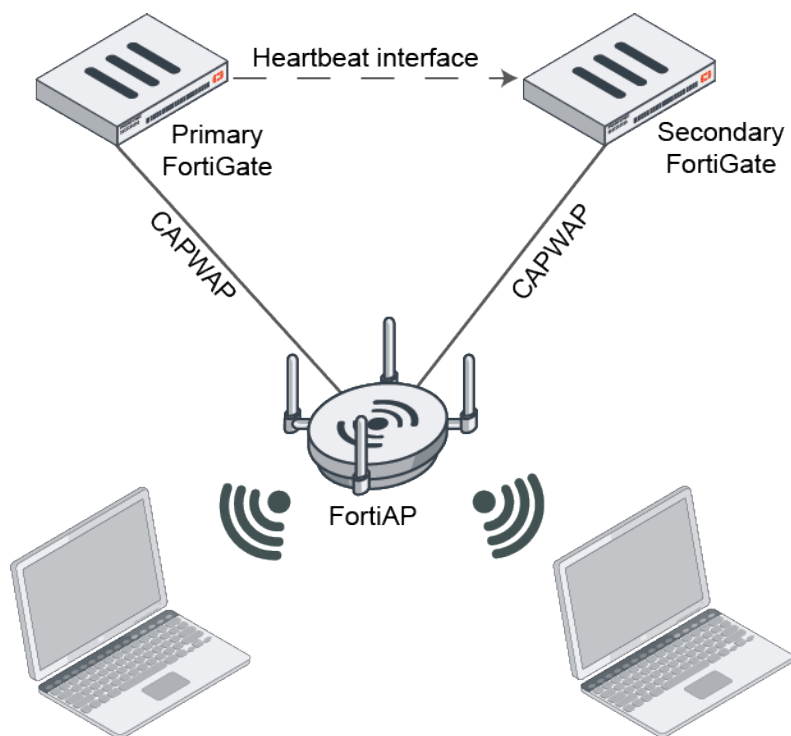
This example uses a simple network topology to set up FortiGates as WLAN controllers in HA Active-Passive by using the FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP). FGCP is the most commonly used HA solution. It enables two FortiGates Wireless controllers of the same type and model to be put into a cluster in Active-Passive (A-P) mode. A-P mode provides redundancy by having one or more FortiGates in hot standby in case the primary device experiences a detectable failure. If a failure occurs, CAPWAP traffic quickly fails over to a secondary device, preventing significant AP downtime with minimal impact for the wireless clients.

For more information, refer to [Failover protection](#) in the FortiGate Administration Guide.

The FortiAP establishes two CAPWAP tunnels:

- One tunnel to an Active/Primary FortiGate.
- One tunnel to a Backup/Standby FortiGate.

The CAPWAP traffic is always processed by the Active FortiGate, which relays the FortiAP information to the Backup/Standby FortiGate using heartbeat interface over FGCP.



The FortiAP forms dual CAPWAP sessions with both FortiGates:

- `fsm state RUN` with the Active FortiGate.
- `RUN_STANDBY` with the Backup FortiGate.

FortiAP uses two sets of control and data channels:

- FAP----->5246/5247----->Active FGT
- FAP----->5248/5249----->Active FGT -----5246/5247----->Secondary FGT

When the primary FortiGate fails, the secondary FortiGate immediately takes over as the new active FortiGate and manages the FortiAP. Wireless clients connected over tunnel/bridge SSID also maintain the connection during the failover.

The general configuration steps are:

1. Configure the primary FortiGate for HA with higher priority.
2. Configure the secondary FortiGate for HA with a lower device priority than the primary FortiGate.
3. Connect heartbeat interface to the primary FortiGate.
4. Connect the LAN interface to the network.
5. Configure the override flag in HA configuration for preemptive failover and fallback.
6. Manually configure the override and priority configuration on both FortiGates as they don't sync as part of HA sync.
7. Enable session pickup in the Active FortiGate's HA configuration. This setting ensures that existing sessions on active firewall is synced with the backup unit and the session persists upon failover.

### To configure the primary FortiGate

For detailed instructions on setting up an HA active-passive cluster, refer to [HA active-passive cluster setup](#) in the FortiGate Administration Guide.

```
config system ha
  set group-name "FGT-Prod"
  set mode a-p
  set password <PWD>
  set hbdev "ha" 0
  set override disable
  set priority 200
  set session-pickup enable
  set override disable
end
```

High Availability

Mode

Active-Passive

Device priority

200

Cluster Settings

Group name

FGT-Prod

Password

.....

Change

Session pickup

☒

Monitor interfaces

+

Heartbeat interfaces

ha

+

☐ Management Interface Reservation

☐ Unicast Heartbeat



When `session-pickup` is enabled in the HA settings, existing TCP sessions are kept, and users on the network are not impacted by downtime as the traffic can be passed without re-establishing the sessions. Other sessions such as UDP, ICMP, and etc., can also be synchronized. For more information, refer to the [FortiGate CLI documentation](#).

### To configure the secondary FortiGate

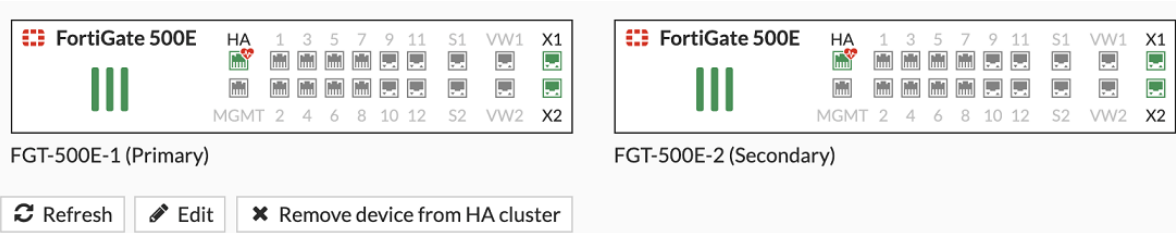
```
config system ha
  set group-name "FGT-Prod"
  set mode a-p
  set password <PWD>
  set hbdev "ha" 0
  set override disable
  set priority 20
  set session-pickup enable
  set override disable
end
```



When `override` is enabled, it ensures the FortiGate will always get the same node as the primary FortiGate.



When you are finished, confirm the cluster shows both nodes.



Status	Priority	Hostname	Serial No.	Role	System Uptime	Sessions	Throughput
✓ Synchronized	200	FGT-500E-1	FG5H0E5819905179	Primary	13d 9h	339	4.62 Mbps
✓ Synchronized	20	FGT-500E-2	FG5H0E5819900844	Secondary	1d 8h	24	28.00 kbps

## Diagnose commands

### FGCP debug commands

#### To check HA status

Execute the following command:

```
diagnose sys ha status
HA information
Statistics
    traffic.local = s:0 p:694553983 b:606857125628
    traffic.total = s:0 p:694508998 b:606848291577
    activity.ha_id_changes = 3
    activity.fdb = c:0 q:0
Model=500, Mode=2 Group=0 Debug=0
nvcluster=1, ses_pickup=1, delay=0
[Debug_Zone HA information]
HA group member information: is_manage_primary=1.
FG5H0E5819905179:      Primary, serialno_prio=0, usr_priority=200, hostname=FGT-500E-1
FG5H0E5819900844:    Secondary, serialno_prio=1, usr_priority=20, hostname=FGT-500E-2
[Kernel HA information]
vcluster 1, state=work, primary_ip=169.254.0.1, primary_id=0:
FG5H0E5819905179:      Primary, ha_prio/o_ha_prio=0/0
FG5H0E5819900844:    Secondary, ha_prio/o_ha_prio=1/1
```

#### To check HA sync

```
get sys ha status
```

## Wireless Controller HA status

#### To check the status of the primary FortiGate

On the primary FortiGate, run the `diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
FGT-500E-1 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha
HA info:
  mode: a-p (2)
  group name: FGT-Prod
  master: 1
```

### To check the status of the secondary FortiGate

On the secondary FortiGate, run the `diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
FGT-500E-2 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ha
HA info:
  mode: a-p (2)
  group name: FGT-Prod
  master: 0
```

## Troubleshooting FortiAP

### To check FortiAP connectivity to the primary and secondary FortiGates

On each FortiAP, you can check their connectivity to both the primary and secondary FortiGates with the following command:

```
FAP-431F # cw_diag -c ha
wcha_mode: FGCP @2294596

ACS-0: 10.199.0.46:5246          10.199.0.46:5247          RUN (25929)          9      HA M 5248
FG5H0E5819905179 25653 FGT-500E
ACS-1: 10.199.0.46:5248          10.199.0.46:5249          RUN_STANDBY (23789)  9      HA S 5248
FG5H0E5819900844 23789 FGT-500E-2

HA SYNC status:
  vap00 1, vap01 1, vap02 1, vap03 1,
  vap10 1, vap11 1, vap12 1, vap14 1,
```

Control plane	5246 5248
DATA plane	5247 5249
Connection state	RUN RUN_STANDBY

You can verify the connection with the following command:

```
FAP-431F # cw_diag -c acs
WTP Configuration
  name          : FAP-431F
  loc           : N/A
  ap mode       : thin AP
  ...
ACS 0 info
  ha   info     : ac=FG5H0E5819905179 master=1 ctl_port=5248
```

```
fsm-state           : RUN 264272
ac-ip-addr          : 10.199.0.46:5246,5247      MULTICAST
ac-name             : FGT-500E
...
ACS 1 info
  ha info           : ac=FG5H0E5819900844 master=0 ctl_port=5248
  fsm-state         : RUN_STANDBY 262132
  ac-ip-addr        : 10.199.0.46:5248,5249      MULTICAST
  ac-name           : FGT-500E-2
  ...
```

### Debugging options from FortiAP

```
cw_debug on
cw_diag debug ha 5
```

### Debugging options from FortiGate

```
diag wireless-controller wlac debug ha 4
diag debug enable
```

# FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client

By default, a FortiWiFi unit operates by as a wireless access point. However, select FortiWiFi models can be configured to operate as a wireless client, connecting the FortiGate to another wireless network.

Wireless client mode is supported on the following models:

## Models

FWF-40F, FWF-40F-3G4G,  
FWF-60E, FWF-60E\_DSL, FWF-60E\_DSLJ, FWF-60F,  
FWF-61E, FWF-61F,  
FWF-80F-2R, FWF-81F-2R, FWF-81F-2R-POE, FWF-81F-2R-3G4G-POE

This section includes the following topics:

- [FortiWiFi unit in client mode](#)
- [Configuring a FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client](#)

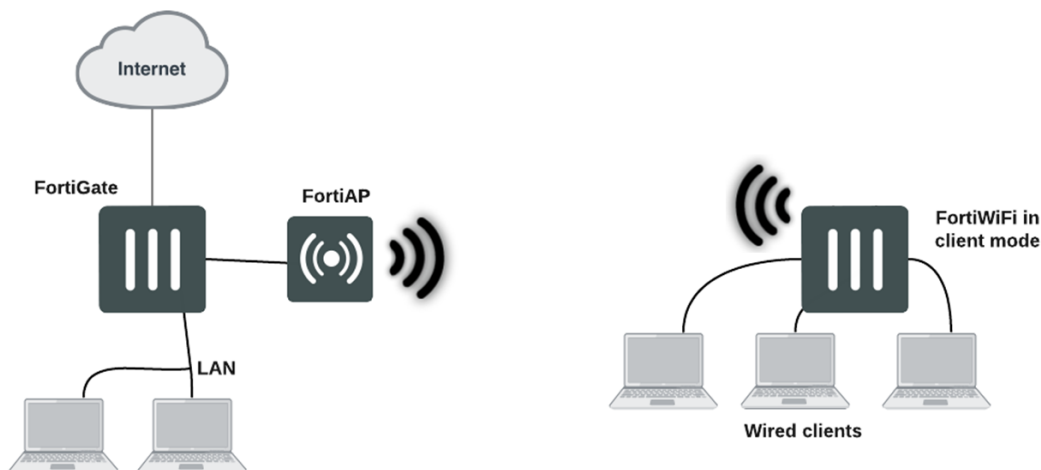
## FortiWiFi unit in client mode

In client mode, the FortiWiFi unit connects to a remote WiFi access point to access other networks or the Internet. This is most useful when the FortiWiFi unit is in a location that does not have a wired infrastructure.

For example, in a warehouse where shipping and receiving are on opposite sides of the building, running cables might not be an option due to the warehouse environment. The FortiWiFi unit can support wired users using its Ethernet ports and can connect to another wireless access point as a client. This connects the wired users to the network using the 802.11 WiFi standard as a backbone.

In client mode, the FortiWiFi unit cannot operate as an AP. WiFi clients cannot see or connect to the FortiWiFi unit in client mode.

## FortiWiFi unit in client mode



## Configuring a FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client



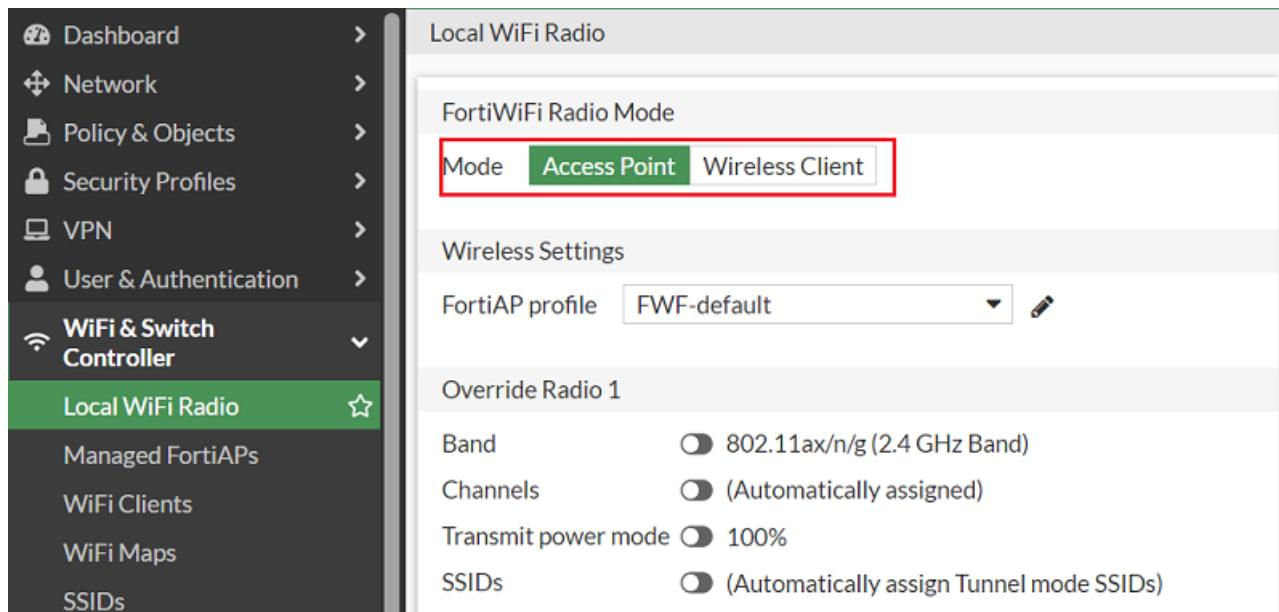
Wireless client configuration is only available on select FortiWiFi models. See [FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client on page 303](#) for the list of supported models.



Before setting up the FortiWiFi unit as a wireless client using the steps described below, make sure to remove any AP WiFi configurations such as SSIDs, DHCP servers, policies, and software switch members using the CLI or GUI.

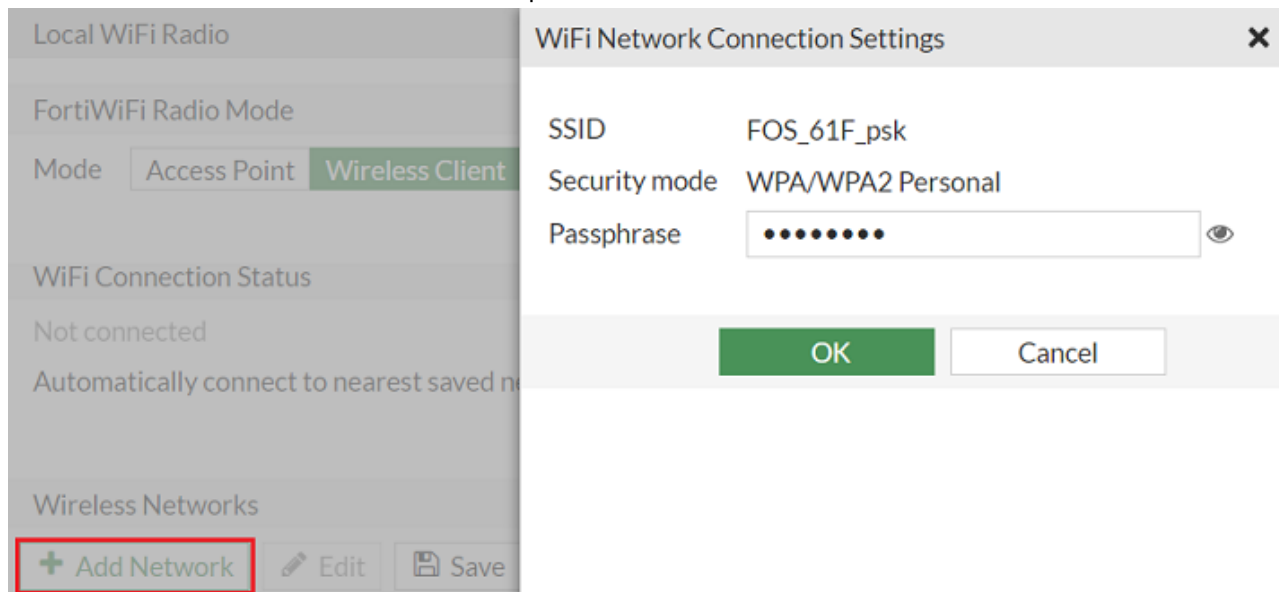
## To configure wireless client mode - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi and Switch Controller > Local WiFi Radio** and change the **Mode** to **Wireless Client**.



**Note:** You must remove any AP WiFi configurations such as SSIDs, DHCP servers, policies, and software switch members before you can change the mode to Wireless Client. Once you select Wireless Client, the FortiWiFi unit will reboot.

2. Click **Add Network** and select an SSID to set up the WiFi connection.



3. Click **OK** to save the WiFi Network Connection Setting.
4. From the Local WiFi Radio page, verify that the WiFi network is connected.


## Local WiFi Radio

## FortiWiFi Radio Mode

Mode Access Point **Wireless Client**

## WiFi Connection Status

Connected:  FOS\_61F\_psk 

Automatically connect to nearest saved network 

5. Go to **Policy & Object > Firewall Policy** and click **Create New** to create a firewall policy.
6. Enter the following policy information:

Incoming Interface (srcintf)	wifi
Source Address (srcaddr)	all



For FortiWiFi 80F series models, you must select "aplink" as the destination interface in the firewall policy. Older FortiWiFi models must select "wifi" as the destination interface.

7. Configure remaining fields as needed, when you are finished, click **OK**.

### To configure wireless client mode - CLI

1. Change the wireless mode to client.

```
config system global
  set wireless-mode client
end
```

**Note:** You must remove any AP WiFi configurations such as SSIDs, DHCP servers, policies, and software switch members before you can change the mode to Wireless Client. Once you select Wireless Client, the FortiWiFi unit will reboot.

2. Set up a wifi-network entry under interface "wifi".

```
config system interface
  edit "wifi"
    config wifi-networks
      edit 1
        set wifi-ssid "FOS_61F_psk"
        set wifi-passphrase *
```

```
        next
    end
next
end
```

3. Create a firewall policy from "internal" to "wifi".



For FortiWiFi 80F series models, you *must* select "aplink" as the destination interface in the firewall policy. Older FortiWiFi models must select "wifi" as the destination interface.

---

```
config firewall policy
edit 1
    set name "lan"
    set srcintf "internal"
    set dstintf "wifi"
    set action accept
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set nat enable
next
end
```

4. Connect a wired station to the internal ports of the FortiWiFi to verify that it can pass traffic to the Internet.

## Controlled AP selection support in FortiWiFi client mode

Use the following CLI commands to provide a more controlled AP selection method (supported in FortiWiFi client mode).

### Syntax

```
config system interface
edit {name}
    set wifi-ap-band {any | 5g-preferred | 5g-only}
next
end
```

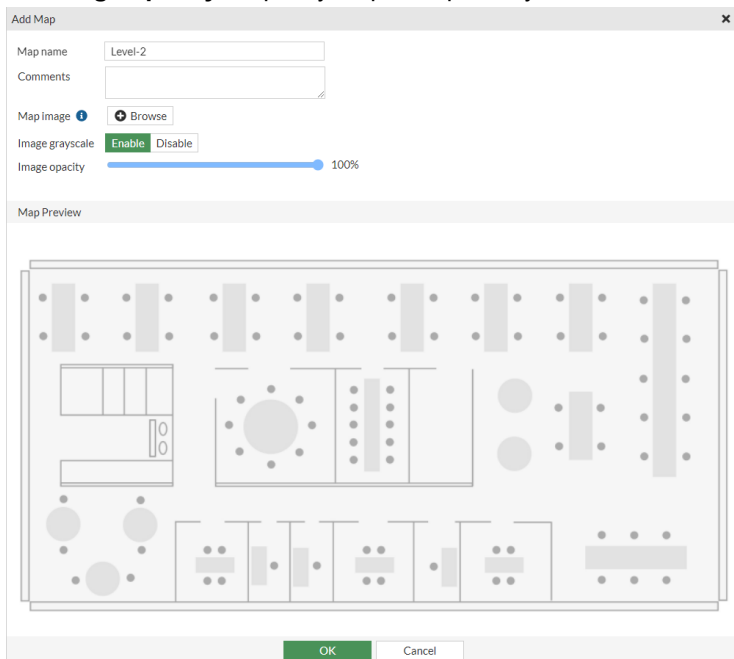


## WiFi maps

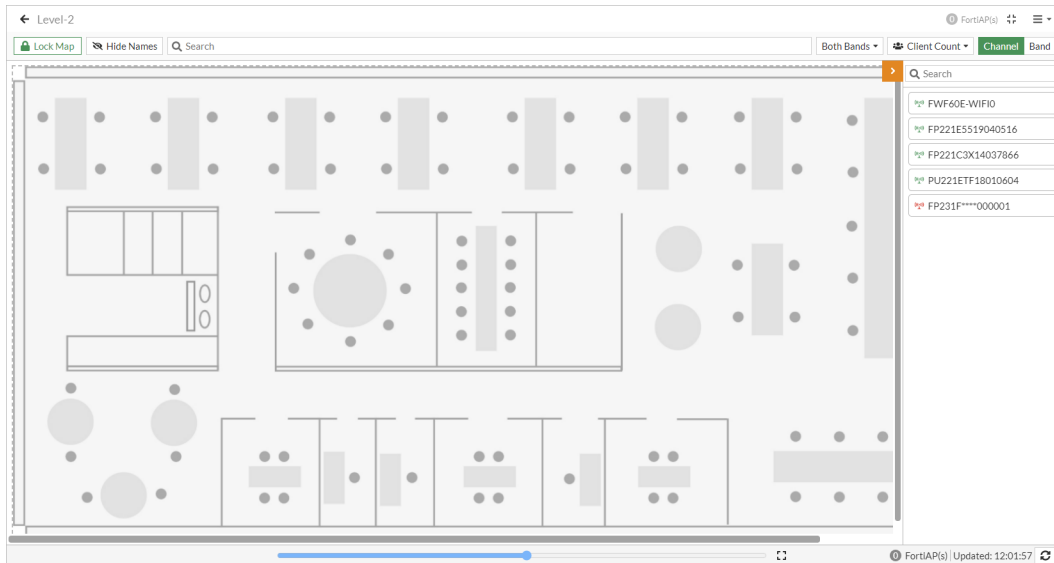
You can place FortiAP units on a custom map that you upload, such as an office floor plan. WiFi Maps show real-time status and alerts of FortiAP units so that you can quickly see the location and status of each FortiAP unit on the map.

### To configure WiFi maps on the FortiWiFi and FortiAP GUI

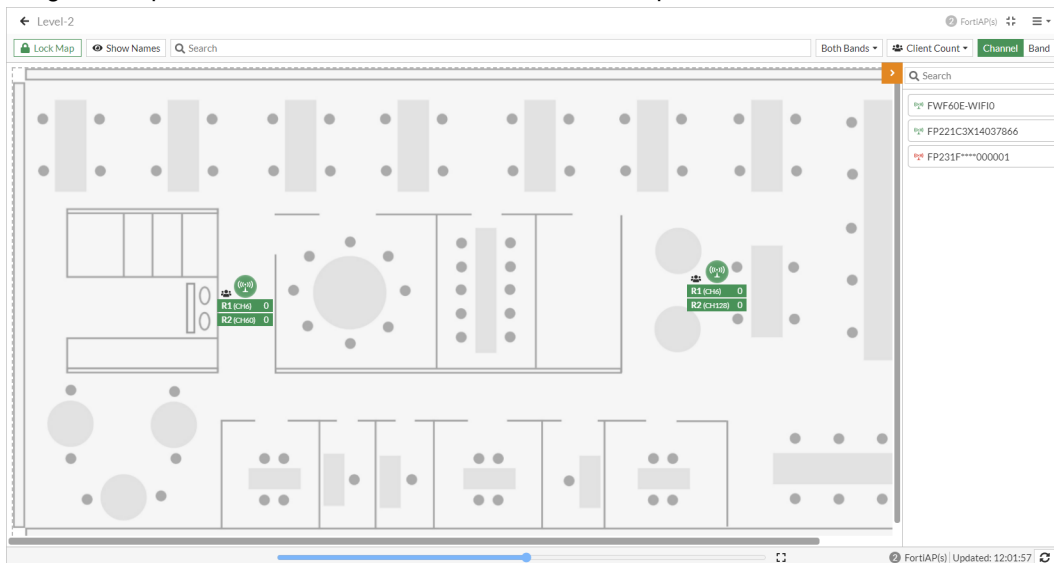
1. Obtain a floor plan or map (in PNG, JPEG, or GIF format) of where FortiAP units are located.
2. Go to **WiFi Controller > WiFi Maps** and click **Create New**.
  - a. Enter a **Map name** for example, **Level-2**.
  - a. Click **Browse** to upload the map.
  - a. Optionally, enable **Image grayscale** to change a color map to grayscale.
  - a. Set **Image opacity** to specify map transparency.



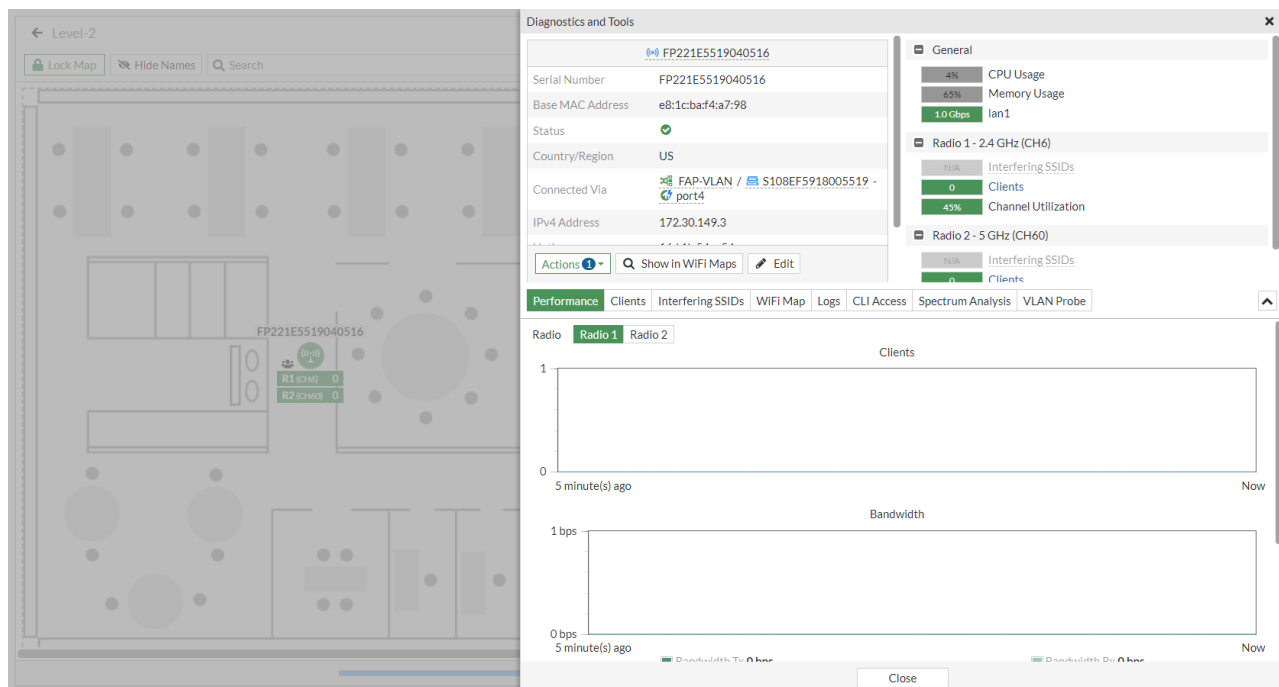
- a. Click **OK**.
3. Place FortiAP units on the map you uploaded.
    - a. Click **Unlock Map** to enable editing.  
The list of unplaced APs loads.



- b. Drag and drop each FortiAP unit onto its location on the map.

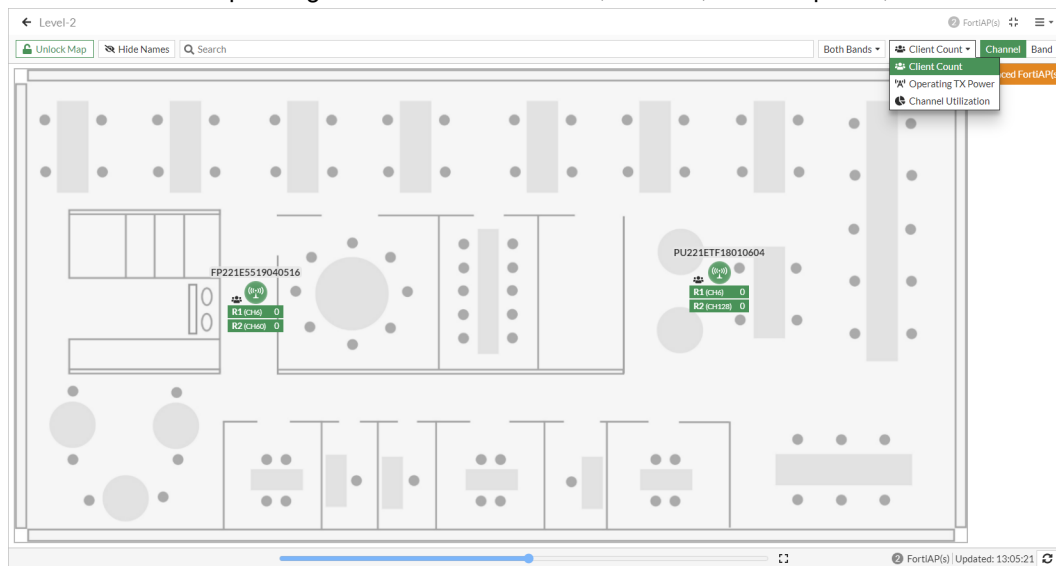


- c. When all FortiAP units have been placed on the map, click **Lock Map** to save.
4. To view a FortiAP unit's detailed operating data or to configure AP settings, right-click the FortiAP icon and select **Diagnostics and Tools**.



5.

6. Use the filters above the map to show one or both the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band. You can also use the dropdown lists to show numerical operating data such as client count, channel, radio TX power, and channel utilization.



### To configure WiFi maps using the FortiWiFi and FortiAP CLI:

```
config wireless-controller region
  edit <MAP_NAME>
    set grayscale enable <enable|disable>
    set opacity 40 <0-100>
  next
end
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit <FAP_SN>
    set region <MAP_NAME>
```

```
    set region-x "0.419911" <0-1>
    set region-y "0.349466" <0-1>
  next
end
```

# Support for location-based services

FortiOS supports location-based services by collecting information about WiFi devices near FortiAPs, even if the devices do not associate with the network.

WiFi devices broadcast packets as they search for available networks. The FortiGate WiFi controller can collect information about the interval, duration, and signal strength of these packets. Through FortiPresence, you can use this information to track and analyze the movements of the device owner. FortiPresence processes the data and displays it in an analytics dashboard. The device owners are not personally identified, each is known only by the MAC address of their WiFi device.

After enabling location tracking on the FortiGate unit, you can confirm that the feature is working by using a specialized diagnostic command to view the raw tracking data.

## Configuring location tracking

You can enable location tracking in any FortiAP profile by setting the `station-locate` field to `enable`.

### To enable location tracking - CLI

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP220B-locate"
    set ap-country US
    config platform
      set type 220B
    end
    config lbs
      set station-locate enable
    end
  end
end
```

## Automatic deletion of outdated presence data

The FortiGate generates a log entry only the first time that station-locate detects a mobile client. No log is generated for clients that have been detected before. To log repeat client visits, previous station presence data must be deleted (flushed). The `sta-locate-timer` can flush this data periodically. The default period is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). The timer can be set to any value between 1 and 86400 seconds (24 hours). A setting of 0 disables the flush, meaning a client is logged only on the very first visit.

The timer is one of the wireless controller timers and it can be set in the CLI. For example:

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set sta-locate-timer 1800
end
```

To avoid the duplication of logs, set the `sta-locate-timer` value to be more than the `sta-capability-timer` value (default 30 seconds).

## Viewing device location data on a FortiGate unit

You can use the FortiGate CLI to list located devices. This can be used to confirm that the location data feature is working. You can also reset the device location data.

### To list located devices

```
diag wireless-controller wlac -c sta-locate
```

### To reset device location data

```
diag wireless-controller wlac -c sta-locate-reset
```

## Example output

The following output shows data for three WiFi devices.

```
FWF60C3G11004319 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c sta-locate
sta_mac vfid rid base_mac freq_lst frm_cnt frm_fst frm_last intv_sum intv2_sum intv3_sum
intv_min intv_max signal_sum signal2_sum signal3_sum sig_min sig_max sig_fst sig_
last ap

00:0b:6b:22:82:61 0
FAP22B3U11005354 0 0 00:09:0f:f1:bb:e4 5745 257 708 56 651 1836 6441 0 12 -21832 1855438
-157758796 -88 -81 -84 -88 0

00:db:df:24:1a:67 0
FAP22B3U11005354 0 0 00:09:0f:f1:bb:e4 5745 42 1666 41 1625 97210 5831613 0 60 -3608
310072 -26658680 -90 -83 -85 -89 0

10:68:3f:50:22:29 0
FAP22B3U11005354 0 0 00:09:0f:f1:bb:e4 5745 102 1623 58 1565 94136 5664566 0 60 -8025
631703 -49751433 -84 -75 -78 -79 0
```

The output for each device appears on two lines. The first line contains only the device MAC address and the VLAN ID. The second line begins with the ID (serial number) of the FortiWiFi or FortiAP unit that detected the device, the AP MAC address, and then the fields that FortiPresence uses. Because of its length, this line wraps around and displays as multiple lines.

## Configuring FortiPresence

You can configure FortiPresence to process and analyze the results of your location tracking. For comprehensive instructions on configuring FortiPresence, see the [FortiPresence Administration Guide](#).

Once you've set up FortiPresence, you can enable it on a FortiAP profile to apply your settings to your APs.

### To apply FortiPresence settings to a FortiAP

1. From the FortiGate GUI navigate to **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**.
2. Select the FortiAP profile you want to configure FortiPresence for.

3. Locate the FortiPresence section and select which mode you want to use to enable the service.
  - **Foreign Channels Only:** AP will only listen to clients on foreign channels when doing background scan. It will not listen to clients associated to other APs running on its home (or operating) channel to preserve associated clients traffic.
  - **Foreign and Home Channels:** AP will also listen to connected clients associated to other APs on its home channel. This is useful for FortiPresence, but can negatively impact AP performance when AP is serving clients.
4. Enter the Project name and Password from FortiPresence (Use the Project Name and Project Secret Key from the FortiPresence GUI **Admin > Settings > Discovered APs**).
5. Enter the FortiPresence server IP and FortiPresence server port from FortiPresence (Location Server IP and Port are displayed in the FortiPresence GUI **Admin > Settings > Discovered APs**).
6. When you are finished, click **OK**.

## FortiPresence push REST API

To configure FortiGate to push information to the FortiPresence server, enter the following commands:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FP223B-GuestWiFi"
    config lbs
      set fortipresence {disable | foreign | both}
      set fortipresence-server-addr-type {ipv4 | fqdn}
      set fortipresence-port <port>
      set fortipresence-secret <password> Password to be obtained from FortiPresence UI
      set fortipresence-project <name> Name to be obtained from FortiPresence UI
      set fortipresence-frequency <5-65535> Default is 30.
      set fortipresence-rogue {enable | disable} Enable/disable reporting of Rogue APs.
      set fortipresence-unassoc {enable | disable} Enable/disable reporting of
        unassociated devices.
      set station-locate enable
    end
  end
```

## Configuring FortiPresence server IP

When defining the FortiPresence server for location based services, the server address can be configured as an IPV4 address or as a FQDN. Using FQDN means that the wireless controller configuration does not need to be changed when the FortiPresence server IP address changes, it can keep the same domain name.

### To configure FortiPresence server as IPV4

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP431F-default"
    config lbs
      set fortipresence foreign
      set fortipresence-server-addr-type ipv4
      set fortipresence-server "34.245.252.61" (FortiPresence location server IP)
      set fortipresence-port 4013
    end
  next
end
```

## Debug configurations

From the FortiGate CLI:

```
diag sniffer packet <port> "host 34.245.252.61 and port 4013" 6 0 a
```

From the FortiAP CLI:

```
cw_diag -c fortipresence - show scanned fortipresence data from kernel
diag_sniffer br0 'host 34.245.252.61'
```

## To configure FortiPresence server as FQDN

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP431F-default"
    config lbs
      set fortipresence foreign
      set fortipresence-server-addr-type fqdn
      set fortipresence-server-fqdn "test.fortipresence.com"
      set fortipresence-port 10443
    end
  next
end
```

## To verify that FortiAP receives the FortiPresence server domain name and resolves the IP address

```
FortiAP-431F # wcfg
WTP Configuration
  name          : FortiAP-431F
  ...
  fsm-state     : RUN 75
  wtp-ip-addr   : 10.19.20.20:5246 - 10.19.20.20:53582
  ac-ip-addr    : 172.18.56.42:5246 - 172.18.56.42:5247          STATIC
  ...
  fortipresence : foreign, ble enabled, rogue disabled, unassoc_sta enabled, freq 30
                  server 0172.16.200.133(test.fortipresence.com):10443 secret csum [0xc6a7]
[fortipresence]
  LAN mode     : WAN LAN, ESL
  ...
```



# Support for Electronic Shelf Label systems

Some FortiAP models equipped with a USB port can support Electronic Shelf Labels (ESL) systems. These FortiAPs can be configured to accept a ESL-Radio through a USB dongle that works on a 2.4 GHz frequency band. Once the ESL dongle is connected, you can configure the communication mode from a FortiGate. ESL traffic from the ESL-Radio is sent to ESL-Servers that are either located on-premise or in the Cloud.

Fortinet currently supports the following third-party ESL service providers:

- Hanshow
- SES-Imagotag

## Hanshow integration

### To configure ESL integration for Hanshow

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "421E-dongle"
    config platform
        set type 421E
    end
    config lan
        set port-esl-mode bridge-to-ssid
        set port-esl-ssid "WIFI-Private"
    end
next
end
```

The following configuration are available in `port-esl-mode`:

offline	Offline.
nat-to-wan	NAT WTP ESL port to WTP WAN port.
bridge-to-wan	Bridge WTP ESL port to WTP WAN port.
bridge-to-ssid	Bridge WTP ESL port to SSID.



Hanshow ESL is supported on select FortiAP models, including but not limited to:

- FortiAP-S/W2 models: FAP-S421E, FAP-S423E, FAP-421E and FAP-423E, running firmware 6.4.2 and later.
- FortiAP models: Wi-Fi 6/802.11ax capable, running firmware 6.4.3 and later.

## SES-Imagotag

### To configure ESL integration for SES-Imagotag

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit FAP433F-default
    config esl-ses-dongle
      set esl-channel 10
      set scd-enable enable
      set output-power b
      set apc-fqdn "example.fqdn"
      set apc-port 7354
    end
  next
end
```

The following configuration are available for `esl-ses-dongle`:

<code>compliance-level</code>	Compliance levels for the ESL solution integration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• -1: No esl-channel is set</li> <li>• 0: ESL channel 0</li> <li>• &lt;...&gt;</li> <li>• 10: ESL channel 10</li> <li>• 127: Managed channel enabled, indicates that the APC (server) is setting the esl-channel via the slot channel</li> </ul> (default = compliance-level-2)
<code>scd-enable</code>	Enable/disable ESL SES-imagotag Serial Communication Daemon (SCD) (default = disable)
<code>esl-channel</code>	ESL SES-imagotag dongle channel (default = 127)
<code>output-power</code>	ESL SES-imagotag dongle output power: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a: About 15mW</li> <li>• b: About 7mW</li> <li>• c: About 5mW</li> <li>• d: About 1mW</li> <li>• e: About 13mW</li> <li>• f: About 10mW</li> <li>• g: About 3mW</li> <li>• h: About 2mW</li> </ul> (default = A)
<code>apc-addr-type</code>	ESL SES-imagotag APC address type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fqdn: Fully Qualified Domain Name address</li> <li>• ip IPv4: address</li> </ul> (default = fqdn)
<code>apc-fqdn / apc-ip</code>	FQDN / IP of ESL SES-imagotag Access Point Controller

apc-port	Port of ESL SES-imagotag Access Point Controller
coex-level	ESL SES-imagotag dongle coexistence level (default = none). <b>Note:</b> As of today there is no coexistence, interference-free parallel operation with regular 2.4GHz servicing radios
tls-cert-verification	Enable/disable TLS Certificate verification (default = enable)
tls-fqdn-verification	Enable/disable TLS Certificate verification (default = disable)

### To check the ESL dongle status

On FortiOS:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c ws-esl [wtp-ip]
```

On FortiAP:

```
cw_diag -c esl-ses
```

### To toggle ESL-SES debug level

To see the the ESL log level on a FortiAP:

```
# cw_diag -c esl-dbg

# -----ESL SCD debug conf-----
# (console-output: 0 - off, 1 - on)
console 0
# (debug-levels: 0 - none, 1 - fatal, 2 - error, 3 - warn, 4 - info, 5 - debug)
data_block.data_block_container 2
firmware.load_firmware 2
...
```

### To enable debugs

```
cw_diag -c esl-dbg console 1
```

To apply the level change, you need to restart the SDC daemon or reboot the FortiAP.

### To set other debug object levels

```
cw_diag -c esl-dbg firmware.load_firmware 3
```

Level "3" is "warn", which means "fatal", "error" and "warn" logs will be displayed for "firmware.load\_firmware".



SES-Imagotag ESL is supported on Wi-Fi 6/802.11ax capable FortiAP models running firmware 7.0.1 and later.

# Troubleshooting

This section contains topics to help troubleshoot the FortiOS wireless controller and FortiAP units.

- [FortiAP shell command on page 319](#)
- [Signal strength issues on page 319](#)
- [Throughput issues on page 323](#)
- [Client connection issues on page 325](#)
- [FortiAP connection issues on page 327](#)
- [Testing wireless network health with SAM on page 330](#)
- [Determining the coverage area of a FortiAP on page 334](#)
- [Best practices for OSI common sources of wireless issues on page 336](#)
- [Extended logging on page 339](#)
- [Packet sniffer on page 350](#)
- [Debug commands on page 354](#)
- [Disabling 802.11d for client backward compatibility on page 355](#)

## FortiAP shell command

The FortiAP is often behind a NAT device and access to the FortiAP through SSH is not available. The FortiGate WiFi controller can send a FortiAP shell command (up to 127 bytes) to the FortiAP. The FortiAP runs this command and then returns the results to the controller using the Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points Protocol (CAPWAP) tunnel.

The maximum output from a FortiAP shell command is limited to 4 MB. The default output size is set to 32 KB.

The FortiAP reports the running results to the controller after the command is finished. If the controller sends a new command to the FortiAP before the previous command is finished, the previous command is canceled.

Enter the following command:

```
diag w-c wlap wtpcmd wtp_ip wtp_port cmd [cmd-to-ap] cmd: run,show,showhex,clr,r&h,r&sh
```

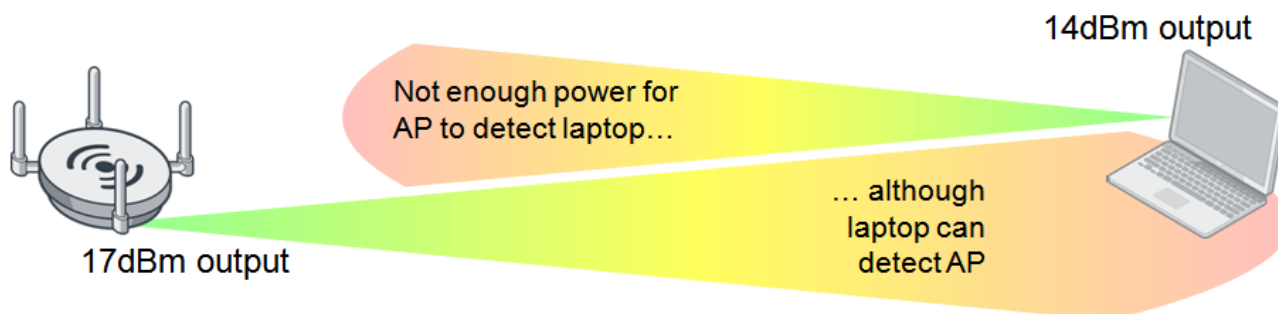
- **cmd-to-ap:** any shell commands, but FortiAP does not report results until the command is finished on the FortiAP
- **run:** controller sends the ap-cmd to the FortiAP to run
- **show:** show current results reported by the FortiAP in text
- **showhex:** show current results reported by the FortiAP in hexadecimal format.
- **clr:** clear reported results
- **r&s:** run and show
- **r&sh:** run and show in hexadecimal format

## Signal strength issues

This section includes information to help you identify and troubleshoot poor signal strength issues.

## Asymmetric power issue

Asymmetric power issues are a typical problem in wireless communications. Access points (AP) can have a high transmit power which means that a signal can travel a long distance. However, clients may not have a transmit power strong enough for the APs to detect their signal.



## Measuring signal strength in both directions

To solve an asymmetric power issue, measure the signal strength in both directions. APs usually have enough power to transmit long distances, but sometimes battery-powered clients have a reply signal that has less power, and therefore the AP cannot detect their signal.

It is recommended that you match the transmission power of the AP to the least powerful wireless client—around 10 decibels per milliwatt (dBm) for iPhones and 14 dBm for most laptops.

Even if the signal is strong enough, other devices may also emit radiation and cause interference. To identify the difference, read the client Rx strength from the Signal Strength widget (under **Dashboard > WiFi**) or CLI.

The **Signal Strength/Noise** value provides the received signal strength indicator (RSSI) of the wireless client. For example, a value of -85 dBm to -95 dBm is equal to about 10 dB levels; this is not a desirable signal strength. In the following screenshot, one of the clients is at 18 dB, which is getting close to the perimeter of its range.

SSID	FortiAP	IP	Device	Channel	Bandwidth Tx/Rx	Signal Strength/Noise	Signal
MavisF	FAP28C3X13000119 (1)	10.0.2.8	e8:91:20:90:6e:23	6	1 kbps	29 dB	
MavisF	FP320C3X14000668 (1)	192.168.255.112	1c:69:a5:c8:e8:3e	11	80 bps	35 dB	
MavisF	FP320C3X14000668 (2)	192.168.255.101	58:55:ca:36:28:7d	44	12 kbps	51 dB	
MavisF	FAP28C3X13000119 (1)	10.0.2.9	Acer A1-830 Tablet	6	543 bps	18 dB	
MavisF	FAP28C3X13000119 (1)	10.0.2.13	08:ed:b9:4f:98:ad	6	16 kbps	31 dB	
MavisF	FP320C3X14000668 (1)	192.168.255.115	Ellas_Tablet	11	0 bps	35 dB	



The recommended Signal Strength/Noise value from and to the FortiAP by clients is in the range of -20 dBm to -65 dBm.

You can also confirm the transmission (Tx) power of the controller on the AP profile (`wtp-profile`) and the FortiAP (`iwconfig`), and check the power management (`auto-Tx`) options.

### Controller configured transmitting power - CLI:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
```

```
config <radio>
show
```

(the following output is limited to power levels)

```
auto-power-level : enable
auto-power-high : 17
auto-power-low : 10
```

## Actual FortiAP transmitting power - CLI:

```
iwconfig wlan00
```

### Result:

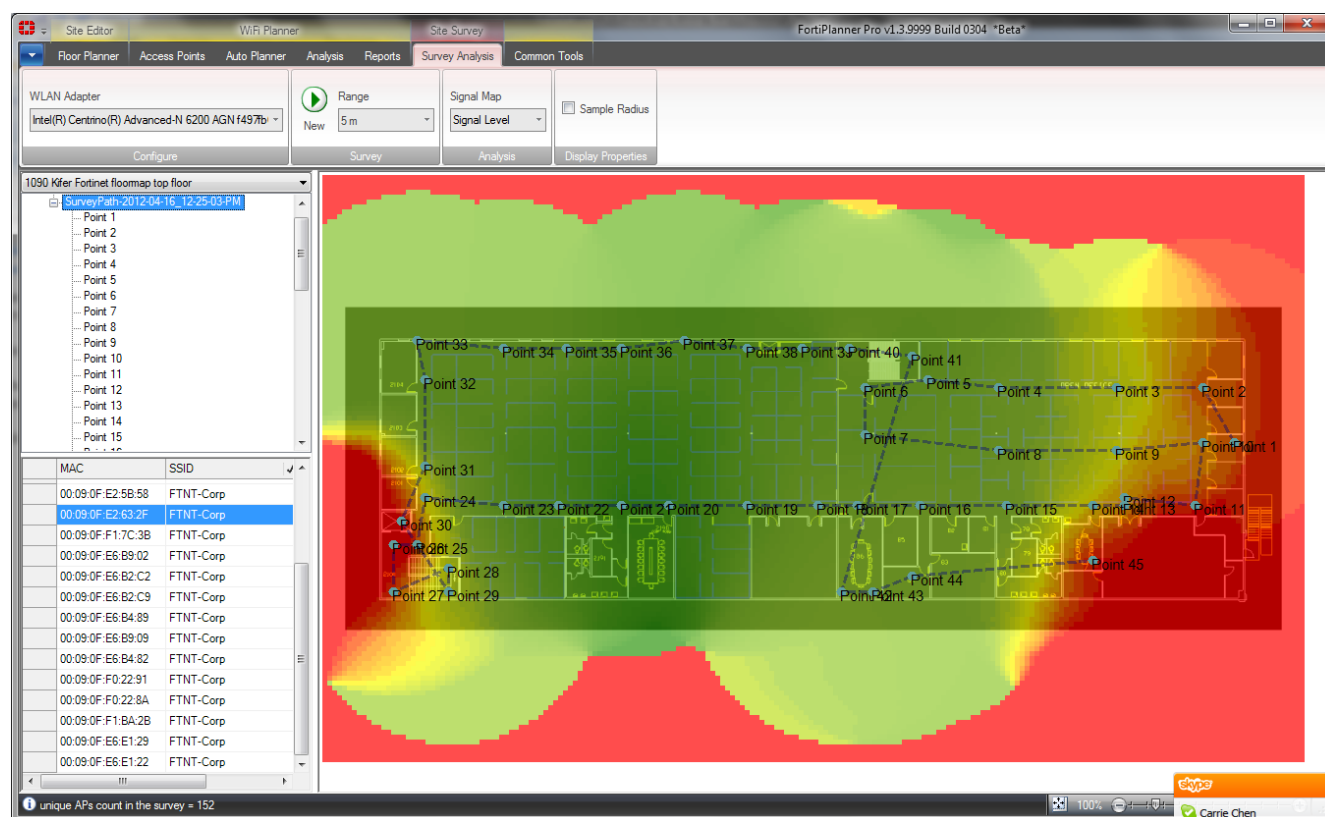
```
wlan00 IEEE 802.11ng ESSID:"signal-check"
Mode:Master Frequency:2.412 GHz Access Point:<MAC add>
Bit Rate:130 Mb/s Tx-Power=28 dBm
```

## Using FortiPlanner

The most thorough method to solve signal strength issues is to perform a site survey using FortiPlanner.

For details about FortiPlanner, visit the [FortiPlanner](#) website. You can download FortiPlanner [here](#).

### Sample depiction of a site survey using FortiPlanner



The site survey helps with the optimal placement for your APs based on the variables in your environment. You must provide the site survey detailed information such as a floor plan (to scale) and structural materials. FortiPlanner allows you to place the APs on the map and adjust the radio bands and power levels while providing you with visual wireless coverage.

The following list includes mechanisms for gathering further information on the client for Rx strength. The goal is to see how well the client is receiving the signal from the AP. You can also verify FortiAP signal strength on the client using WiFi client utilities, or third-party utilities such as InSSIDer or MetaGeek Chanalyzer.

- Professional Site Survey software (Ekahau, AirMagnet survey Pro, FortiPlanner)
- InSSIDer
- On Windows: `"netsh wlan show networks mode=bssid"` (look for the BSSID, it's in % not in dBm)
- On MacOS: Use the `"airport"` command:

`"/System/Library/PrivateFrameworks/Apple80211.framework/Versions/A/Resources/airport" airport -s | grep <the_bssid>` (live scan each time)

- On Android: WiFiFoFum

## Frequency interference

If the wireless signal seems to be strong but then periodically drops, this may be a symptom of frequency interference. Frequency interference is when another device also emits radio frequency using the same channel, co-channel, or adjacent channel, thereby overpowering or corrupting your signal. This is a common problem on a 2.4 GHz network.

There are two types of interference: coherent and non-coherent.

- **Coherent interference** is a result of another device using the same channel as your AP, or poor planning of a wireless infrastructure. Perhaps the other nearby APs are using the same channel or the signal strength is too high.
- **Non-coherent interference** is a result of other radio signals such as Bluetooth, microwave, cordless phone, or x-ray machines (as in medical environments).

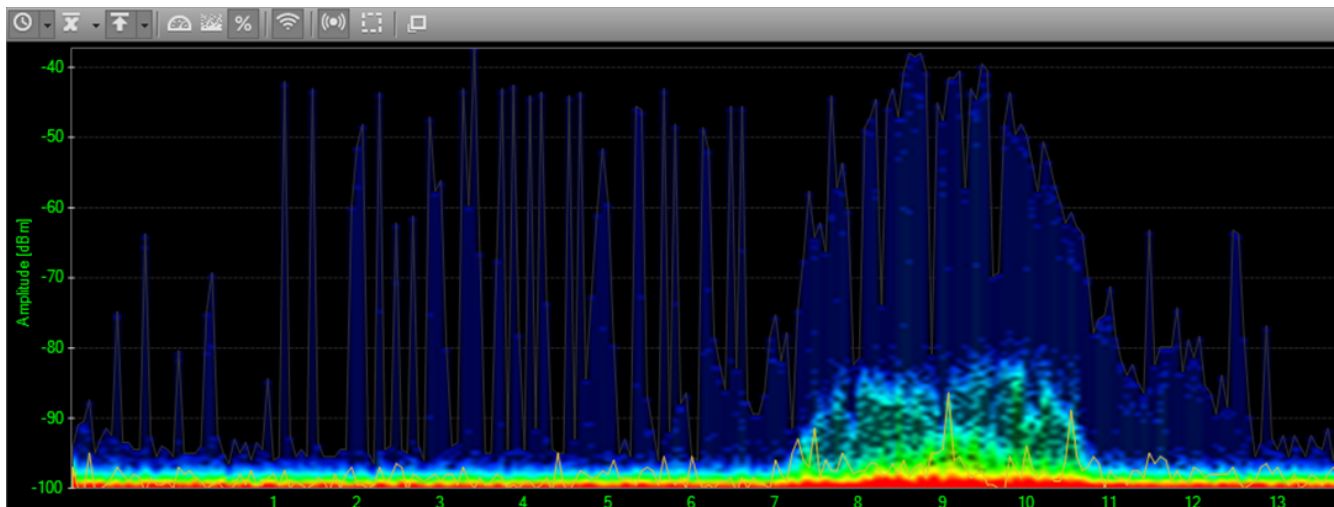
The most common and simple solution for frequency interference is to change your operation channel. Typically, the channel can be set from 1 to 11 for the broadcast frequency, although it is recommended to use channels 1, 6, and 11 on the 2.4 GHz band.

Another solution, if it is appropriate for your location, is to use the 5 GHz band instead.

### MetaGeek Chanalyzer

You can perform a site survey using spectrum analysis at various points in your environment to locate sources of interference. MetaGeek Chanalyzer is an example of a third-party utility used for spectrum analysis of complex WiFi networks.

Fortinet wireless adapters ignore signals of -95 dBm or less.



## Throughput issues

This section helps you identify throughput issues and suggests actions to address them.

### Link testing

You can identify delays or lost packets by sending ping packets from your wireless client. If there is more than 10 ms of delay, there may be a problem with your wireless deployment, such as:

- The client transmits a weak signal. The host does not reach the AP.
- The AP utilization is too high. Your AP is saturated with connected clients.
- There is interference in the wireless network. Third-party signal can degrade your AP or the client's ability to detect signals between them.
- The AP has a weak transmit power. The AP does not reach the host. This problem is not common in a properly deployed network, unless the client is too far away.

### Performance testing

If the FortiAP gives poor throughput to the client, the link can drop. You can measure the link throughput or performance between two devices by using third-party application tools such as iPerf and jPerf.

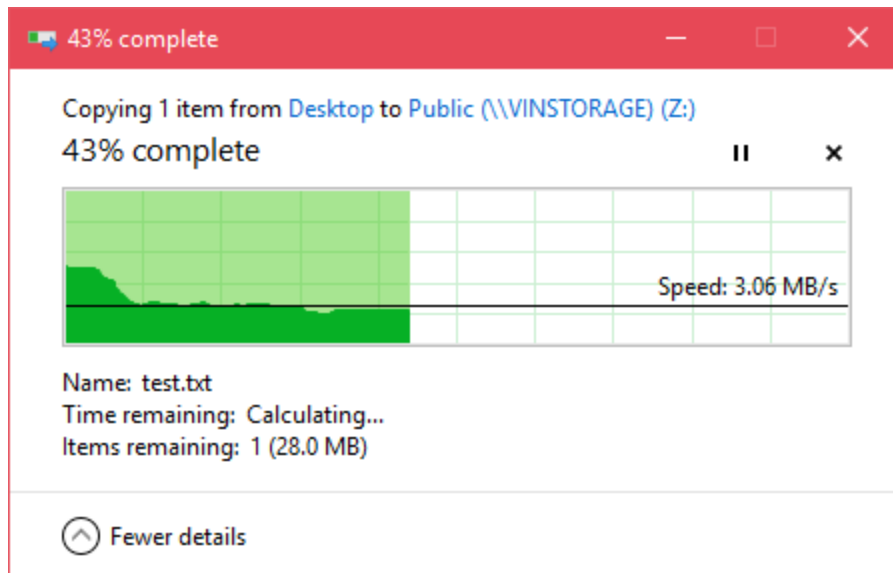
#### Measuring the file transfer speed

Another way to get a sense of your throughput issues is to measure the speed of a file transfer on your network. Create a test file at a specific size and measure the speed at which Windows measures the transfer. The command below creates a 50 MB file. The file name is test.txt.

- `fsutil file createnew test.txt 52428800`



The following image shows a network transfer speed of just over 24 Mbps. The theoretical speed of 802.11g is 54 Mbps, which is what this client is using. A wireless client is never likely to see the theoretical speed.



### TKIP limitation

If you find that throughput is a problem, avoid WPA security encrypted with Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) as it supports communications only at 54 Mbps. Use WPA-2 AES instead.

Speeds are very much based on what the client computer can handle as well. The maximum client connection rate of 130 Mbps is for 2.4 GHz on a 2x2, or 300 Mbps for 5 GHz on a 2x2 (using shortguard and channel bonding enabled).

If you want to get more than 54 Mbps with 802.11n, do not use legacy TKIP, use CCMP instead. This is standard for legacy compatibility.

## IP packet fragmentation prevention in CAPWAP tunnels

TKIP is not the only possible source of decreased throughput. When a wireless client sends jumbo frames using a CAPWAP tunnel, it can result in data loss, jitter, and decreased throughput. For more details, see [IP fragmentation of packets in CAPWAP tunnels on page 184](#).

## Slow DTLS response

The following elements are involved in the CAPWAP association:

- request
- response
- full of DTLS (Datagram Transport Layer Security) tunnel establishment
- join
- configuration

All of these element are bidirectional. If the DTLS response is slow, there could be a configuration error or an issue with a certificate during the discovery response. For details about the CAPWAP Protocol Specification, see RFC 5415 and RFC 5416.

## Client connection issues

1. If the client is unable to connect to FortiAP:
  - Make sure the client security and authentication settings match with FortiAP and also check the certificates.
  - Try upgrading the Wi-Fi adapter driver, FortiGate and FortiAP firmware.
  - If other clients can connect, the issue can be with device interoperability. Run debug commands and sniffer packets.
  - Look for rogue suppression by sniffing the wireless traffic and looking for the connection issue in the output (using the AP or wireless packet sniffer).
  - Try changing the IEEE protocol from 802.11n to 802.11bg or 802.11a only.
2. If the client drops and reconnects:
  - The client might be de-authenticating periodically. Check the sleep mode on the client.
  - The issue could be related to power-saver settings. The client may need to update the drivers.
  - The issue could also be caused by flapping between APs. Check the roaming sensitivity settings on the client or the preferred wireless network settings on the client. If another WiFi network is available, the client may connect to it if it is a preferred network. Also, check the DHCP configuration as this configuration may be an IP conflict.
3. If the client drops and never connects:
  - The client could have roamed to another SSID. Check the standby and sleep modes.
  - You may need to bring the interface up and down.
4. If the client connects, but no IP address is acquired by the client:
  - Check the DHCP configuration and the network.
  - There could be a broadcast issue. Check the WEP encryption key and set a static IP address and VLANs.

## Debugging client connection issues

To see the stage at which the client fails to connect, enable the client debug on the controller for problematic clients. Try to connect from the problematic client and run the following debug command, which allows you to see the four-way handshake of the client association:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac sta_filter <client MAC address> 2
```

### Example of a successful client connection:

The following example debug output is for the above command. This example shows the successful association phase, DHCP phase, and the PSK key exchange (identified in color):

```
FG600B3909600253 #
91155.197 <ih> IEEE 802.11 mgmt::assoc_req <== 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 vap signal-check rId 0 wId
0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45
91155.197 <ih> IEEE 802.11 mgmt::assoc_resp ==> 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 vap signal-check rId 0 wId
0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45 resp 0
91155.197 <cc> STA_CFG_REQ(15) sta 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 add ==> ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0
wId 0
```

```

91155.197 <dc> STA add 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 vap signal-check ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0 wId
0 bssid 00:09:0f:f3:20:45 NON-AUTH
91155.197 <cc> STA add 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 vap signal-check ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0 wId
0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45 sec WPA2 AUTO auth 0
91155.199 <cc> STA_CFG_RESP(15) 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rc 0
(Success)
91155.199 <eh> send 1/4 msg of 4-Way Handshake
91155.199 <eh>send IEEE 802.1X ver=1 type=3 (EAPOL_KEY) data len=95 replay cnt 1
91155.199 <eh> IEEE 802.1X (EAPOL 99B) ==> 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0
wId 0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45
91155.217 <eh> IEEE 802.1X (EAPOL 121B) <== 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0
wId 0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45
91155.217 <eh> recv IEEE 802.1X ver=1 type=3 (EAPOL_KEY) data len=117
91155.217 <eh> recv EAPOL-Key 2/4 Pairwise replay cnt 1
91155.218 <eh> send 3/4 msg of 4-Way Handshake
91155.218 <eh> send IEEE 802.1X ver=1 type=3 (EAPOL_KEY) data len=175 replay cnt 2
91155.218 <eh> IEEE 802.1X (EAPOL 179B) ==> 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0
wId 0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45
91155.223 <eh> IEEE 802.1X (EAPOL 99B) <== 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0
wId 0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45
91155.223 <eh> recv IEEE 802.1X ver=1 type=3 (EAPOL_KEY) data len=95
91155.223 <eh> recv EAPOL-Key 4/4 Pairwise replay cnt 2
91155.223 <dc> STA chg 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 vap signal-check ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0 wId
0 bssid 00:09:0f:f3:20:45 AUTH
91155.224 <cc> STA chg 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 vap signal-check ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0 wId
0 00:09:0f:f3:20:45 sec WPA2 AUTO auth 1
91155.224 <cc> STA_CFG_REQ(16) sta 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 add key (len=16) ==> ws (0-
192.168.35.1:5246) rId 0 wId 0
91155.226 <cc> STA_CFG_RESP(16) 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rc 0
(Success)
91155.226 <eh> ***pairwise key handshake completed*** (RSN)
91155.257 <dc> DHCP Request server 0.0.0.0 <== host ADMINFO-FD4I2HK mac 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 ip
172.16.1.16
91155.258 <dc> DHCP Ack server 172.16.1.1 ==> host mac 30:46:9a:f9:fa:34 ip 172.16.1.16 mask
255.255.255.0 gw 172.16.1.1

```

where:

- **Orange** represents the association phase.
- **Blue** represents the PSK exchange.
- **Green** represents the DHCP phase.

It is important to note the messages for a correct association phase, four-way handshake, and DHCP phase.

## Checking the WiFi password

An Administrator can view plain text passwords (captive-portal-radius-secret and passphrase) under config wireless-controller vap.

Note that security must be set as a WPA-personal setting.

## FortiAP connection issues

A communication problem can arise from the FortiAP.

Some examples include:

- The FortiAP is not connecting to the wireless controller.
- One FortiAP intermittently disconnects and re-connects.
- All FortiAPs intermittently disconnect and re-connect.

In the above cases:

- Check networking on the distribution system for all related FortiAPs.
- Check the authorization status of managed APs from the wireless controller.
- Restart the *cw\_acd* process.

**Note:** A restart of the *cw\_acd* process drops all APs.

- For any wireless controller daemon crashes, check the controller crash log using the following command:

```
diagnose debug crashlog read
```

## Debugging FortiAP connection issues

For a quick assessment of the association communication between the controller and the FortiAP, run the following sniffer command to see if you can verify that the AP is communicating to the controller by identifying the CAPWAP communication:

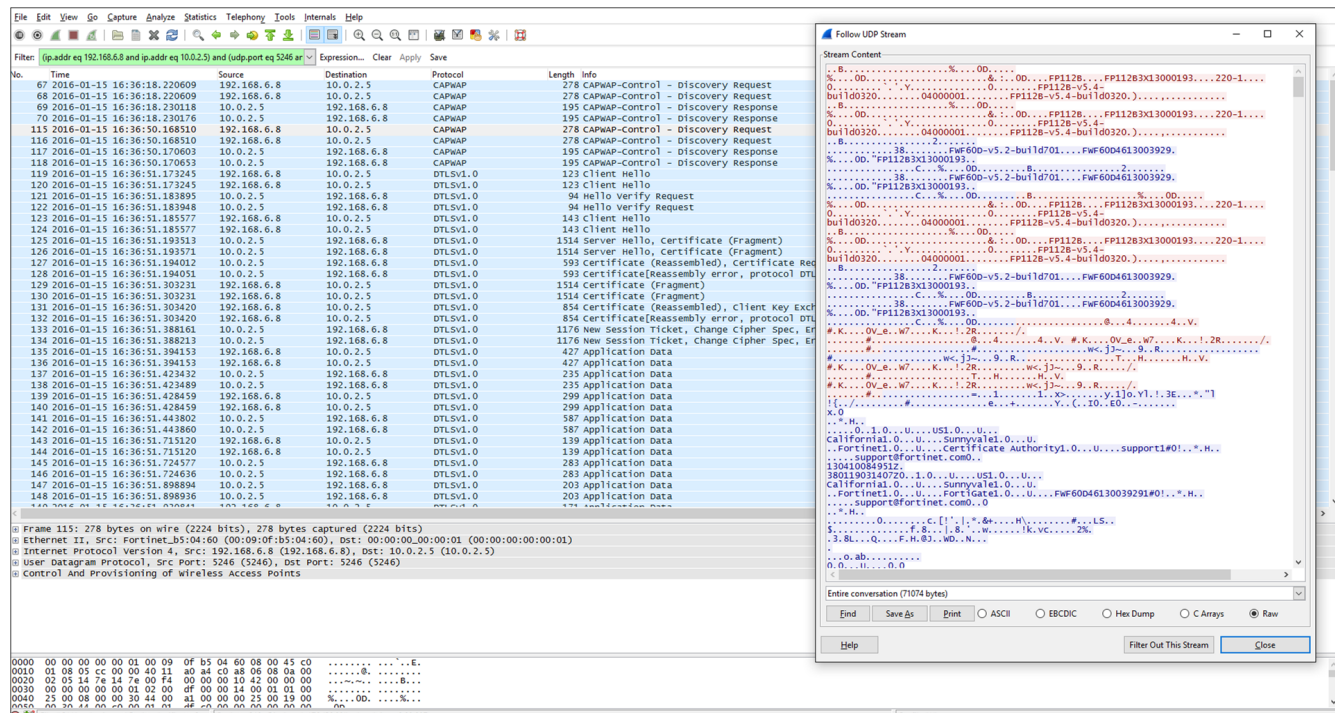
```
diagnose sniff packet <interface_name> "port 5246" 4
```

If you do not see this communication, then you can investigate the network or the settings on the AP to see why it is not reaching the controller.

To collect verbose output from the sniff that can be converted to a PCAP and viewed in Wireshark, use the following command:

```
diagnose sniff packet <interface_name> "port 5246" 6 0 1
```

The image below shows the beginning of the AP association to the controller. You can see the discovery Request and Response at the top.



Throughout debugging it is recommended to:

- Enable SSH login to the FortiAP device so that you can log in and issue local debugging commands:
- ```
config wireless-controller wtp
edit "<FortiAP_serial_number>"
set override-allowaccess {disable|enable}
set allowaccess {https | ssh}
end
```
- Try to connect to the wireless controller from the problematic FortiAP to verify routes exist.
  - Enable wtp (FortiAP) debugging on the wireless controller for problematic FortiAPs to determine the point at which the FortiAP fails to connect:

```
diag wireless-controller wlac wtp_filter FP112B3X13000193 0-192.168.6.8:5246 2
```

(replace the serial number and IP address of the FortiAP)

```
di de console timestamp en
di de application cw_acd 0x7ff
di de en
```

## Example of a successful AP and controller association:

Here is another example of a successful association between the FortiAP and the wireless controller. This example includes elements of the CAPWAP protocol; Request, Response, DTLS, Join, and Configuration (identified in color). All of these elements are bi-directional. So, if the DTLS response is slow, there could be a configuration error.

```
56704.575 <msg> DISCOVERY_REQ (12) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56704.575 <msg> DISCOVERY_RESP (12) ==> ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56707.575 <msg> DISCOVERY_REQ (13) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56707.575 <msg> DISCOVERY_RESP (13) ==> ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.577 <aev> - CWAE_INIT_COMPLETE ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.577 <aev> - CWAE_LISTENER_THREAD_READY ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.577 <fsm> old CWAS_START(0) ev CWAE_INIT_COMPLETE(0) new CWAS_IDLE(1)
```

```

56709.577 <fsm> old CWAS_IDLE(1) ev CWAE_LISTENER_THREAD_READY(1) new CWAS_DTLS_SETUP(4)
56709.623 <aev> - CWAE_DTLS_PEER_ID_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.623 <aev> - CWAE_DTLS_AUTH_PASS ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.623 <aev> - CWAE_DTLS_ESTABLISHED ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.623 <fsm> old CWAS_DTLS_SETUP(4) ev CWAE_DTLS_PEER_ID_RECV(7) new CWAS_DTLS_AUTHORIZE
(2)
56709.623 <fsm> old CWAS_DTLS_AUTHORIZE(2) ev CWAE_DTLS_AUTH_PASS(3) new CWAS_DTLS_CONN(5)
56709.623 <fsm> old CWAS_DTLS_CONN(5) ev CWAE_DTLS_ESTABLISHED(8) new CWAS_JOIN(7)
56709.625 <msg> JOIN_REQ (14) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.625 <aev> - CWAE_JOIN_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.626 <fsm> old CWAS_JOIN(7) ev CWAE_JOIN_REQ_RECV(12) new CWAS_JOIN(7)
56709.629 <msg> CFG_STATUS (15) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.629 <aev> - CWAE_CFG_STATUS_REQ ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56709.629 <fsm> old CWAS_JOIN(7) ev CWAE_CFG_STATUS_REQ(13) new CWAS_CONFIG(8)
56710.178 <msg> CHG_STATE_EVENT_REQ (16) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.178 <aev> - CWAE_CHG_STATE_EVENT_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.178 <fsm> old CWAS_CONFIG(8) ev CWAE_CHG_STATE_EVENT_REQ_RECV(23) new CWAS_DATA_CHAN_
SETUP(10)
56710.220 <aev> - CWAE_DATA_CHAN_CONNECTED ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.220 <msg> DATA_CHAN_KEEP_ALIVE <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.220 <aev> - CWAE_DATA_CHAN_KEEP_ALIVE_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.220 <msg> DATA_CHAN_KEEP_ALIVE ==> ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.220 <fsm> old CWAS_DATA_CHAN_SETUP(10) ev CWAE_DATA_CHAN_CONNECTED(32) new CWAS_DATA_
CHECK(11)
56710.220 <aev> - CWAE_DATA_CHAN_VERIFIED ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.220 <fsm> old CWAS_DATA_CHECK(11) ev CWAE_DATA_CHAN_KEEP_ALIVE_RECV(35) new CWAS_DATA_
CHECK(11)
56710.220 <fsm> old CWAS_DATA_CHECK(11) ev CWAE_DATA_CHAN_VERIFIED(36) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56710.228 <msg> WTP_EVENT_REQ (17) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.228 <aev> - CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.228 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV(42) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56710.230 <msg> CFG_UPDATE_RESP (1) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rc 0 (Success)
56710.230 <aev> - CWAE_CFG_UPDATE_RESP_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.230 <msg> WTP_EVENT_REQ (18) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.230 <aev> - CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.230 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_CFG_UPDATE_RESP_RECV(37) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56710.230 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV(42) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56710.231 <msg> WTP_EVENT_REQ (19) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.231 <aev> - CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.231 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV(42) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56710.232 <msg> CFG_UPDATE_RESP (2) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rc 0 (Success)
56710.232 <aev> - CWAE_CFG_UPDATE_RESP_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.232 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_CFG_UPDATE_RESP_RECV(37) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56710.233 <msg> WTP_EVENT_REQ (20) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.233 <aev> - CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56710.233 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_WTP_EVENT_REQ_RECV(42) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56712.253 < . > AC (2) -> WTP (0-192.168.35.1:5246) State: CWAS_RUN (12) accept 3 live 3 dbg
00000000 pkts 12493 0
56715.253 < . > AC (2) -> WTP (0-192.168.35.1:5246) State: CWAS_RUN (12) accept 3 live 6 dbg
00000000 pkts 12493 0
56718.253 < . > AC (2) -> WTP (0-192.168.35.1:5246) State: CWAS_RUN (12) accept 3 live 9 dbg
00000000 pkts 12493 0
56719.253 <aev> - CWAE_AC_ECHO_INTV_TMR_EXPIRE ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56719.253 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_AC_ECHO_INTV_TMR_EXPIRE(39) new CWAS_RUN(12)
56719.576 <msg> ECHO_REQ (21) <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56719.576 <aev> - CWAE_ECHO_REQ_RECV ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246)
56719.577 <fsm> old CWAS_RUN(12) ev CWAE_ECHO_REQ_RECV(27) new CWAS_RUN(12)

```

where:

- **Orange** represents the Discovery phase.
- **Blue** indicates that the control channels have been established using DTLS.
- **Green** represents the access point Discovery and Join phase.
- **Purple** represents the Clear Text channel.
- **Pink** indicates that the FortiAP is successfully connected to the wireless controller.

## Testing wireless network health with SAM

Fortinet's Service Assurance Manager (SAM) is a predictive diagnostic software for remotely diagnosing the health of wireless networks without requiring overlay sensors. With Service Assurance Manager, the network automatically performs predictive health checks and reports any issues before end users are impacted.

FortiAPs can be configured to run in Service Assurance Management mode, where a radio is designated to operate as a client and perform tests against another AP. Ping tests and iPerf tests can be run on interval, with results captured in the WiFi event logs. This allows the FortiGate to verify and ensure that an existing Wi-Fi network can provide acceptable services.

### To configure a FortiAP profile to run in SAM mode - CLI

#### 1. Configure the FAP profile to enable SAM ping test.

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "FAP231E-sam"
    config radio-2
        set mode sam
        set sam-ssid "test-sam"
        set sam-bssid 00:00:00:00:00:00
        set sam-security-type wpa-personal
        set sam-captive-portal disable
        set sam-password ENC +Yo/ZS
        set sam-test ping
        set sam-server "iperf.he.net"
        set sam-report-intv 60
    end
next
end
```

#### 2. Check configurations received on the FAP side in the "rcfg" output.

```
sam ssid : test-sam
sam bssid : 00:00:00:00:00:00
sam security type : Personal
sam captive portal : disabled
sam test : Ping
sam server ip : iperf.he.net
sam report interval: 60
sam iperf port : 5001
sam iperf protocol : TCP
```

### To configure a FortiAP profile to run the iperf test - CLI

The SAM test also supports the "iperf" test.



### 1. FOS side configuration:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP231E-sam"
    config radio-2
      set mode sam
      set sam-ssid "test-sam"
      set sam-bssid 00:00:00:00:00:00
      set sam-security-type wpa-personal
      set sam-captive-portal disable
      set sam-password ENC +Yo/ZS
      set sam-test iperf
      set sam-server "iperf.he.net"
      set iperf-server-port 5001
      set iperf-protocol tcp
      set sam-report-intv 60
    end
  next
end
```

### 2. Configuration received on FAP side:

```
sam ssid : test-sam
sam bssid : 00:00:00:00:00:00
sam security type : Personal
sam captive portal : disabled
sam test : Iperf
sam server ip : iperf.he.net
sam report interval: 60
sam iperf port : 5001
sam iperf protocol : TCP
```

## Captive portal authentication in service assurance management (SAM) mode

When configuring a radio in service assurance management (SAM) mode, a client can be configured to authenticate with the captive portal. The captive portal match, success, and failure strings must be specified to automatically detect the authentication success or failure.

### Example specification

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <name>
    config radio-1
      set sam-cwp-username "wifi"
      set sam-cwp-password ENC
      set sam-cwp-test-url "www.fortinet.com"
      set sam-cwp-match-string "Login"
      set sam-cwp-success-string "Success"
      set sam-cwp-failure-string "again"
    end
  next
end
```

|                         |                                                       |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>sam-cwp-username</b> | Enter the username for captive portal authentication. |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|



|                        |                                                                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sam-cwp-password       | Enter the password for captive portal authentication.                                 |
| sam-cwp-test-url       | Enter the website the client is trying to access.                                     |
| sam-cwp-match-string   | Enter the identification string from the captive portal login form.                   |
| sam-cwp-success-string | Enter the success identification text to appear on the page after a successful login. |
| sam-cwp-failure-string | Enter the failure identification text on the page after an incorrect login.           |

To perform a SAM test with captive portal authentication, create an SSID with captive portal authentication and broadcast it on a FortiAP (FAP\_A). Then configure SAM with captive portal settings in the wtp-profile on a second FortiAP (FAP\_B).

### Configuring an SSID with captive portal authentication

Configure the following steps on FAP\_A.

**1. Configure the RADIUS server:**

```
config user radius
  edit "172.18.56.161"
    set server "172.18.56.161"
    set secret ENC
  next
end
```

**2. Configure the VAP:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit "test-sam"
    set ssid "TEST-SAM"
    set security captive-portal
    set external-web "http://172.18.56.163/portal/index.php"
    set radius-server "172.18.56.161"
    set local-bridging enable
    set portal-type external-auth
    set schedule "always"
  next
end
```

**3. Configure the FortiAP profile:**

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP423E3X16000020" << A FAP423E is configured to broadcast test SSID.
    set uuid 404a75f2-c3ca-51eb-eb61-7678e900029c
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP423E-default"
  config radio-1
    set override-vaps enable
    set vap-all manual
    set vaps "test-sam"
  end
  config radio-2
    set override-vaps enable
    set vap-all manual
  end
```

```

    next
end

```

## Configuring SAM with captive portal settings

Configure the following steps on FAP\_B.

### 1. Configure the FortiAP profile:

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit "FAP231E-default"
    config platform
      set type 231E
      set ddscan enable
    end
    set handoff-sta-thresh 55
    set allowaccess https ssh snmp
    config radio-1
      set mode sam
      set sam-ssid "TEST-SAM"
      set sam-captive-portal enable
      set sam-cwp-username "tester"
      set sam-cwp-password ENC
      set sam-cwp-test-url "https://www.fortinet.com"
      set sam-cwp-match-string "fgtauth" << This string is a part of the URL of the
        Captive Portal redirect page.
      set sam-cwp-success-string "Fortinet"
      set sam-cwp-failure-string "failed"
      set sam-password ENC
      set sam-test ping
      set sam-server-type ip
      set sam-server-ip 8.8.8.8
      set sam-report-intv 60
    end
    config radio-2
      unset band
    end
    config radio-3
      set mode monitor
    end
  end
next
end

```

### 2. Configure the managed FortiAP settings:

```

config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP231ETF20000449"
    set uuid 404c8e50-c3ca-51eb-f111-040b31b593a1
    set admin enable
    set wtp-profile "FAP231E-default"
    config radio-2
    end
  end
next
end

```

## Check the managed FortiAP to verify SAM settings

After a few minutes, check the FAP\_B configuration in the managed FortiAP:

```
FortiAP-231E # rcfg
```

```
Radio 0: AP
...
sam ssid : TEST-SAM
sam bssid : 00:00:00:00:00:00
sam security type : Open
sam captive portal : enabled
sam cwp test url : https://www.fortinet.com
sam cwp match string : fgtauth
sam cwp success string : Fortinet
sam cwp failure string : failed
sam test : Ping
sam server : 8.8.8.8
sam report interval: 60
sam iperf port : 5001
sam iperf protocol : UDP
...
```

## Determining the coverage area of a FortiAP

Vendor specific elements can be enabled by SSID and send out information about the FortiAP name, model and serial number. This allows wireless administrator performing site surveys to easily determine the coverage area of a FortiAP. The administrator can slowly move away from a FortiAP while continuously sniffing the beacons to determine if they can still hear from the FortiAP.

Another use case is to ensure that the FortiAP can be correctly identified during post-implementation wireless site surveys. This make troubleshooting and design improvements much easier.

### To enable beacon advertising - GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > SSIDs** and select the SSID you want to enable Beacon advertising on.
2. Under **WiFi Settings**, enable **Beacon advertising** and select which element(s) you want to advertise:
  - **Name** - The FortiAP name.
  - **Model** - The FortiAP model.
  - **Serial Number** - The FortiAP serial number.

3. Click **OK** to save.

### To enable beacon advertising - CLI

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit "dont_connect"
set ssid "dont_connect"
set pmf enable
set passphrase ENC *****
set schedule "always"
set quarantine disable
set beacon-advertising name model serial-number
next
end
```



The `beacon-advertising` setting can select up to three items (name, model and serial number).

### To verify beacon advertising - CLI

```
diag wireless wlac -c wlan dont_connect | grep "beacon advertising"
beacon advertising          : name model sn
```

Upon sniffing the air packet, an additional field vendor specific Fortinet can be found in SSID beacon which has name of the advertising FAP (test), model 234F and serial number of 234F.

| No. | Time     | Source            | Destination       | Protocol | Length | Option | Info                                                                       |
|-----|----------|-------------------|-------------------|----------|--------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11  | 0.000923 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Fortinet_b1:49:00 | 802.11   | 502    |        | Probe Response, SN=1666, FN=0, Flags=.....C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect     |
| 17  | 0.003316 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Fortinet_b1:49:00 | 802.11   | 502    |        | Probe Response, SN=1666, FN=0, Flags=.....R...C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect |
| 44  | 0.030717 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Broadcast         | 802.11   | 556    |        | Beacon frame, SN=2649, FN=0, Flags=.....C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect       |
| 88  | 0.133128 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Broadcast         | 802.11   | 556    |        | Beacon frame, SN=2650, FN=0, Flags=.....C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect       |
| 217 | 0.235515 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Broadcast         | 802.11   | 556    |        | Beacon frame, SN=2651, FN=0, Flags=.....C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect       |
| 251 | 0.265176 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Fortinet_d3:3c:4f | 802.11   | 502    |        | Probe Response, SN=1667, FN=0, Flags=.....C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect     |
| 252 | 0.266029 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Fortinet_d3:3c:4f | 802.11   | 502    |        | Probe Response, SN=1667, FN=0, Flags=.....R...C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect |
| 253 | 0.266875 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Fortinet_d3:3c:4f | 802.11   | 502    |        | Probe Response, SN=1667, FN=0, Flags=.....R...C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect |
| 254 | 0.267644 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Fortinet_d3:3c:4f | 802.11   | 502    |        | Probe Response, SN=1667, FN=0, Flags=.....R...C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect |
| 311 | 0.337917 | Fortinet_b2:18:78 | Broadcast         | 802.11   | 556    |        | Beacon frame, SN=2652, FN=0, Flags=.....C, BI=100, SSID=dont_connect       |

|                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| > Ac Parameters ACI 2 (Video), ACM no, AIFSN 2, ECWmin/max 3/4 (CWmin/max 7/15), TXOP 94 |
| > Ac Parameters ACI 3 (Voice), ACM no, AIFSN 2, ECWmin/max 2/3 (CWmin/max 3/7), TXOP 47  |
| ▼ Tag: Vendor Specific: Fortinet Inc.                                                    |
| Tag Number: Vendor Specific (221)                                                        |
| Tag length: 32                                                                           |
| OUI: 00:09:0f (Fortinet Inc.)                                                            |
| Vendor Specific OUI Type: 1                                                              |
| Vendor Specific Data: 010044bc3bc9816b6181e4d076352ecd974023deec3b08e9cbbcbe199ab        |
| ▼ Tag: Vendor Specific: Fortinet Inc.                                                    |
| Tag Number: Vendor Specific (221)                                                        |
| Tag length: 37                                                                           |
| OUI: 00:09:0f (Fortinet Inc.)                                                            |
| Vendor Specific OUI Type: 10                                                             |
| Vendor Specific Data: 0a0001047465737402064650323334460310465032333446544632303030303135 |
| ▼ Tag: Vendor Specific: Fortinet Inc.                                                    |
| Tag Number: Vendor Specific (221)                                                        |
| Tag length: 7                                                                            |

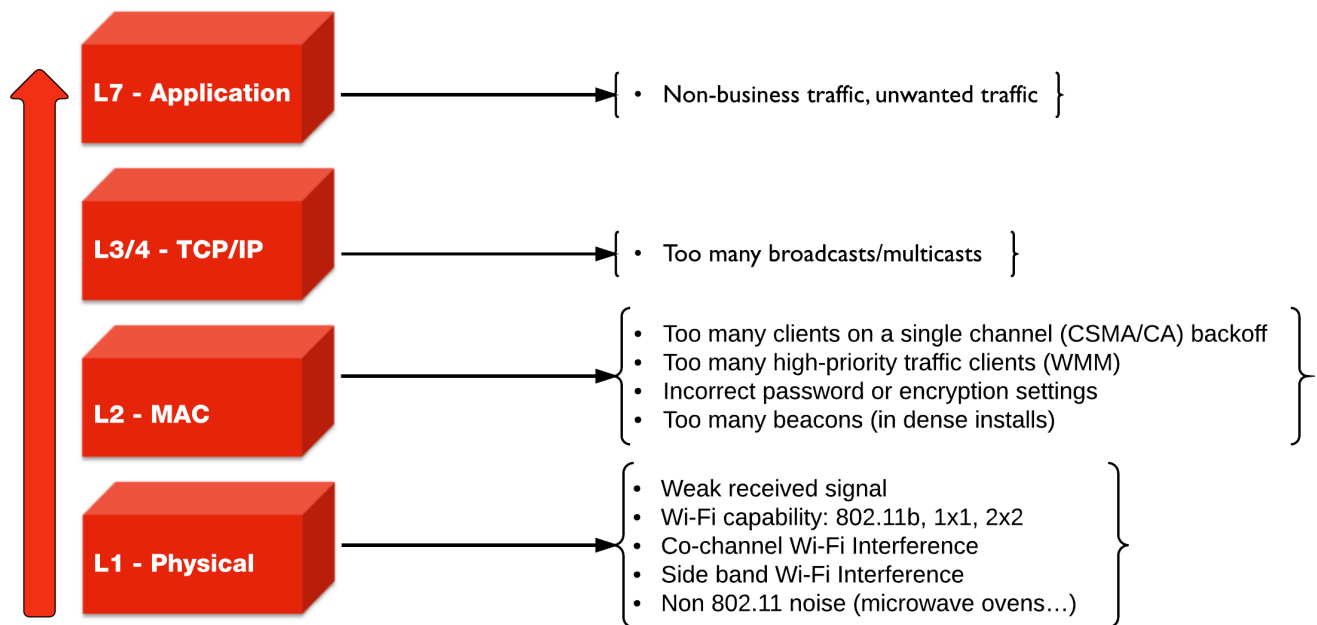
|      |                         |                         |                   |
|------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 0180 | 01 01 80 00 03 a4 00 00 | 27 a4 00 00 42 43 5e 00 | .....BC..         |
| 0190 | 62 32 2f 00 dd 20 00 09 | 0f 01 00 44 bc 3b c9 81 | b2/..D;..         |
| 01a0 | 6b 61 81 e4 00 76 35 2e | cd 97 40 23 de ec 3b 08 | ka...v5, ..@#;..  |
| 01b0 | e9 cb cb e1 99 ab dd 25 | 00 00 0f 00 00 01 04 74 | .....%.....       |
| 01c0 | 65 73 74 02 06 46 50 32 | 33 34 46 03 10 46 50 22 | est..FP2 3dF..FP2 |
| 01d0 | 13 34 46 54 46 32 30 20 | 30 30 30 31 35 dd 07 00 | 34FTF200 00015--- |
| 01e0 | 09 0f 06 00 00 00 dd 09 | 00 03 7f 01 01 00 00 ff | .....             |
| 01f0 | 7f dd 08 8c fd f0 01 01 | 02 01 00 dd 13 8c fd f0 | .....             |
| 0200 | 01 01 02 01 00 02 01 00 | 03 03 01 01 00 04 01 01 | .....             |
| 0210 | dd 16 8c fd f0 04 00 00 | 49 4c 51 03 02 09 72 01 | .....TLQ...P-     |
| 0220 | 00 00 00 00 fd ff 00 00 | 5c a3 db 5b             | .....\..[         |

## Best practices for OSI common sources of wireless issues

Not all WiFi problems are related to signal strength, interference, or misconfiguration. The following Open System Interconnection (OSI) model identifies some of the more common issues per layer.

Best practices for troubleshooting vary depending on the affected layer. See the following illustration.

## Common sources of wireless issues



## Best practices for Layer 1

Common physical layer issues include:

- weak received signal
- WiFi capability: 802.11b, 1x1, 2x2
- co-channel WiFi interference
- side band WiFi interference
- non 802.11 noise (such as microwave ovens)

To avoid physical layer issues:

- Determine the RST (Receiver Sensitivity Threshold) for your device, or use -70 dBm as a rule of thumb.
- Match the AP TX output power to the client TX output power.
- Use DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) for high performance data 20/40 MHz.
- Use 5 GHz UNII-1 & 3 (Non-DFS) bands with static channel assignment for latency-sensitive applications.
- Do not use 40 MHz channels in 2.4 GHz band. (FortiOS does not allow channel bonding.)

## Best practices for Layer 2

Common data link (MAC) layer issues include:

- too many clients on a single channel (CSMA/CA) backoff
- too many high-priority traffic clients (WMM)

- incorrect password or encryption settings
- too many beacons (in high-density installations)

To avoid data link layer issues:

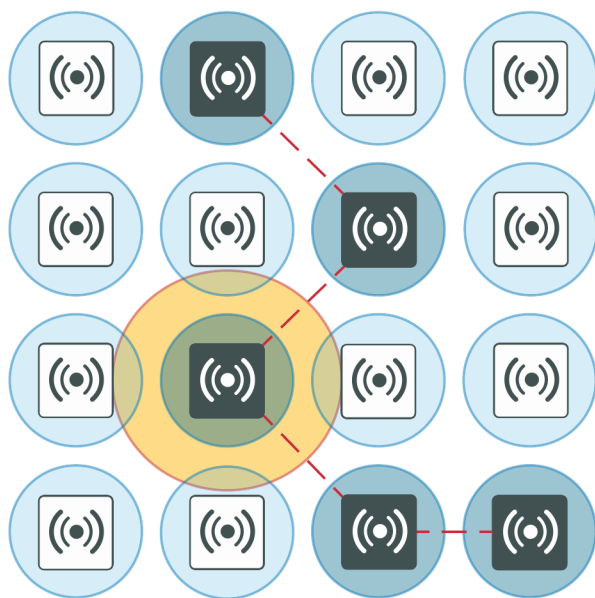
- Only use CCMP/AES (WPA2) encryption (not TKIP).
- In high-density deployments, turn off SSID broadcast or turn down SSID rates. Review and possibly reduce the beacon interval.
- Determine the best cell size for applications:
  - For few users and low bandwidth latency sensitive applications, use high-transmit power to create larger cells.
  - For high-performance and high-capacity installations, use lower transmit power to create smaller cells (set FortiPlanner at 10 dBm TX power), but bear in mind that this setting requires more roaming.

## Cells and co-channel interference

In high-density deployments, multiple APs are used, and each one services an area called a cell. However, these cells can cause interference with each other. This is a common problem. The radio signal from one AP interferes with, or cancels out, the radio signal from another AP.

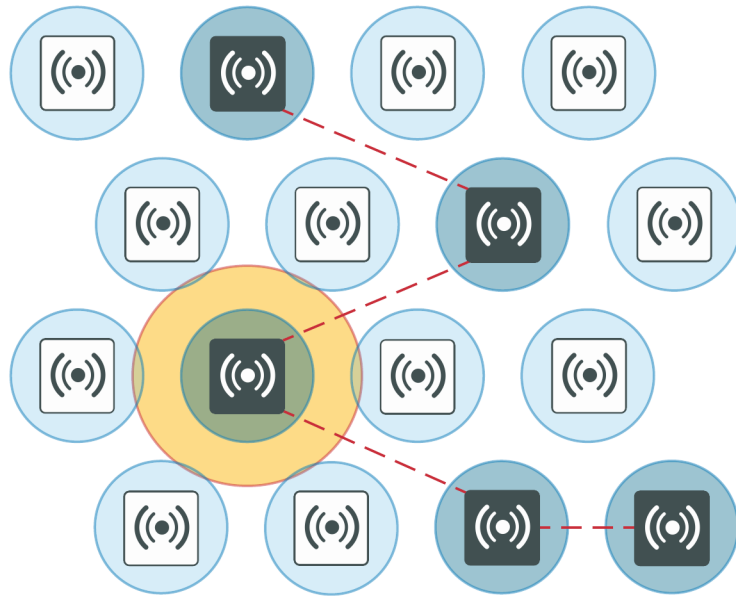
In the following diagram, note the interference zone created by one radio, causing interference on its neighboring APs.

The interference zone can be twice the radius of the signal, and the signal at its edge can be -67 dBm.



## Reducing co-channel interference

For best results, use a honeycomb pattern as a deployment strategy. The idea is to *stagger* repeated channels furthest from each other to avoid interference.



## Best practices for Layer 3 and above

For TCP/IP layers and above, a common source of latency, or slowness in the wireless traffic, is too many broadcasts or multicasts. These types of issues can result from non-business or unwanted traffic, or both.

To resolve issues at the TCP/IP layer and above, you can:

- identify business-critical applications
- use Application Control, Web Filtering, Traffic Shaping, and QoS to prioritize applications
  - Identify unwanted traffic, high-bandwidth web-related traffic, and use Security Profiles.
  - Use the traffic shaping on a policy to rate-limit this traffic.

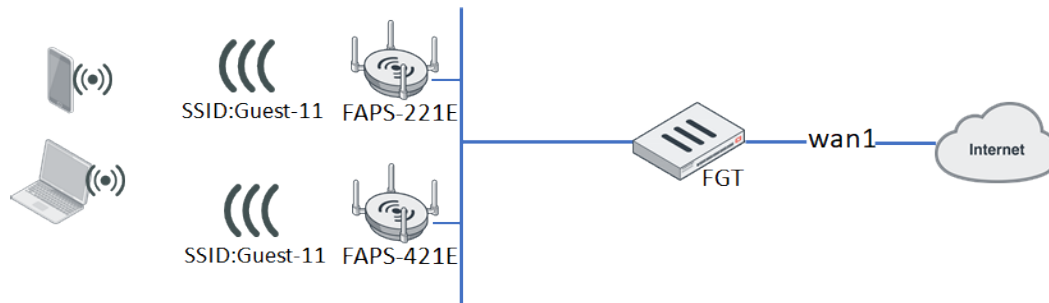
You perform these configurations directly on the FortiGate.

## Extended logging

Extended logging information in these four key areas help WiFi troubleshooting: Association, Authentication, DHCP, and DNS.

The detailed wireless event logs show client connection procession to help IT administrators troubleshoot WiFi connection problems. The FortiAP can send more detailed events of client connections (such as probe, associate, authentication, 4-way handshake, DHCP), and FortiGate can create associated logs of these event.





## New probe, authentication, and associate logs when wireless clients try to connect a broadcasted SSID with any security-mode

### Probe request and response logs

| Action     | Description                         | Message                                                          | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| probe-req  | Probe request from wireless station | AP received probe request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:52 logid="0104043681"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548886190 logdesc="Probe request from wireless station" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022"<br>vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1<br>stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="probe-req"<br>reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received probe request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="49.326391" |
| probe-resp | Probe response to wireless station  | AP sent probe response frame to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4      | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:52 logid="0104043682"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548886190 logdesc="Probe response to wireless station" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022"<br>vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1<br>stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="probe-resp"<br>reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent probe response frame to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="49.326459"      |

### Authentication request and response logs

| Action    | Description                                  | Message                                                                   | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| auth-req  | Authentication request from wireless station | AP received authentication request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043675"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Authentication request from wireless station" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="auth-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received authentication request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="44.902962" |
| auth-resp | Authentication response to wireless station  | AP sent authentication response frame to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4      | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043676"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Authentication response to wireless station" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="auth-resp" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent authentication response frame to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="44.903038"      |

### Associate request and response logs

| Action     | Description                               | Message                                                                | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| assoc-req  | Association request from wireless station | AP received association request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043677"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Association request from wireless station" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="assoc-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received association request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="44.915155" |
| assoc-resp | Association response to wireless station  | AP sent association response frame to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4      | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043679"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Association response to wireless station" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="assoc-resp" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent association response frame to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="44.916829"      |

## New WPA 4-Way handshake logs when wireless clients try to connect WPA2-Personal/WPA2-Enterprise SSID

### Complete WPA 4-Way handshake logs

| Action          | Description                                               | Message                                                                  | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WPA-1/4-key-msg | AP sent 1/4 message of 4 way handshake to wireless client | AP sent 1/4 message of 4-way handshake to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4       | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043650" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="AP sent 1/4 message of 4 way handshake to wireless client" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="WPA-1/4-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent 1/4 message of 4-way handshake to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="44.920791" |
| WPA-2/4-key-msg | Wireless client sent 2/4 message of 4 way handshake       | AP received 2/4 message of 4-way handshake from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043651" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Wireless client sent 2/4 message of 4 way handshake" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="WPA-2/4-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received 2/4 message of 4-way handshake from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="44.926647" |
| WPA-3/4-key-msg | AP sent 3/4 message of 4 way handshake to wireless client | AP sent 3/4 message of 4-way handshake to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4       | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043652" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="AP sent 3/4 message of 4 way handshake to wireless client" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="WPA-3/4-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent 3/4 message of 4-way handshake to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="44.928406" |
| WPA-4/4-key-msg | Wireless client sent 4/4 message of 4 way handshake       | AP received 4/4 message of 4-way handshake from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043653" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Wireless client sent 4/4 message of 4 way handshake" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="WPA-4/4-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received 4/4 message of 4-way handshake from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="44.933383" |

### Invalid 2/4 handshake logs with wrong PSK input

| Action                  | Description                                                     | Message                                                                                                         | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WPA-invalid-2/4-key-msg | Wireless client 4 way handshake failed with invalid 2/4 message | Probably wrong password entered, invalid MIC in 2/4 message of 4-way handshake from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-31 time=16:41:02 logid="0104043648" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548981661 logdesc="Wireless client 4 way handshake failed with invalid 2/4 message" sn="PS421E3X15000017" ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=11 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="WPA-invalid-2/4-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Probably wrong password entered, invalid MIC in 2/4 message of 4-way handshake from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="0.0" |

### New RADIUS authentication logs when clients connect WPA2-Enterprise with User-group or Radius-auth SSID

#### RADIUS authenticate success log when client pass authentication

| Action              | Description                                   | Message                                       | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RADIUS-auth-success | Wireless client RADIUS authentication success | Wireless client RADIUS authentication success | date=2019-01-30 time=14:36:09 logid="0104043630" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548887768 logdesc="Wireless client RADIUS authentication success" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability4" ssid="Guest-21" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Enterprise" encryption="AES" action="RADIUS-auth-success" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 RADIUS authentication success" remotewtptime="0.0" |

#### RADIUS authenticate failure log when client fails to pass authentication

| Action              | Description                                   | Message                                                | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RADIUS-auth-failure | Wireless client RADIUS authentication failure | Client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 RADIUS authentication failure | date=2019-01-30 time=14:35:51 logid="0104043629" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548887750 logdesc="Wireless client RADIUS authentication failure" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability4" ssid="Guest-21" radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Enterprise" encryption="AES" action="RADIUS-auth-failure" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 RADIUS authentication failure" remotewtptime="0.0" |

## New RADIUS MAC authentication logs when clients try to connect a SSID with radius-mac-auth enabled

### RADIUS MAC authenticate success log when client passes RADIUS MAC authentication

| Action                  | Description                                       | Message                                                    | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RADIUS-MAC-auth-success | Wireless client RADIUS MAC authentication success | Client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72 RADIUS MAC authentication success | date=2019-01-30 time=15:54:40 logid="0104043633" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548892477 logdesc="Wireless client RADIUS MAC authentication success" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1 stamac="b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" channel=6 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="RADIUS-MAC-auth-success" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72 RADIUS MAC authentication success" remotewtptime="0.0" |

### RADIUS MAC authenticate failure log when client fails to pass RADIUS MAC authentication

| Action                  | Description                                       | Message                                                    | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RADIUS-MAC-auth-success | Wireless client RADIUS MAC authentication success | Client 1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49 RADIUS MAC authentication failure | date=2019-01-30 time=15:47:42 logid="0104043632" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548892061 logdesc="Wireless client RADIUS MAC authentication failure" sn="FP320C3X17001909" ap="320C-TEST" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=2 stamac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" channel=40 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="RADIUS-MAC-auth-failure" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Client 1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49 RADIUS MAC authentication failure" remotewtptime="0.0" |

## New DHCP logs when clients try to acquire IP after connected

### Complete DHCP Discover/Offer/Request/ACK logs

| Action        | Description                         | Message                                                                                      | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DHCP-DISCOVER | Wireless station sent DHCP DISCOVER | DHCP DISCOVER from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4                                               | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:48 logid="0104043663"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice"<br>vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886188 logdesc="Wireless station sent DHCP DISCOVER" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-DISCOVER" reason="N/A" msg="DHCP DISCOVER from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="45.123652"                                             |
| DHCP-OFFER    | DHCP server sent DHCP OFFER         | DHCP OFFER of IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4           | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:49 logid="0104043664"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice"<br>vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886189 logdesc="DHCP server sent DHCP OFFER" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-OFFER" reason="N/A" msg="DHCP OFFER of IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="46.156969"                    |
| DHCP-REQUEST  | Wireless station sent DHCP REQUEST  | DHCP REQUEST for IP 11.10.80.2 offered by server 11.10.80.1 from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:50 logid="0104043666"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice"<br>vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886190 logdesc="Wireless station sent DHCP REQUEST" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-REQUEST" reason="N/A" msg="DHCP REQUEST for IP 11.10.80.2 offered by server 11.10.80.1 from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="47.243792" |
| DHCP-ACK      | DHCP server sent DHCP ACK           | DHCP ACK for IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4            | date=2019-01-30 time=14:09:50 logid="0104043667"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice"<br>vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548886190 logdesc="DHCP server sent DHCP ACK" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-ACK" reason="N/A" msg="DHCP ACK for IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" remotewtptime="47.246381"                         |

## Error logs when DHCP failure happens

| Action                | Description                                                  | Message                                                                               | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DHCP-NAK              | DHCP server sent DHCP NAK                                    | IP address not assigned, DHCP NAK from server 11.10.80.1 for client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72 | date=2019-01-30 time=15:22:08 logid="0104043661" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548890528 logdesc="DHCP server sent DHCP NAK" sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-NAK" reason="requested address not available" msg="IP address not assigned, DHCP NAK from server 11.10.80.1 for client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" remotewtptime="289.83561" |
| DHCP-no-response      | Wireless station DHCP process failed with no server response | DHCP server not responding for client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72                               | date=2019-02-01 time=10:39:07 logid="0104043658" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1549046347 logdesc="Wireless station DHCP process failed with no server response" sn="PS421E3X15000017" ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-no-response" reason="N/A" msg="DHCP server not responding for client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" remotewtptime="457.629929"               |
| DHCP-no-ACK           | No DHCP ACK from server                                      | No DHCP ACK for IP 11.10.80.3 requested by client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72                   | date=2019-02-01 time=10:38:56 logid="0104043660" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1549046336 logdesc="No DHCP ACK from server" sn="PS421E3X15000017" ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-no-ACK" reason="N/A" msg="No DHCP ACK for IP 11.10.80.3 requested by client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" remotewtptime="448.236740"                                             |
| DHCP-self-assigned-IP | Wireless station is using self-assigned IP                   | Detected self assigned IP 169.254.210.208 of client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72                 | date=2019-02-01 time=10:38:51 logid="0104043670" type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1549046330 logdesc="Wireless station is using self-assigned IP" sn="PS421E3X15000017" ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" stamac="b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="DHCP-self-assigned-IP" reason="N/A" msg="Detected self assigned IP 169.254.210.208 of client b4:ae:2b:cb:d1:72" remotewtptime="441.742363"              |



## New GTK-Rekey logs when clients perform gtk-rekey

| Action                | Description                                                   | Message                                                                         | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WPA-group-1/2-key-msg | AP sent 1/2 message of group key handshake to wireless client | AP sent 1/2 message of group key handshake to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4       | date=2019-01-30 time=15:12:01 logid="0104043654"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548889920 logdesc="AP sent 1/2 message of group key handshake to wireless client"<br>sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022"<br>vap="stability4" ssid="Guest-21" radioid=1<br>stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Enterprise" encryption="AES" action="WPA-group-1/2-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent 1/2 message of group key handshake to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="3778.128070" |
| WPA-group-2/2-key-msg | Wireless client sent 2/2 message of group key handshake       | AP received 2/2 message of group key handshake from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-30 time=15:12:01 logid="0104043655"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548889920 logdesc="Wireless client sent 2/2 message of group key handshake"<br>sn="PS221E3X16000022" ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability4" ssid="Guest-21" radioid=1<br>stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=6 security="WPA2 Enterprise" encryption="AES" action="WPA-group-2/2-key-msg" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received 2/2 message of group key handshake from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="3778.228253"    |

## New Fast-BSS-Transition (FT) logs when 802.11r clients roam between 2 FAPs

### FT logs when clients succeed to roaming

| Action        | Description                            | Message                                                              | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FT-action-req | Wireless client sent FT action request | AP received FT action request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-31 time=15:13:23 logid="0104043642"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548976403 logdesc="Wireless client sent FT action request" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11" radioid=1<br>stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=1 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-action-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received FT action request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="146.847041" |



| Action          | Description                                            | Message                                                                      | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FT-action-resp  | FT action response was sent to wireless client         | AP sent FT action response frame to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4              | date=2019-01-31 time=15:13:23 logid="0104043643"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548976403 logdesc="FT action response was sent to wireless client" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=1 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=1<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-action-resp" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent FT action response frame to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="146.849137"                 |
| FT-reassoc-req  | Wireless client sent FT re-association request         | AP received FT re-association request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-31 time=15:13:23 logid="0104043646"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548976403 logdesc="Wireless client sent FT reassociation request" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=2 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=40<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-reassoc-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received FT reassociation request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="146.899110"     |
| FT-reassoc-resp | FT re-association response was sent to wireless client | AP sent FT re-association response frame to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4      | date=2019-01-31 time=15:13:23 logid="0104043647"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548976403 logdesc="FT reassociation response was sent to wireless client" sn="PS221E3X16000022"<br>ap="PS221E3X16000022" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=2 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=40<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-reassoc-resp" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent FT reassociation response frame to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="146.904372" |
| FT-auth-req     | Wireless client sent FT auth request                   | AP received FT authentication request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-31 time=16:49:18 logid="0104043644"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548982158 logdesc="Wireless client sent FT auth request" sn="PS421E3X15000017"<br>ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=2 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=100<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-auth-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP received FT authentication request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="1805.311496"              |

| Action       | Description                                  | Message                                                                 | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FT-auth-resp | FT auth response was sent to wireless client | AP sent FT authentication response frame to client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-31 time=16:49:18 logid="0104043645"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="notice" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548982158 logdesc="FT auth response was sent to wireless client" sn="PS421E3X15000017"<br>ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=2 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=100<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-auth-resp" reason="Reserved 0" msg="AP sent FT authentication response frame to client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="1805.312777" |

### Error logs when FT failure

| Action                | Description                                    | Message                                                                          | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FT-invalid-action-req | Wireless client sent invalid FT action request | Receive invalid FT request action frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4         | date=2019-01-31 time=16:49:17 logid="0104043639"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548982157 logdesc="Wireless client sent invalid FT action request" sn="PS421E3X15000017"<br>ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=2 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=100<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-invalid-action-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Receive invalid FT request action frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="0.0"     |
| FT-invalid-auth-req   | Wireless client sent invalid FT auth request   | Receive invalid FT authentication request frame from client<br>f0:98:9d:76:64:c4 | date=2019-01-31 time=16:49:18 logid="0104043640"<br>type="event" subtype="wireless" level="warning" vd="vdom1"<br>eventtime=1548982157 logdesc="Wireless client sent invalid FT auth request" sn="PS421E3X15000017"<br>ap="PS421E3X15000017" vap="stability3" ssid="Guest-11"<br>radioid=2 stamac="f0:98:9d:76:64:c4" channel=100<br>security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="FT-invalid-auth-req" reason="Reserved 0" msg="Receive invalid FT authentication request frame from client f0:98:9d:76:64:c4"<br>remotewtptime="0.0" |

## New DNS error logs in DNS service failure

| Action        | Description                                                    | Message                                                                                       | Detail                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DNS-no-domain | Wireless station DNS process failed due to non-existing domain | DNS lookup of uop.umeng.com from client 3c:2e:ff:83:91:33 failed with \"non-existing domain\" | date=2019-02-01 time=09:42:03 logid=\"0104043673\" type=\"event\" subtype=\"wireless\" level=\"warning\" vd=\"vdom1\" eventtime=1549042922 logdesc=\"Wireless station DNS process failed due to non-existing domain\" sn=\"PS421E3X15000017\" ap=\"PS421E3X15000017\" vap=\"stability3\" ssid=\"Guest-11\" stamac=\"3c:2e:ff:83:91:33\" security=\"WPA2 Personal\" encryption=\"AES\" action=\"DNS-no-domain\" reason=\"Server 100.100.16.172 replied \"non-existing domain\"\" msg=\"DNS lookup of uop.umeng.com from client 3c:2e:ff:83:91:33 failed with \"non-existing domain\"\" remotewtptime=\"1130.445518\" |

## Packet sniffer

Capturing the traffic between the controller and the FortiAP can help you identify most FortiAP and client connection issues.

### CAPWAP packet sniffer

The first recommended technique consists of sniffing the CAPWAP traffic.

- Enable plain control on the controller and on the FortiAP to capture clear control traffic on UDP port 5246.
  - On the controller:
 

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac plain-ctl <FortiAP_serial_number> 1
```

**Result:**  
WTP 0-FortiAP2223X11000107 Plain Control: enabled
  - On the FortiAP:
 

```
cw_diag plain-ctl 1
```

**Result:**  
Current Plain Control: enabled

Note that some issues are related to the keep-alive for control and data channel.

Data traffic on UDP port 5247 is not encrypted. The data itself is encrypted by the wireless security mechanism.

Data traffic is helpful to troubleshoot most of the issues related to station association, EAP authentication, WPA key exchange, roaming, and FortiAP configuration.

You can also set up a host or server to which you can forward the CAPWAP traffic:

1. Configure the host or server to which CAPWAP traffic is forwarded:
 

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac sniff-cfg <Host_IP_address> 88888
```

**Result:**  
Current Sniff Server: 192.168.25.41, 23352
2. Choose which traffic to capture, the interface to which the FortiAP is connected, and the FortiAP serial number:
 

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac sniff <interface_name> <FortiAP_serial_number> 2
```

### Result:

WTP 0-FortiAP2223X11000107 Sniff: intf port2 enabled (control and data message)

In the above syntax, the '2' captures the control and data message. The '1' would capture only the control message and '0' would disable it.

3. Run Wireshark on the host or server to capture CAPWAP traffic from the controller.
4. Decode the traffic as IP to check inner CAPWAP traffic.

### Example CAPWAP packet capture

The following image shows an example of a CAPWAP packet capture, where you can see the following details:

- Layer 2 header
- sniffed traffic encapsulated into Internet Protocol for transport
- CAPWAP encapsulated into UDP for sniffer purpose and encapsulated into IP
- CAPWAP control traffic on UDP port 5246
- CAPWAP payload

| No. | Time     | Source        | Destination   | Protocol | Info                        |
|-----|----------|---------------|---------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| 1   | 0.000000 | 192.168.35.82 | 192.168.35.80 | CAPWAP   | Control Msg - Echo Request  |
| 2   | 0.000308 | 192.168.35.82 | 192.168.35.80 | CAPWAP   | Control Msg - Echo Request  |
| 3   | 0.000452 | 192.168.35.80 | 192.168.35.82 | CAPWAP   | Control Msg - Echo Response |
| 4   | 0.000454 | 192.168.35.80 | 192.168.35.82 | CAPWAP   | Control Msg - Echo Response |

Frame 4: 134 bytes on wire (1072 bits), 134 bytes captured (1072 bits)

Ethernet II, Src: Fortinet\_c5:ce:66 (00:09:0f:c5:ce:66), Dst: Intel\_0e:e3:79 (00:07:e9:0e:e3:79)

Internet Protocol, Src: 192.168.35.80 (192.168.35.80), Dst: 192.168.35.82 (192.168.35.82)

User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: 8887 (8887), Dst Port: 55555 (55555)

Internet Protocol, Src: 192.168.35.80 (192.168.35.80), Dst: 192.168.35.82 (192.168.35.82)

Version: 4  
Header length: 20 bytes  
Differentiated Services Field: 0x00 (DSCP 0x00: Default; ECN: 0x00)  
Total Length: 92  
Identification: 0x0021 (33)  
Flags: 0x00  
Fragment offset: 0  
Time to live: 64  
Protocol: UDP (17)  
Header checksum: 0xb27d [correct]  
Source: 192.168.35.80 (192.168.35.80)  
Destination: 192.168.35.82 (192.168.35.82)

User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: capwap-control (5246), Dst Port: capwap-control (5246)

CAPWAP Protocol

CAPWAP Header 8 bytes  
CAPWAP Control Header 8 bytes  
CAPWAP Message Elements 48 bytes

0000 00 07 e9 0e e3 79 00 09 0f c5 ce 66 08 00 45 00 .....y...f..E.  
0010 00 78 b1 b7 00 00 40 11 00 f0 c0 a8 23 50 c0 a8 .x...@...#P..  
0020 23 2d 22 b7 d9 03 00 64 00 00 45 00 00 5c 00 21 #-"...d..E.\.!  
0030 00 00 40 11 b2 7d c0 a8 23 50 c0 a8 23 52 14 7e .@...}...#P..#R.~  
0040 14 7e 00 48 00 00 00 10 42 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 ~.H...B.....  
0050 00 0e 8d 00 33 00 00 25 00 2c 00 00 30 44 00 32 ...3...%...0D.2

Frame (frame), 134 bytes      Packets: 4 Displayed: 4 Marked: 0 Load time: 0:00.218      Profile: Default

## Wireless traffic packet sniffer

The second recommended technique consists of sniffing the wireless traffic directly on the air using your FortiAP.

## Wireless traffic packet capture

Packet captures are useful for troubleshooting all wireless client related issues because you can verify data rate and 802.11 parameters, such as radio capabilities, and determine issues with wireless signal strength, interference, or congestion on the network.

A radio can only capture one frequency at a time; one of the radios is set to sniffer mode depending on the traffic or channel required. You must use two FortiAPs to capture both frequencies at the same time.

- Set a radio on the FortiAP to monitor mode.

```
iwconfig wlan10
```

**Result:**

```
wlan10 IEEE 802.11na    ESSID:""
Mode:Monitor Frequency:5.18 GHz Access Point: Not-Associated
```

- The capture file is stored under the temp directory as *wl\_sniff.pcap* /*tmp/wl\_sniff.cap*



The capture file is only stored temporarily. If you want to save it, upload it to a TFTP server before rebooting or changing the radio settings.

---

- The command `cp wl_sniff.cap newname.pcap` allows you to rename the file.
- To send the pcap file to a remote TFTP server, use the following commands depending on your AP model:

- For FAP-U:

```
tftp -l /tmp/wl_sniff.cap -r wl_sniff_remote.cap -p 192.168.50.100
```

- For Standard FAP W1:

```
ftftp -l /tmp/wl_sniff.cap -r wl_sniff_remote.cap -p 192.168.50.100
```

- For Standard FAP W2:

```
ftftp 192.168.50.100 -m binary -c put /tmp/wl_sniff.cap wl_sniff_remote.cap
```

Where 192.168.50.100 is the IP address of the tftp server.

## Syntax

The following syntax demonstrates how to set the radio to sniffer mode (configurable from the CLI only). Sniffer mode provides options to filter for specific traffic to capture. Notice that you can determine the buffer size, which channel to sniff, the AP MAC address, and select if you want to sniff the beacons, probes, controls, and data channels.

```
configure wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit <profile_name>
  configure <radio>
    set mode sniffer
    set ap-sniffer-bufsize 32
    set ap-sniffer-chan 1
    set ap-sniffer-addr 00:00:00:00:00:00
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-beacon enable
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-probe enable
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-other enable
    set ap-sniffer-ctl enable
    set ap-sniffer-data enable
  end
```

end

Once you have performed the previous CLI configuration, you can see the packet sniffer mode selected in the GUI dashboard under **WiFi and Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles** and **WiFi and Switch Controller > Managed FortiAPs**. Bear in mind that if you change the mode from the GUI, you need to return to the CLI to re-enable the sniffer mode.

To disable the sniffer profile in the CLI, use the following commands:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <profile_name>
    config <radio>
      set ap-sniffer-mgmt-beacon disable
      set ap-sniffer-mgmt-probe disable
      set ap-sniffer-mgmt-other disable
      set ap-sniffer-ctl disable
      set ap-sniffer-data disable
    end
  end
end
```



If you change the radio mode before sending the file *wl\_sniff.cap* to an external TFTP, the file is deleted and you lose your packet capture.

---

### Example AP packet capture

The following image shows an example of the AP packet capture with the following details:

- capture header showing channel 36
- beacon frame
- source, destination, and BSSID of the beacon frame
- SSID of the beacon frame

| No. . | Time            | Source            | Destination       | Protocol                                               | Info |
|-------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 21    | 15:55:07.273165 |                   | Fortinet_f1:b1:64 | (I IEEE 80 Acknowledgement, Flags=.....                |      |
| 22    | 15:55:07.274418 | Fortinet_ff:95:6f | Broadcast         | IEEE 80 Beacon frame, SN=4003, FN=0, Flags=....., BI=1 |      |
| 23    | 15:55:07.274418 | Broadcast         | Broadcast         | IEEE 80 Beacon frame, SN=4003, FN=0, Flags=....., BI=1 |      |

Frame 22 (479 bytes on wire, 479 bytes captured)

Prism capture header

Message Code: 68

Message Length: 144

Device: wlan10

Host timestamp: 0x2d214d0 (DID 0x10044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

MAC timestamp: 0x13e9c (DID 0x20044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

Channel: 0x24 (DID 0x30044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

RSSI: 0x0 (DID 0x40044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

Signal: 0x16 (DID 0x60044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

Data Rate: 6.0 Mb/s

IsTX: 0x0 (DID 0x90044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

Frame Length: 0x14f (DID 0xa0044, Status 0x0, Length 0x4)

IEEE 802.11 Beacon frame, Flags: .....

Type/Subtype: Beacon frame (0x08)

Frame Control: 0x0080 (Normal)

Duration: 0

Destination address: Broadcast (ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff)

Source address: Fortinet\_ff:95:6f (00:09:0f:ff:95:6f)

BSS Id: Fortinet\_ff:95:6f (00:09:0f:ff:95:6f)

Fragment number: 0

Sequence number: 4003

IEEE 802.11 wireless LAN management frame

Fixed parameters (12 bytes)

Tagged parameters (299 bytes)

SSID parameter set

Tag Number: 0 (SSID parameter set)

Tag length: 9

Tag interpretation: cube-mesh: "cube-mesh"

00b0 64 00 11 04 00 09 63 75 62 65 2d 6d 65 73 68 01 d....cu be-mesh.  
00c0 08 8c 12 98 24 b0 48 60 6c 03 01 24 05 04 00 01 ....\$.H 1..\$.  
00d0 00 00 07 42 55 53 4f 24 01 17 28 01 17 2c 01 17 ...BUSO\$.  
00e0 30 01 17 34 01 17 38 01 17 3c 01 17 40 01 17 64 0..4..8..<..@..  
00f0 01 17 68 01 17 6c 01 17 70 01 17 74 01 17 84 01 ..h..l..p.t....  
0100 14 88 01 14 8c 01 14 85 01 12 80 01 12 8d 01 12

Interpretation of tag (wlan\_mgt.tag.interpret...

Packets: 6743 Displayed: 6743 Marked: 0

Profile: Default

# Debug commands

For a list of debug options available for the wireless controller, use the following command on the controller:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac help
```

# Sample outputs

## Syntax

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c vap
```

(This command lists the information about the virtual access point, including its MAC address, the BSSID, its SSID, the interface name, and the IP address of the APs that are broadcasting it.)

```

Result:
bssid          ssid   intf    vfid:ip-port rId wId
00:09:0f:d6:cb:12 Office Office  ws (0-192.168.3.33:5246) 0 0
00:09:0f:e6:6b:12 Office Office  ws (0-192.168.1.61:5246) 0 0
06:0e:8e:27:dc:48 Office Office  ws (0-192.168.3.36:5246) 0 0
0a:09:0f:d6:cb:12 public publicAP ws (0-192.168.3.33:5246) 0 1

```

## Syntax

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c darrp
```

(This command lists the information pertaining to the radio resource provisioning statistics, including the AP serial number, the number of channels set to choose from, and the operation channel. Note that the 5 GHz band is not available on these APs listed.)

### Result:

| wtp_id           | rId | base_mac          | index | nr_chan | vfid | 5G | oper_chan | age   |
|------------------|-----|-------------------|-------|---------|------|----|-----------|-------|
| FAP22A3U10600400 | 0   | 00:09:0f:d6:cb:12 | 0     | 3       | 0    | No | 1         | 87588 |
| FW80CM3910601176 | 0   | 06:0e:8e:27:dc:48 | 1     | 3       | 0    | No | 6         | 822   |

## Extension information support

You can enable or disable extension information at wtp-profile, and use the diagnose option below to print out the detail of extension information.

## Syntax

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit test
set lldp [enable | disable]
set ext-info-enable
[enable | disable] --> Enable or disable station, VAP, and radio extension
information.
end
end
```

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d [wtp | vap | sta]
```

where:

- wlac -d wtp [SN|name] [reset] --> List or reset wtp info (data).
- wlac -d vap [bssid] [reset] --> List or reset vap info (data).
- wlac -d sta [mac] [reset] --> list or reset sta info (data).

## Disabling 802.11d for client backward compatibility

By default, 802.11d is always enabled on FortiAPs. When 802.11d is enabled, FortiAPs broadcast the country code in beacons, probe responses, and probe requests. This can lead to some older legacy clients failing to associate to the FortiAP. You can disable 802.11d to prevent broadcasting country code settings and provide backwards compatibility with those clients



Since IEEE 802.11d only applies to 2.4 GHz radios operating in the 802.11g band, disabling 802.11d only applies to radios configured to operate in the 802.11g band.



### To disable 802.11d

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit FAP231F-default
config radio-1
set 80211d disable
end
end
```

### To verify the configuration from FortiGate:

#### 1. From the FortiGate:

```
diagnose wireless-controller wlac -c wtp FP231FTF20007509 | grep 80211d
80211d enable : disabled
```

#### 2. When the previous FortiGate setting are applied to a Managed FortiAP, the settings can be verified on the FortiAP CLI through the `rcfg` and `iwpriv` commands:

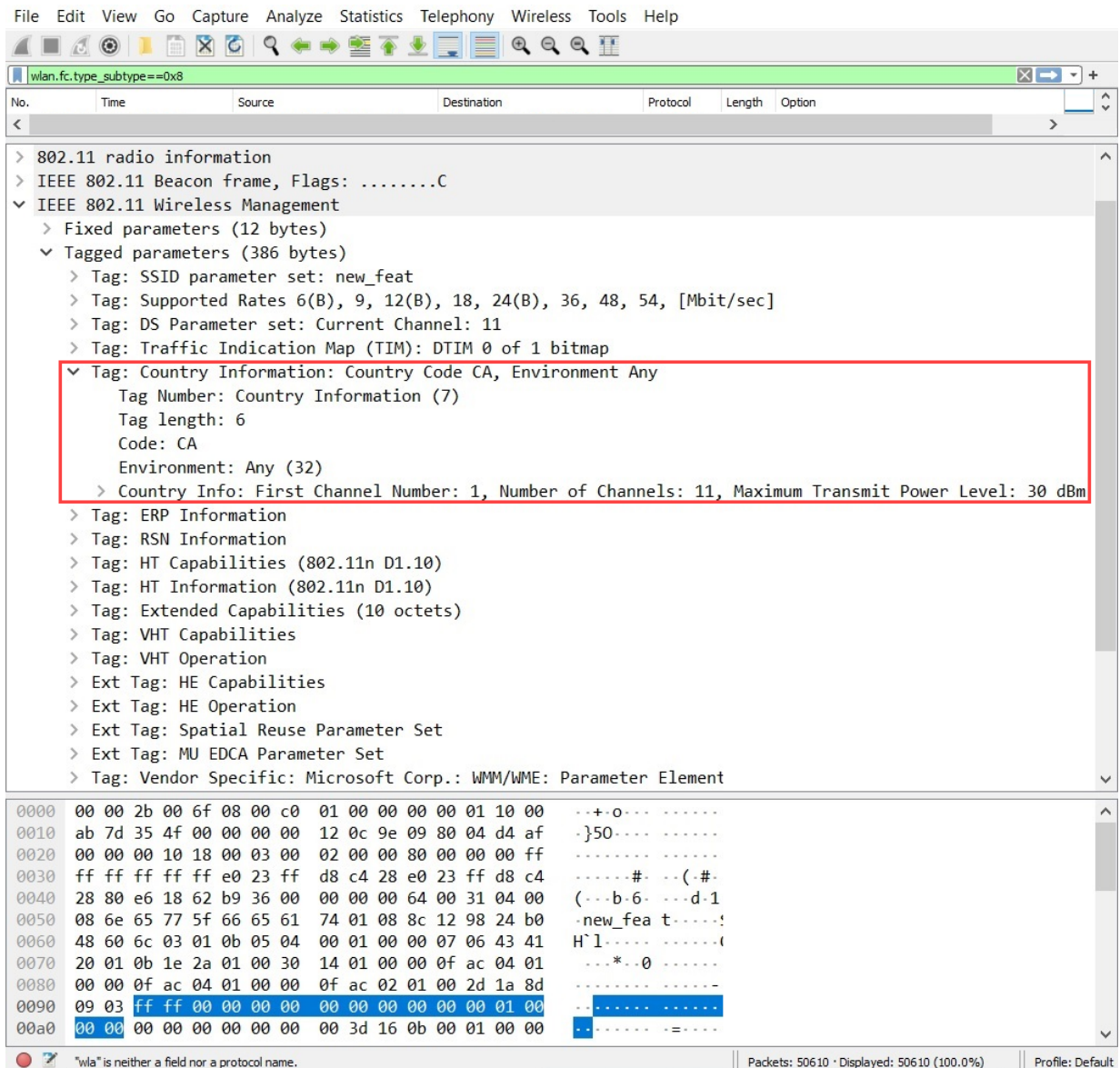
```
FortiAP-231F # rcfg | grep 802
802.11d enable : disabled
FortiAP-231F #
```

Check `iwpriv`

```
FortiAP-231F # iwpriv wlan00 get_countryie
wlan00 get_countryie:0 (0x0)
FortiAP-231F #
```

#### 3. Sniff the packets in the air before and after disabling the feature:

- a. Before enabling the feature, use a packet analyzer to check the sample beacon packet for the *Country Information Tag* in *Tagged parameters*.



- b. After disabling the 802.11d on a 2.4Ghz radio, use a packet analyzer to check the beacon and verify that the *Country Information* Tag is no longer under in *Tagged Parameters*.

Filter: wlan.fc.type\_subtype==0x8

| No. | Time | Source | Destination | Protocol | Length | Option | Info |
|-----|------|--------|-------------|----------|--------|--------|------|
| <   |      |        |             |          |        |        |      |

> Frame 3: 402 bytes on wire (3216 bits), 402 bytes captured (3216 bits)

> Radiotap Header v0, Length 43

> 802.11 radio information

> IEEE 802.11 Probe Response, Flags: ....R...C

▼ IEEE 802.11 Wireless Management

- > Fixed parameters (12 bytes)
- ▼ Tagged parameters (319 bytes)
  - > Tag: SSID parameter set: new\_feat
  - > Tag: Supported Rates 6(B), 9, 12(B), 18, 24(B), 36, 48, 54, [Mbit/sec]
  - > Tag: DS Parameter set: Current Channel: 11
  - > Tag: ERP Information
  - > Tag: RSN Information
  - ▼ Tag: HT Capabilities (802.11n D1.10)
    - Tag Number: HT Capabilities (802.11n D1.10) (45)
    - Tag length: 26
    - > HT Capabilities Info: 0x098d
    - > A-MPDU Parameters: 0x03
    - > Rx Supported Modulation and Coding Scheme Set: MCS Set
    - > HT Extended Capabilities: 0x0000
    - > Transmit Beam Forming (TxBF) Capabilities: 0x00000000
    - > Antenna Selection (ASEL) Capabilities: 0x00
  - ▼ Tag: HT Information (802.11n D1.10)
    - Tag Number: HT Information (802.11n D1.10) (61)
    - Tag length: 22
    - Primary Channel: 11
    - > HT Information Subset (1 of 3): 0x00
    - > HT Information Subset (2 of 3): 0x0001

|      |                         |                         |                    |
|------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 0000 | 00 00 2b 00 6f 08 00 c0 | 01 00 00 00 65 5f 31 34 | ..+.o... ..e_14    |
| 0010 | f5 03 94 4b 00 00 00 00 | 12 0c 9e 09 80 04 df b5 | ...K... ..         |
| 0020 | 00 01 00 10 18 00 03 00 | 02 00 00 50 08 3c 00 04 | .....P.<..         |
| 0030 | d5 90 c7 73 98 04 d5 90 | e9 f3 18 04 d5 90 e9 f3 | ...s... ..         |
| 0040 | 18 a0 fa de d8 3e e7 00 | 00 00 00 64 00 31 04 00 | ....>... ..d.1..   |
| 0050 | 08 6e 65 77 5f 66 65 61 | 74 01 08 8c 12 98 24 b0 | ..new_fea t....\$. |
| 0060 | 48 60 6c 03 01 0b 2a 01 | 00 30 14 01 00 00 0f ac | H`l...*. -0.....   |
| 0070 | 04 01 00 00 0f ac 04 01 | 00 00 0f ac 02 01 00 2d | .....- ..          |
| 0080 | 1a 8d 09 03 ff ff ff ff | 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | .....              |
| 0090 | 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | 00 00 00 3d 16 0b 00 01 | .....=.....        |
| 00a0 | 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | .....              |

❌ "wla" is neither a field nor a protocol name.

Packets: 50610 • Displayed: 50610 (100.0%) | Profile: Default

# FortiAP CLI configuration and diagnostics commands

The FortiAP CLI controls radio and network operations through the use of variables manipulated with the configuration and diagnostics commands.

For details about accessing the FortiAP CLI, see [FortiAP CLI access on page 165](#).

## Configuration commands

| Command                       | Description                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cfg -s</code>           | List variables for most popular settings and also the ones that are not using default values. |
| <code>cfg -a var=value</code> | Add or change a variable value.                                                               |
| <code>cfg -c</code>           | Commit the change to flash.                                                                   |
| <code>cfg -x</code>           | Reset settings to factory defaults.                                                           |
| <code>cfg -r var</code>       | Remove variable.                                                                              |
| <code>cfg -e</code>           | Export variables.                                                                             |
| <code>cfg -h</code>           | Display help for all configuration commands and a complete list of configuration variables.   |

## Configuration variables

| Variable                       | Description and value                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>AC_CTL_PORT</code>       | WiFi Controller control (CAPWAP) port.<br>Default: 5246.                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>AC_DATA_CHAN_SEC</code>  | Data channel security.<br>0 - Clear text<br>1 - DTLS (encrypted)<br>2 - Accept either DTLS or clear text (default)                                                                       |
| <code>AC_DISCOVERY_TYPE</code> | 0 - Auto - Cycle through all of the discovery types until successful.<br>1 - Static. Specify WiFi Controllers<br>2 - DHCP<br>3 - DNS<br>5 - Broadcast<br>6 - Multicast<br>7 - FortiCloud |

| Variable                                        | Description and value                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AC_HOSTNAME_1<br>AC_HOSTNAME_2<br>AC_HOSTNAME_3 | WiFi Controller host names for static discovery.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| AC_IPADDR_1<br>AC_IPADDR_2<br>AC_IPADDR_3       | WiFi Controller IP addresses for static discovery.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| AC_DISCOVERY_DHCP_OPTION_CODE                   | Option code for DHCP server.<br>Default: 138.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| AC_DISCOVERY_MC_ADDR                            | Multicast address for controller discovery.<br>Default: 224.0.1.140.                                                                                                                                                           |
| ADDR_MODE                                       | How the FortiAP unit obtains its IP address and netmask.<br>DHCP - FortiGate interface assigns address.<br>STATIC - Specify in AP_IPADDR and AP_NETMASK.<br>Default: DHCP.                                                     |
| ADMIN_TIMEOUT                                   | Administrative timeout in minutes. Applies to GUI sessions.<br>Default: 5 minutes.                                                                                                                                             |
| AP_IPADDR<br>AP_NETMASK<br>IPGW                 | These variables set the FortiAP unit IP address, netmask and default gateway when ADDR_MODE is STATIC.<br><br>Default for AP_IPADDR: 192.168.1.2 .<br>Default for AP_NETMASK: 255.255.255.0.<br>Default for IPGW: 192.168.1.1. |
| ALLOW_HTTPS                                     | 0 - https disable<br>1 - https enable<br>2 - controlled by AC<br>Default: 2.                                                                                                                                                   |
| ALLOW_SSH                                       | 0 - SSH disable<br>1 - SSH enable<br>2 - controlled by AC<br>Default: 2.                                                                                                                                                       |
| AP_MGMT_VLAN_ID                                 | Non-zero value applies VLAN ID for unit management. See <a href="#">Reserved VLAN IDs on page 29</a> .<br>Default: 0.                                                                                                          |
| AP_MODE                                         | FortiAP operating mode.<br>0 - Thin AP<br>2 - Unmanaged Site Survey mode. See SURVEY variables.<br>Default: 0.                                                                                                                 |
| BAUD_RATE                                       | Console data rate: 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200 baud.                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Variable              | Description and value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       | Default: 9600.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| DNS_SERVER            | DNS Server for clients. If ADDR_MODE is DHCP the DNS server is automatically assigned.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| FAP_ETHER_TRUNK       | Configure port behavior on FortiAP-U models.<br>0 - Dummy Switch. Default mode.<br>1 - Ether Hardware Bonding. Support Static Ethernet Channel Bonding on LAN1 and LAN2 ports. Only available on select FortiAP-U models.<br>2 - Ether 802.3ad Bonding. Support IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) on LAN1 and LAN2 ports.<br>3 - Enable WAN-LAN. Supports configuration of a second WAN port as a LAN (WAN-LAN mode configuration). |
| FIRMWARE_UPGRADE      | Default: 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| LED_STATE             | Enable/disable status LEDs.<br>0 - LEDs enabled<br>1 - LEDs disabled<br>2 - follow AC setting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| LOGIN_PASSWD          | Administrator login password. By default this is empty.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| STP_MODE              | Spanning Tree Protocol.<br>0 - off<br>1 - on                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| WANLAN_MODE           | Configure port behavior on FortiAP, FortiAP-S, and FortiAP-W2 models.<br>WAN-ONLY - Default mode<br>WAN-LAN - Bridges the LAN port to the incoming WAN interface<br>AGGREGATE - Enables link aggregation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| WTP_LOCATION          | Optional string describing AP location.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Mesh variables</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| MESH_AP_BGSCAN        | Enable or disable background mesh root AP scan.<br>0 - Disabled<br>1 - Enabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| MESH_AP_BGSCAN_RSSI   | If the signal of the root AP is weak, and lower than the received signal strength indicator (RSSI) threshold, the WiFi driver immediately starts a new round scan and ignores the configured MESH_AP_BGSCAN_PERIOD delays. Set the value between 0 and 127.<br>After the new round scan is finished, a scan done event is passed to wtp daemon to trigger roaming.                                                                                      |

| Variable                                                                                     | Description and value                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MESH_AP_BGSCAN_PERIOD                                                                        | Time in seconds that a delay period occurs between scans. Set the value between 1 and 3600.                                                                                                              |
| MESH_AP_BGSCAN_IDLE                                                                          | Time in milliseconds. Set the value between 0 and 1000.                                                                                                                                                  |
| MESH_AP_BGSCAN_INTV                                                                          | Time in milliseconds between channel scans. Set the value between 200 and 16000.                                                                                                                         |
| MESH_AP_BGSCAN_DUR                                                                           | Time in milliseconds that the radio will continue scanning the channel. Set the value between 10 and 200.                                                                                                |
| MESH_AP_SCANCHANLIST                                                                         | Specify those channels to be scanned.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| MESH_AP_TYPE                                                                                 | Type of communication for backhaul to controller:<br>0 - Ethernet<br>1 - WiFi mesh<br>2 - Ethernet with mesh backup support<br>Default: 0.                                                               |
| MESH_AP_SSID                                                                                 | SSID for mesh backhaul.<br>Default: fortinet.mesh.root.                                                                                                                                                  |
| MESH_AP_BSSID                                                                                | WiFi MAC address.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| MESH_AP_PASSWD                                                                               | Pre-shared key for mesh backhaul.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| MESH_ETH_BRIDGE                                                                              | 1 - Bridge mesh WiFi SSID to FortiAP Ethernet port. This can be used for point-to-point bridge configuration. This is available only when MESH_AP_TYPE =1.<br>0 - No WiFi-Ethernet bridge<br>Default: 0. |
| MESH_MAX_HOPS                                                                                | Maximum number of times packets can be passed from node to node on the mesh.<br>Default: 4.                                                                                                              |
| The following factors are summed and the FortiAP associates with the lowest scoring mesh AP. |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| MESH_SCORE_HOP_WEIGHT                                                                        | Multiplier for number of mesh hops from root. Default: 50.                                                                                                                                               |
| MESH_SCORE_CHAN_WEIGHT                                                                       | AP total RSSI multiplier. Default: 1.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| MESH_SCORE_RATE_WEIGHT                                                                       | Beacon data rate multiplier. Default: 1.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| MESH_SCORE_BAND_WEIGHT                                                                       | Band weight (0 for 2.4 GHz, 1 for 5 GHz) multiplier. Default: 100.                                                                                                                                       |
| MESH_SCORE_RSSI_WEIGHT                                                                       | AP channel RSSI multiplier. Default: 100.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Survey variables</b>                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| SURVEY_SSID                                                                                  | SSID to broadcast in site survey mode (AP_MODE=2).                                                                                                                                                       |
| SURVEY_TX_POWER                                                                              | Transmitter power in site survey mode (AP_MODE=2).                                                                                                                                                       |

| Variable           | Description and value                                          |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SURVEY_CH_24       | Site survey transmit channel for the 2.4 GHz band. Default: 6. |
| SURVEY_CH_50       | Site survey transmit channel for the 5 GHz band. Default: 36.  |
| SURVEY_BEACON_INTV | Site survey beacon interval. Default: 100 ms.                  |

## Diagnostics commands

| Command                                                  | Description                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fap-tech                                                 | Shows a consolidated log command output for debugging purposes.                     |
| cw_diag admin-timeout [30]                               | Set the shell idle timeout in minutes.                                              |
| cw_diag baudrate [9600   19200   38400   57600   115200] | Set the console baud rate.                                                          |
| cw_diag help                                             | Display help for all diagnostics commands.                                          |
| cw_diag plain-ctl [0 1]                                  | Show or change the current plain control setting.                                   |
| cw_diag sniff [0 1 2]                                    | Enable or disable the sniff packet.                                                 |
| cw_diag sniff-cfg ip port                                | Set the sniff server IP and port.                                                   |
| cw_diag stats wl_intf                                    | Show the wl_intf status.                                                            |
| cw_diag uptime                                           | Show daemon uptime.                                                                 |
| cw_diag wlanfw-dump <TFTP server IP>                     | Upload Target Assert logs to a specified TFTP server.                               |
| cw_diag -c ap-scan                                       | Show scanned APs.                                                                   |
| cw_diag -c ap-suppress                                   | Show suppressed APs.                                                                |
| cw_diag -c arp-req                                       | Show scanned arp requests.                                                          |
| cw_diag -c atf                                           | Show Air Time Fairness information at the FortiAP level.                            |
| cw_diag -c ble-scan                                      | Show scanned Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) devices that are reported to FortiPresence. |
| cw_diag -c darrp                                         | Show the DARRP radio channel.                                                       |
| cw_diag -c fortipresence                                 | Show FortiPresence statistics including reported BLE devices.                       |
| cw_diag -c k-lan-host                                    | Display wired client information for clients connected to LAN2 of the FortiAP       |
| cw_diag -c k-qos wlan00                                  | Verify that the vmn-dscp-marking values are pushed to FortiAP.                      |
| cw_diag -c mesh                                          | Show the mesh status.                                                               |
| cw_diag -c mesh-ap                                       | Show the mesh ap candidates.                                                        |



| Command                                                                                                                                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cw_diag -c mesh-veth-acinfo</code>                                                                                                                                                           | Show the mesh veth ac info, and mesh ether type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>cw_diag -c mesh-veth-host</code>                                                                                                                                                             | Show the mesh veth host.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>cw_diag -c mesh-veth-vap</code>                                                                                                                                                              | Show the mesh veth vap.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>cw_diag -c radio-cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                  | Show the current radio config parameters in the control plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>cw_diag -c scan-clr-all</code>                                                                                                                                                               | Flush all scanned AP/STA/ARPs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>cw_diag -c snmp</code>                                                                                                                                                                       | Show configuration details for SNMP support.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>cw_diag -c sta-cap</code>                                                                                                                                                                    | Show scanned STA capabilities.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>cw_diag -c sta-deauth</code>                                                                                                                                                                 | De-authenticate an STA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>cw_diag -c sta-scan</code>                                                                                                                                                                   | Show scanned STAs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>cw_diag -c temperature</code>                                                                                                                                                                | Show operating temperature.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>cw_diag -c vap-cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                    | Show the current VAPs in the control plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>cw_diag -c vlan-probe-cmd</code><br><code>&lt;action&gt; &lt;interface ID&gt; &lt;start</code><br><code>Vlan ID&gt; &lt;end Vlan</code><br><code>ID&gt; &lt;retry&gt; &lt;timeout&gt;</code> | <p>Start the VLAN probe.</p> <p>"Action" value list:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 - start</li> <li>• 1 - stop</li> </ul> <p>Example command: <code>cw_diag -c vlan-probe-cmd 0 eth0 2 300 3 10</code></p> <p>Example output: VLAN probing: start intf [eth0] vlan range[2,300] retries[3] timeout[10] ...</p> |
| <code>cw_diag -c vlan-probe-rpt</code>                                                                                                                                                             | Show the VLAN probe report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>cw_diag -c wids</code>                                                                                                                                                                       | Show scanned WIDS detections.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>cw_diag -c wtp-cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                    | Show the current wtp config parameters in the control plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>cw_diag --clog &lt;on off&gt;</code>                                                                                                                                                         | Turn on or off console log message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

# FortiAP API

FortiAP-S and FortiAP-W2 version 6.2.0 and later support REST API calls that allow you to see device information, apply configurations, reboot your devices, and more.

You can access the host at <https://<FAP-IP>> where <FAP-IP> is the IP address of the FortiAP.

## API Schema and documentation

To see the full FortiAP API schema, you will need a [Fortinet Developer Network](#) account.

Once you have an account, you can access the [FortiAP API documentation](#).

The following REST API calls are supported:

| REST API call | HTTP | Path                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cfg-get       | GET  | /api/v1/cfg-get      | List effective FortiAP variables.<br>To filter for specific parameters: /api/v1/cfg-get?names=parameter-name<br>Examples:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Get WTP_NAME: /api/v1/cfg-get?names=WTP_NAME</li> <li>Get WTP_NAME and ADMIN_TIMEOUT: /api/v1/cfg-get?names=WTP_NAME,ADMIN_TIMEOUT</li> </ul> |
| cfg-meta-get  | GET  | /api/v1/cfg-meta-get | List all variables.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| cfg-set       | POST | /api/v1/cfg-set      | Add or change variables.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| logincheck    | POST | /logincheck          | Log in to FortiAP with/without a password.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| logout        | POST | /logout              | Log out from FortiAP.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| radio-cfg     | GET  | /api/v1/radio-cfg    | Get current radios configuration parameters of the control plane.<br>To get specific radio configuration parameters of the control plane:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>rcfg info from radio 0: /api/v1/radio-cfg?rld=0</li> <li>rcfg info from radio 1: /api/v1/radio-cfg?rld=1</li> </ul>           |
| reboot        | POST | /api/v1/reboot       | Reboot FortiAP.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| sys-perf      | GET  | /api/v1/sys-perf     | Get system performance values (CPU, memory).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| sys-status    | GET  | /api/v1/sys-status   | Get system status (fap-get-status).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| vap-cfg       | GET  | /api/v1/vap-cfg      | Get current SSIDs of the control plane.<br>To get the current SSIDs for each independent radios:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>vcfg info from radio 0: /api/v1/vap-cfg?rld=0</li> </ul>                                                                                                               |

| REST API call | HTTP | Path            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|               |      |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>vcfg info from radio-1: /api/v1/vap-cfg?rld=1</li> </ul> To get specific SSIDs from specific radios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>wlan 0 vcfg info from radio 0: /api/v1/vap-cfg?rld=0&amp;wld=0</li> <li>wlan 1 vcfg info from radio 0: /api/v1/vap-cfg?rld=0&amp;wld=1</li> </ul> |
| wtp-cfg       | GET  | /api/v1/wtp-cfg | Get current FortiAP configuration parameters of the control plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

### Example request

```
https://<FAP-IP>/api/v1/sys-perf
```

### Example response

```
{
  "cpu_usage": 1,
  "memory_usage": 60
}
```

## Enable API for Location Based Services station info

You can retrieve Location Based Services (LBS) information of associated and unassociated wireless stations through the FortiOS REST API. To enable this feature, configure the following:

#### 1. Configure the region on a managed FortiAP:

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit "FP431FTF20012724"
    set uuid 882b4410-fac9-51eb-ab55-520bdbb17d52
    set admin enable
    set region "wifi"
    set region-x "0.2514256912442"
    set region-y "0.3601190476190"
    set wtp-profile "FAP431F-default"
    config radio-1
    end
    config radio-2
    end
  next
end
```

#### 2. Enable station-location in an applied profile:

```
FortiGate-101F (vdom1) # config wireless-controller wtp-profile
FortiGate-101F (wtp-profile) # ed FAP431F-default
FortiGate-101F (FAP431F-default) # config lbs
```

```
FortiGate-101F (lbs) # set station-locate enable
FortiGate-101F (lbs) # end
FortiGate-101F (FAP431F-default) # end
FortiGate-101F (vdom1) #
```

**3. Enable ble-scanning to detect BLE devices, if needed:**

```
FortiGate-101F (vdom1) # config wireless-controller ble-profile
FortiGate-101F (ble-profile) # edit fortiap-discovery
FortiGate-101F (fortiap-discovery) # set ble-scanning enable
FortiGate-101F (fortiap-discovery) # en
FortiGate-101F (vdom1) #
FortiGate-101F (vdom1) # config wireless-controller wtp-profile
FortiGate-101F (wtp-profile) # ed FAP431F-default
FortiGate-101F (FAP431F-default) # set ble-profile fortiap-discovery
FortiGate-101F (FAP431F-default) # end
FortiGate-101F (vdom1) #
```



[www.fortinet.com](http://www.fortinet.com)

Copyright© 2023 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.